

ENGINEERING  
TOMORROW



Operating Guide

# VACON® 3000 Drive Kit





## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>11</b>
1.1	Purpose of this Operating Guide	11
1.2	Additional Resources	11
1.3	Version History	11
1.4	Disposal	11
<b>2</b>	<b>Safety</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1	Safety Symbols	12
2.2	Qualified Personnel	12
2.3	Danger and Warnings	12
2.4	Cautions and Notices	14
2.5	Main Circuit Breaker	16
2.5.1	Safety and Protection Requirements	16
2.5.2	Minimum Requirements for MCB and MCB Control	16
<b>3</b>	<b>Product Overview</b>	<b>18</b>
3.1	Intended Use	18
3.2	Product Description	18
3.2.1	AFE Drive	18
3.2.2	12-Pulse Drive	19
3.3	Type Code Description	20
3.4	Available Options	20
<b>4</b>	<b>Receiving the Delivery</b>	<b>23</b>
4.1	Checking the Delivery	23
4.2	Storage	23
4.3	Lifting the Drive Components	24
<b>5</b>	<b>Mechanical Installation</b>	<b>25</b>
5.1	Operating Environment	25
5.2	Cabinet Installation	25
5.3	Mounting Rack Installation	25
5.3.1	VACON® 3000 Mounting Racks	25
5.3.2	Mounting Rack and Module Installation Guidelines	26
5.3.3	Assembling the Mounting Racks	27
5.3.4	Installation of the Mounting Rack	30
5.3.5	Grounding of the Mounting Rack	30
5.3.6	Cabling in the Mounting Rack	30

5.4	Installing Modules in a Mounting Rack	31
5.5	Liquid Cooling Requirements	32
5.5.1	Safety in Liquid-cooling	32
5.5.2	General Information on Liquid Cooling	32
5.5.3	Cooling Liquid	33
5.5.3.1	Quality Requirements for the Purified Water	33
5.5.3.2	Purified Water as Coolant	33
5.5.3.3	Antifreeze Mix as Coolant	33
5.5.3.4	Temperature of the Cooling Liquid	34
5.5.3.5	Condensation	34
5.5.4	Cooling System	36
5.5.4.1	Materials	36
5.5.4.2	Heat Exchanger	37
5.5.4.3	Cooling System Installation	37
5.5.4.4	Power Module Cooling Connections	38
5.6	Air Cooling Requirements	39
<b>6</b>	<b>Electrical Installation</b>	<b>41</b>
6.1	Power Cabling Guidelines	41
6.1.1	MV and LV Sections in the Cabinet	41
6.1.2	Power Cable Selection	42
6.1.3	Cable Inlets Between Cabinet Sections	43
6.1.4	Mains and Motor Cable Selection	44
6.1.5	Mains and Motor Cable Inlet and Termination	44
6.1.6	Grounding	46
6.1.6.1	Standard Grounding Configurations	46
6.1.7	Installation in an IT grid	47
6.1.8	Additional Instructions for Cable Installation	48
6.2	Cabling of the Power Modules	48
6.2.1	Phase Module Terminals	48
6.2.2	DFE Power Module Terminals	49
6.2.2.1	DFE Control Terminals	49
6.2.3	Power Module Grounding	50
6.2.4	DC-Link Connections	51
6.2.5	Brake Chopper Installation	53
6.2.6	Terminal Screw Tightening Torque Specifications	53
6.2.7	LED Display on the Phase Module	53
6.2.8	LED Display on the DFE Power Module	55



6.3	Single-belt Operation	56
6.4	Main Circuit Breaker Installation	56
6.5	Installation of Auxiliary Components	56
6.5.1	Surge Protection Device Installation	56
6.5.2	Potential Transformer Installation	56
6.5.3	LC Filter Installation	57
6.5.4	Input Common-mode Filter Installation	58
6.5.5	DC Capacitors for DFE Installation	59
6.5.6	Grounding Switch Installation	59
6.5.6.1	Operating the Grounding Switch	60
6.5.7	Common-Mode Capacitor Installation	61
6.5.8	Pre-Charge Unit Installation	61
6.5.8.1	Safety Notes for the Precharge Unit	61
6.5.8.2	Pre-Charge Unit Installation	62
6.5.9	Isolation Transformer Installation	62
6.5.10	Auxiliary Power Supply Installation	63
6.5.11	Cabinet Heater Installation	64
6.5.12	Overtemperature Indicator Installation	64
6.5.13	Leak Detector Installation	64
6.5.14	Arc Flash Detector Installation	64
6.6	Safety Functions	64
6.6.1	Safe Torque Off (STO)	64
6.6.2	Safe Stop 1 (SS1)	64
6.6.3	Safety Considerations	65
6.6.3.1	Diagnostic Test	65
6.6.4	STO Operating Principle	65
6.6.5	SS1 Operating Principle	66
6.6.6	Installation Guidelines	66
6.6.7	Recommended Components	67
6.6.8	Determining the Power Supply Specific STO Delay Time	68
6.6.8.1	Response Time and Fault Reaction Time	68
6.6.9	Safety Relay Wiring	69
6.6.10	Safety-related Data	70
6.7	Mechanical Interlocking System	71
6.7.1	Operating the Interlocking System	72

## 7 Control Connections 73

7.1	Control Unit Components	73
-----	-------------------------	----

7.2	Control Unit Installation	74
7.3	Control Interface	74
7.4	Control Unit Cabling	75
7.4.1	Selection of the Control Cables	75
7.4.2	Control Unit Terminals	75
7.5	DIP Switches on the Control Unit	76
7.5.1	Selection of Terminal Functions with DIP Switches	76
7.5.2	Isolation of the Digital Inputs from Ground	77
7.6	Fieldbus Connection	78
7.6.1	Fieldbus Terminals	78
7.6.2	Using Fieldbus through an Ethernet Cable	79
7.6.3	Using Fieldbus through an RS485 Cable	80
7.7	Option Board Installation	82
7.8	Optical Fiber Connections	83
7.8.1	Selection of Optical Fiber Cables	86
7.8.2	Making Optical Fiber Cables	87
7.9	Pre-charge and Supply Voltage Feedback Connections	88
7.10	Encoder Interface	89
7.10.1	Encoder Terminals and Signals	90
7.10.2	Encoder Jumper Configurations	91
7.10.3	Encoder Connection	93
7.11	Battery for the Real-Time Clock (RTC)	94
7.12	Galvanic Isolation Barriers	94
7.13	System and Application Software	94
7.14	Technical Data on Control Connections	94
7.15	Auxiliary I/O Board	96
7.15.1	Connector Locations	96
7.15.2	Connector Specifications	97
7.15.3	LED Display on the Auxiliary I/O Board	101
7.15.4	Breaker Enable Signals	102
7.15.5	Breaker Enable Logic	102
7.15.6	Breaker Enable Mapping Examples	103
7.16	HCM Board	106
7.16.1	Connector Locations	106
7.16.2	Installation	106
<b>8</b>	<b>Commissioning</b>	<b>108</b>
8.1	Safety Checks before Starting the Commissioning	108

8.2	Commissioning the Drive	108
8.2.1	Basic Job Information	108
8.2.2	Before Power-up Checklist	109
8.2.3	Control and Auxiliary Power Commissioning Checklist	112
8.2.4	Medium-Voltage Power Commissioning Checklist	113
8.3	Commissioning Procedures	114
8.3.1	Filling the Liquid Cooling System	114
8.3.2	Grid Voltage Feedback Configuration	116
8.3.3	Installing Software on the Control Unit	117
8.3.4	Verifying the Phase Module Connections	120
8.3.5	Commissioning Test	122
8.3.5.1	Commissioning Test with VACON® Live	123
8.3.6	AFE Synchronization Test	125
8.3.7	Encoder Setup	129
8.4	Insulation Resistance Measurements	130
8.4.1	Measuring the Switchgear Insulation Resistance	130
8.4.2	Measuring the Cable and Motor Insulation	130
8.4.2.1	Insulation Checks of the Motor Cable	130
8.4.2.2	Insulation Checks of the Mains Cable	131
8.4.2.3	Insulation Checks of the Motor	131
<b>9</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>132</b>
9.1	Preventive Maintenance Recommendations	132
9.1.1	Maintenance Log for Cooling System	134
<b>10</b>	<b>Fault Tracing</b>	<b>135</b>
10.1	Fault Types	135
10.2	Faults and Alarms	135
10.2.1	Fault Code 1 - Overcurrent	135
10.2.2	Fault Code 2 - Overvoltage	136
10.2.3	Fault Code 3 - Earth Fault	137
10.2.4	Fault Code 5 - Charging Switch	137
10.2.5	Fault Code 7 - Saturation	138
10.2.6	Fault Code 8 - System Fault	138
10.2.7	Fault Code 9 - Undervoltage	146
10.2.8	Fault Code 10 - Input Phase	146
10.2.9	Fault Code 11 - Output Phase Supervision	148
10.2.10	Fault Code 12 - Brake Chopper Supervision	148
10.2.11	Fault Code 13 - AC Drive Undertemperature	149

10.2.12 Fault Code 14 - AC Drive Overtemperature	149
10.2.13 Fault Code 15 - Motor Stall	151
10.2.14 Fault Code 16 - Motor Overtemperature	151
10.2.15 Fault Code 17 - Motor Underload	151
10.2.16 Fault Code 19 - Power Overload	151
10.2.17 Fault Code 25 - Motor Control Fault	152
10.2.18 Fault Code 26 - Start-up Prevented	152
10.2.19 Fault Code 29 - ATEX Thermistor	152
10.2.20 Fault Code 30 - Safety	153
10.2.21 Fault Code 32 - Fan Cooling	155
10.2.22 Fault Code 33 - Fire Mode Enabled	156
10.2.23 Fault Code 37 - Device Changed (Same Type)	156
10.2.24 Fault Code 38 - Device Added (Same Type)	157
10.2.25 Fault Code 39 - Device Removed	157
10.2.26 Fault Code 40 - Device Unknown	158
10.2.27 Fault Code 41 - IGBT Temperature	158
10.2.28 Fault Code 43 - Encoder Fault	158
10.2.29 Fault Code 44 - Device Changed (Different Type)	160
10.2.30 Fault Code 45 - Device Added (Different Type)	161
10.2.31 Fault Code 46 - Real Time Clock	161
10.2.32 Fault Code 47 - Software Update	162
10.2.33 Fault Code 49 - Precharge	162
10.2.34 Fault Code 50 - AI Low Fault	166
10.2.35 Fault Code 51 - Device External Fault	166
10.2.36 Fault Code 52 - Keypad Communication Fault	167
10.2.37 Fault Code 53 - Fieldbus Communication Fault	167
10.2.38 Fault Code 54 - Slot Fault	167
10.2.39 Fault Code 57 - Identification	168
10.2.40 Fault Code 58 - Mechanical Brake	169
10.2.41 Fault Code 59 - Communication	169
10.2.42 Fault Code 61 - Speed Error Fault	169
10.2.43 Fault Code 63 - Quick Stop	169
10.2.44 Fault Code 65 - PC Communication Fault	170
10.2.45 Fault Code 66 - Thermistor Input Fault	170
10.2.46 Fault Code 67 - Module Test Stand	170
10.2.47 Fault Code 68 - Maintenance Counter	171
10.2.48 Fault Code 69 - Fieldbus Mapping Error	171
10.2.49 Fault Code 76 - Start Prevented	171



10.2.50 Fault Code 77 - >5 Connections	172
10.2.51 Fault Code 78 - Identification Ongoing	172
10.2.52 Fault Code 80 - Fieldbus Watchdog Fault	172
10.2.53 Fault Code 84 - Overspeed Error	172
10.2.54 Fault Code 111 - Temperature Input Fault 1	172
10.2.55 Fault Code 112 - Temperature Input Fault 2	173
10.2.56 Fault Code 114 - User Defined Fault 1	173
10.2.57 Fault Code 115 - User Defined Fault 2	173
10.2.58 Fault Code 200 - Precharge	174
10.2.59 Fault Code 201 - High Humidity/Temperature	175
10.2.60 Fault Code 202 - Encoder	175
10.2.61 Fault Code 203 - STO Fault	175
10.2.62 Fault Code 204 - Output Filter	176
10.2.63 Fault Code 205 - Coolant Temperature	176
10.2.64 Fault Code 300 - Unsupported	176

## 11 Specifications 177

11.1 Dimensions	177
11.1.1 Dimensions, Phase Module	177
11.1.2 Dimensions, DFE Power Module	178
11.1.3 Dimensions, Brake Chopper Unit	179
11.1.4 Dimensions, Control Unit	179
11.1.5 Dimensions, Auxiliary I/O Board	180
11.1.6 Dimensions, HCM Board	180
11.1.7 Dimensions, Pre-Charge Unit	181
11.1.8 Dimensions, LC Filter	182
11.1.9 Dimensions, Input Common-mode Filter	185
11.1.10 Dimensions, Common-Mode Capacitor	189
11.1.11 Dimensions, DC Capacitor for DFE	190
11.1.12 Dimensions, Potential Transformer	194
11.1.13 Dimensions, Isolation Transformer	194
11.1.14 Dimensions, Grounding Switch	195
11.1.15 Dimensions, Surge Protection Device	197
11.1.16 Dimensions, Mounting Rack	197
11.2 Power Ratings	200
11.2.1 Power Ratings for Mains Voltage 3300 V	200
11.2.2 Power Ratings for Mains Voltage 4160 V	200
11.2.3 Overload Capability	201

11.3	Technical Data	202
11.3.1	Mains Supply	202
11.3.2	Motor Output	203
11.3.3	Control Properties	203
11.3.4	Drive Properties	204
11.3.5	Ambient Conditions	205
11.3.6	Cooling	205
11.3.7	Source Impedance Specifications	207
11.4	Main Circuit Diagrams	210
11.4.1	VACON® 3000 AFE Main Circuit Diagrams	210
11.4.2	VACON® 3000 12-Pulse Main Circuit Diagrams	213
11.5	Abbreviations	214

## 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Purpose of this Operating Guide

This operating guide provides information for safe installation and commissioning of the AC drive. It is intended for use by qualified personnel.

Read and follow the instructions to use the drive safely and professionally.

Pay particular attention to the safety instructions and general warnings. Always keep this operating guide with the drive.

### 1.2 Additional Resources

Other resources are available to understand advanced AC drive functions, programming, and options.

- The VACON® 3000 design guide provides technical information to understand the capabilities of the VACON® 3000 drive for integration into motor control and monitoring systems.
- The VACON® 3000 application guides provide greater detail on how to work with the applications and how to set the parameters of the AC drive.
- The operating and installation guides for VACON® options give detailed information about specific drive options.

Supplementary publications and manuals are available from Danfoss. See [www.danfoss.com](http://www.danfoss.com) for listings.

### 1.3 Version History

This manual is regularly reviewed and updated. All suggestions for improvement are welcome.

The original language of this manual is English.

Table 1: Version History

Version	Remarks
A	First version
B	Updated information for several of the Drive Kit components. Updated information for safety functions.
C	Updates due to added H30 phase module. Added main breaker warning.

### 1.4 Disposal

Do not dispose of equipment containing electrical components together with domestic waste. Collect it separately in accordance with local and currently valid legislation.



## 2 Safety

### 2.1 Safety Symbols

The following symbols are used in this guide:

#### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

#### ⚠ W A R N I N G ⚠

Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

#### ⚠ C A U T I O N ⚠

Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

#### N O T I C E

Indicates information considered important, but not hazard-related (for example, messages relating to property damage).

### 2.2 Qualified Personnel

To allow trouble-free and safe operation of the unit, only qualified personnel with proven skills are allowed to transport, store, assemble, install, program, commission, maintain, and decommission this equipment.

Persons with proven skills:

- Are qualified electrical engineers, or persons who have received training from qualified electrical engineers and are suitably experienced to operate devices, systems, plant, and machinery in accordance with pertinent laws and regulations.
- Are familiar with the basic regulations concerning health and safety/accident prevention.
- Have read and understood the safety guidelines given in all manuals, especially the instructions given in the operating guide of the unit.
- Have good knowledge of the generic and specialist standards applicable to the specific application.
- Are familiar with the structure and operation of medium-voltage drives and the related risks. Special training for medium-voltage installations may be necessary.

### 2.3 Danger and Warnings

#### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

##### SHOCK HAZARD FROM POWER UNIT COMPONENTS

The power unit components are live when the drive is connected to mains. Contact with this voltage can result in death or serious injury.

- Do not touch the components of the power unit when the drive is connected to mains.  
Do not do any work on live equipment.  
Before doing any work on internal drive components, follow proper lock out and tag out procedure.  
Before connecting the drive to mains, make sure that all covers are installed on the drive and the enclosure doors are closed.



**⚠ D A N G E R ⚠****SHOCK HAZARD FROM TERMINALS**

The motor terminals U, V, W, the brake resistor terminals, and the DC-link terminals must be treated as live when the drive is connected to mains. Contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Do not touch the motor terminals U, V, W, the brake resistor terminals, or the DC terminals when the drive is connected to mains.  
Do not do any work on live equipment.  
Before doing any work on the drive, follow proper lock out and tag out procedure.  
Before connecting the drive to mains, make sure that all covers are installed on the drive and the enclosure doors are closed.

**⚠ D A N G E R ⚠****SHOCK HAZARD FROM DC LINK OR EXTERNAL SOURCE**

The terminal connections and the components of the drive can be live several minutes after the drive is disconnected from the mains and the motor has stopped. The load side of the drive can also generate voltage. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Disconnect the drive from the mains and make sure that the motor has stopped.  
Disconnect the motor.  
Lock out and tag out the power source to the drive.  
Make sure that no external source generates unintended voltage during work.  
To ground the drive input and DC link, close the grounding switch. If there is no grounding switch, make sure that the drive input and DC link are grounded for work. Also ground the motor terminals for work.  
Wait for the DC-link capacitors to discharge fully before opening the cabinet door or the cover of the AC drive. The discharge time is <7 minutes for AFE drives and <21 minutes for 12-pulse drives.  
Use a measuring device to make sure that there is no voltage.

**⚠ W A R N I N G ⚠****SHOCK HAZARD FROM CONTROL TERMINALS**

The control terminals can have a dangerous voltage also when the drive is disconnected from mains. A contact with this voltage can lead to injury.

- Make sure that there is no voltage in the control terminals before touching the control terminals.

**⚠ W A R N I N G ⚠****ACCIDENTAL MOTOR START**

When there is a power-up, a power break, or a fault reset, the motor starts immediately if the start signal is active, unless the pulse control for Start/Stop logic is selected. If the parameters, the applications or the software change, the I/O functions (including the start inputs) can change. If you activate the auto reset function, the motor starts automatically after an automatic fault reset. See the Application Guide. Failure to ensure that the motor, system, and any attached equipment are ready for start can result in personal injury or equipment damage.

- Disconnect the motor from the drive if an accidental start can be dangerous. Make sure that the equipment is safe to operate under any condition.

## ⚠ WARNING ⚠

### ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - LEAKAGE CURRENT HAZARD >3.5 MA

Leakage currents exceed 3.5 mA. Failure to connect the drive properly to protective earth (PE) can result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure reinforced protective earthing conductor according to IEC 60364-5-54 cl. 543.7 or according to local safety regulations for high touch current equipment. The reinforced protective earthing of the drive can be done with:
  - a PE conductor with a cross-section of at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup> (8 AWG) Cu or 16 mm<sup>2</sup> (6 AWG) Al.
  - an extra PE conductor of the same cross-sectional area as the original PE conductor as specified by IEC 60364-5-54 with a minimum cross-sectional area of 2.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (14 AWG) (mechanical protected) or 4 mm<sup>2</sup> (12 AWG) (not mechanical protected).
  - a PE conductor completely enclosed with an enclosure or otherwise protected throughout its length against mechanical damage.
  - a PE conductor part of a multi-conductor power cable with a minimum PE conductor cross-section of 2.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (14 AWG) (permanently connected or pluggable by an industrial connector. The multi-conductor power cable shall be installed with an appropriate strain relief).
- NOTE: In IEC/EN 60364-5-54 cl. 543.7 and some application standards (for example IEC/EN 60204-1), the limit for requiring reinforced protective earthing conductor is 10 mA leakage current.

## 2.4 Cautions and Notices

### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

#### DAMAGE TO THE AC DRIVE FROM INCORRECT SPARE PARTS

Using spare parts that are not from the manufacturer can damage the drive.

- Do not use spare parts that are not from the manufacturer.

### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

#### DAMAGE TO THE AC DRIVE FROM CHANGES TO DRIVE COMPONENTS

Doing electrical or mechanical changes to the drive components can cause malfunctions and can damage the AC Drive.

- Do not make electrical or mechanical changes to the drive components.

### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

#### DAMAGE TO THE AC DRIVE FROM INSUFFICIENT GROUNDING

Not using a grounding conductor can damage the drive.

- Always ground the AC drive with a grounding conductor that is connected to the grounding terminal that is identified with the PE symbol. If no dedicated transformer is installed, the AC drive is intended for high resistance grounding systems with a resistance grounded neutral point. For operation in an IT network without a dedicated transformer, consult Danfoss.

### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

#### CUT HAZARD FROM SHARP EDGES

There can be sharp edges in the AC drive that can cause cuts.

- Wear protective gloves when mounting, cabling, or doing maintenance operations.

### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

#### BURN HAZARD FROM HOT SURFACES

Touching surfaces, which are marked with the 'hot surface' sticker, can result in injury.

- Do not touch surfaces which are marked with the 'hot surface' sticker.

**NOTICE****DAMAGE TO THE AC DRIVE FROM STATIC VOLTAGE**

Some of the electronic components inside the AC drive are sensitive to ESD. Static voltage can damage the components.

- Use ESD protection when working with electronic components of the AC drive. Do not touch the components on the circuit boards without proper ESD protection.

**NOTICE****DAMAGE TO THE AC DRIVE FROM MOVEMENT**

Movement after installation can damage the drive.

- Do not move the AC drive during operation. Use a fixed installation to prevent damage to the drive.

**NOTICE****DAMAGE TO THE AC DRIVE FROM INCORRECT EMC LEVEL**

The EMC level requirements for the AC drive depend on the installation environment. An incorrect EMC level can damage the drive.

- Before connecting the AC drive to the mains, make sure that the EMC level of the AC drive is correct for the mains.

**NOTICE****RADIO INTERFERENCE**

In a residential environment, this product can cause radio interference.

- Take supplementary mitigation measures.

**NOTICE****MAINS DISCONNECTION DEVICE**

If the AC drive is used as a part of a machine, the machine manufacturer must supply a mains disconnection device (refer to EN 60204-1).

**NOTICE****MALFUNCTION OF FAULT CURRENT PROTECTIVE SWITCHES**

Because there are high capacitive currents in the AC drive, it is possible that the fault current protective switches do not operate correctly.

**NOTICE****VOLTAGE WITHSTAND TESTS**

If done improperly, doing voltage withstand tests can damage the drive.

- Megohmmeter testing is the only recommended test type for field installations.  
Only a qualified field service engineer is allowed to perform this test.  
Refer to the proper high potential/megohmmeter testing instructions in the service guide.

**NOTICE****WARRANTY**

If the power modules are opened, the warranty is not valid.

- Do not open the power modules.

## N O T I C E

### PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT AND APPROVED TOOLS

When doing electrical work on the AC drive, always use personal protective equipment (PPE) and tools which are approved for work with medium-voltage devices.

## 2.5 Main Circuit Breaker

The main circuit breaker (MCB) is an important protection device for the drive. If there is a serious fault in the drive, the MCB immediately disconnects the main supply to the drive. To protect personnel and to prevent further damage to the equipment, the main supply must be disconnected immediately with an open or trip command from the drive.

If the drive is supplied through a dedicated transformer, install the MCB on the primary side of the supply transformer (see [Illustration 1](#)).

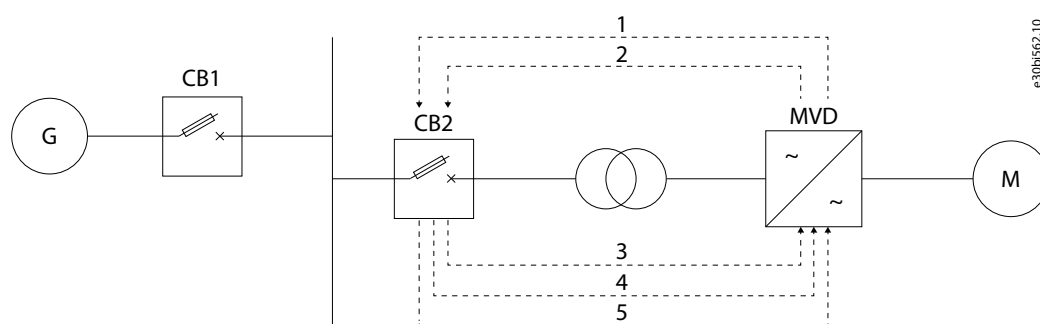


Illustration 1: Overview of the Drive System

1	Trip coil: RO from VACON® 3000 (reaction time: 10 ms delay)	CB1	Circuit breaker 1
2	Undervoltage release (UVR): IGBT switch from arc flash relay (reaction time: 2 ms delay)	CB2	Circuit breaker 2
3	Breaker open: RO from the breaker	G	Grid or generator
4	Breaker closed: RO from the breaker	M	Motor
5	Breaker ready (optional): RO from the breaker	MVD	VACON® 3000 medium-voltage drive

## ! W A R N I N G !

Do not close the main breaker manually or through a control place other than the VACON® 3000.

### 2.5.1 Safety and Protection Requirements

For safety and protection, the MCB must meet the minimum requirements of the specifications of Danfoss medium-voltage drives. The minimum requirements for the MCB are stated in this manual and in the respective MCB specifications, which are available for each medium-voltage drive from Danfoss. The system integrator must make sure that the minimum requirements are met.

The safety requirements for the drive are based on the following standards:

- EN ISO 13849-1: Safety of machinery, Safety-related parts of control systems, General principles for design, section 6.2.6 Category 3
- UL347A, Edition 1: Standard for Medium Voltage Power Conversion Equipment

### 2.5.2 Minimum Requirements for MCB and MCB Control Requirements

To meet the stipulated safety requirements, Danfoss requires the following:

- MCB is equipped with 2 independent opening coils.
- MCB is equipped with an opening coil and an undervoltage coil for monitoring of the control voltage.
- Route the MCB open and trip commands directly from the drive to the MCB.



- Do not route the trip command through any PLC or DCS (distributed control system) which is not certified to meet SIL 3-level requirements and to fulfill the given timing requirements.
- Opening of the MCB by the drive must be possible at any time. Do not interrupt the open and trip commands, for example, by a local-remote switch in the MCB.
- Closing the MCB locally is not allowed. The drive must have exclusive control of closing the MCB.
- The maximum opening time of the MCB must never exceed the product or project specific maximum time defined in the MCB specifications.
- Typical maximum protection and safety trip time for the drive: **60 ms**

#### Recommendations

To meet the stipulated safety requirements, Danfoss recommends the following:

- Provide an upstream protection coordination scheme which uses the "breaker failure" (ANSI 50BF) signal to trip the upstream breaker automatically, in case the MCB does not open.
- After a failure has occurred, the upstream breaker must open within the maximum protection and safety trip time.

## 3 Product Overview

### 3.1 Intended Use

VACON® 3000 is a liquid-cooled AC drive for stepless speed or torque control of medium-voltage induction motors. The VACON® 3000 Drive Kit is a modular MV drive that offers a new dimension of application engineering for industrial applications with motor voltages of 3300 V or 4160 V. It enables the complete customization of the enclosure to meet the unique needs, restrictions, and characteristics of various applications, including applications with limited space and in harsh conditions.

The VACON® 3000 Drive Kit is available in a power range starting from 2 MW. Basic configurations have a power of 2 MW or 3 MW. These configurations can be paralleled for systems of 4 MW and above.

The VACON® 3000 Drive Kit includes all the main parts for the drive:

- Power modules,
- pre-charge unit,
- control unit,
- filters.

The modules and accessories are used to make different medium-voltage AC drive solutions, such as regenerative and non-regenerative drives. The VACON® 3000 Drive Kit accommodates flexible arrangements, straightforward system integration, and easy maintenance. The protection rating of the modules is IP00, and thus the modules have to be installed in a cabinet.

Two different drive configurations are available:

- Regenerative, with an active front-end (AFE)
- Non-regenerative, with a 12-pulse diode front-end (DFE)

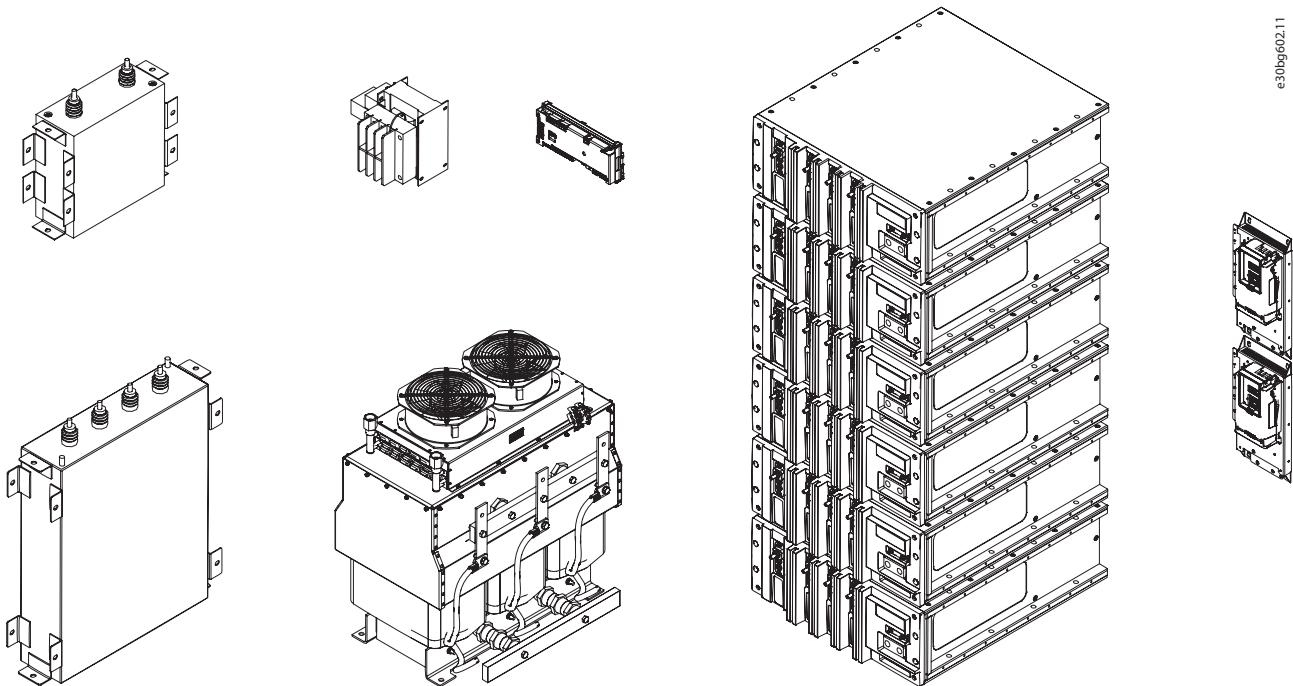


Illustration 2: Example of the VACON® 3000 Drive Kit

### 3.2 Product Description

#### 3.2.1 AFE Drive

An example diagram of the regenerative VACON® 3000 is shown in [Illustration 3](#). The main components of the drive are:

- The active front-end (AFE) unit includes 3 or 6 liquid-cooled 1-phase power conversion units (PCU). 3 of the phase modules are installed in parallel to make a 3-phase converter. The AFE converts the supplied AC voltage to DC voltage. It also enables the supply of power to the supply network when the motor is braking.
- The inverter unit (INU) includes 3 or 6 of the same liquid-cooled 1-phase modules, which are used in the AFE. The INU converts the DC voltage to the AC voltage and frequency supplied to the motor.
- The LC filter (FLC) limits harmonic current on the supply network.

- The pre-charge unit (PRC) charges the DC-link capacitors.
- The AFE and INU control units (CNU-AFE/CNU-INU) are connected to the power conversion units with optical fibers.
- The auxiliary I/O board (AXU-IOB) provides galvanic separation between I/Os in the MV section and the control unit in the LV section of the cabinet.

The basic VACON® 3000 AFE drive is intended for installations, where the system is supplied by a dedicated transformer and the source impedance is small. These installations are usually on land. The drive includes an LC filter instead of an LCL filter, because the supply side inductance is included in the dedicated transformer.

It is recommended to install a dedicated transformer for the drive. If the drive is not supplied by a dedicated transformer (that is, there are other loads than the drive on the same supply):

- Install the drive in a high resistance grounding system with a resistance grounded neutral point.
- Install an input common-mode filter (option +PICM).

If the source impedance is high, select the +PHSI option. See [11.3.7 Source Impedance Specifications](#).

For operation in an IT network without a dedicated transformer, contact Danfoss.

For the full main circuit diagrams, see [11.4.1 VACON® 3000 AFE Main Circuit Diagrams](#).

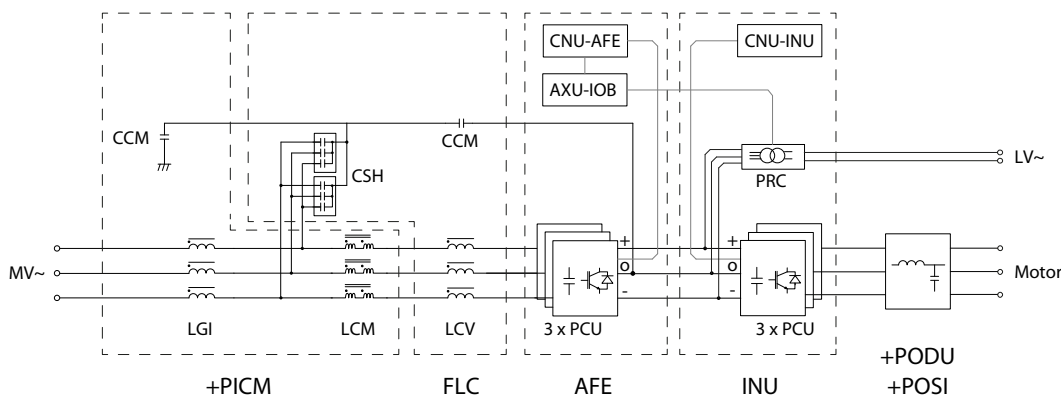


Illustration 3: Example Main Circuit Diagram of a VACON® 3000 AFE Drive

### 3.2.2 12-Pulse Drive

An example diagram of the 12-pulse non-regenerative VACON® 3000 Drive Kit is shown in [Illustration 4](#). The main components of the drive are:

- The diode front-end unit (DFE) is a liquid-cooled 12-pulse power conversion unit (PCU), which changes the supplied AC voltage to DC voltage. The 12-pulse configuration is used to limit harmonics on the supply network.
- The inverter unit (INU) includes 3 or 6 liquid-cooled 1-phase power conversion units (PCU). 3 of the phase modules are installed in parallel to make a 3-phase converter. The INU converts the DC voltage to the AC voltage and frequency supplied to the motor.
- The pre-charge unit (PRC) charges the DC-link capacitors.
- The INU control unit (CNU-INU) is connected to the inverter units with optical fibers.
- The auxiliary I/O board (AXU-IOB) provides galvanic separation between I/Os in the MV section and the control unit in the LV section of the cabinet.

The 12-pulse DFE must be supplied by a dedicated transformer with two secondary windings.

For the full main circuit diagrams, see [11.4.2 VACON® 3000 12-Pulse Main Circuit Diagrams](#).

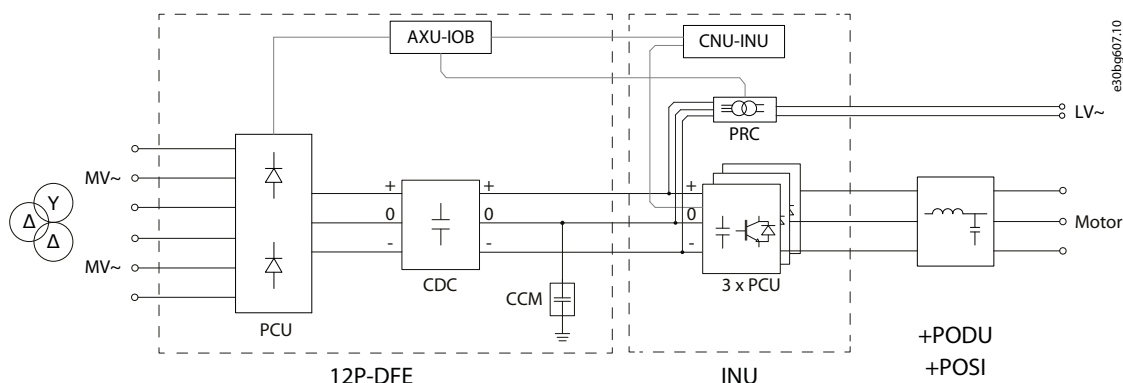


Illustration 4: Example Main Circuit Diagram of a VACON® 3000 12-Pulse Drive

### 3.3 Type Code Description

The type code for VACON® 3000 has four basic parts (1–4) and option codes (5).

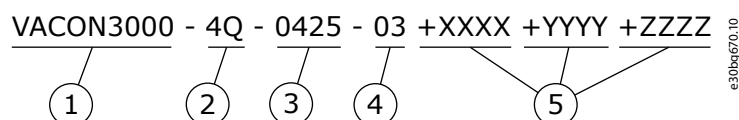


Illustration 5: VACON® 3000 Type Code Structure

#### 1. Product series

VACON® 3000. This part of the code is always the same.

#### 2. Drive type

There are two different drive types available. All kits include an inverter unit (INU) as default. The front-end type is specified in the type code.

- **4Q:** A regenerative drive with an active front end (AFE) and an LC input filter, supplied through a dedicated transformer. If the drive is not supplied by a dedicated transformer, install an input common-mode filter (available with option code +PICM).
- **12:** A non-regenerative drive with a 12-pulse diode front end (DFE) rectifier and external DC capacitors. A dedicated transformer with 2 secondary windings is necessary.
- **24:** A non-regenerative drive with a 24-pulse diode front end (DFE) rectifier and external DC capacitors. A dedicated transformer with 4 secondary windings is necessary.

#### 3. Nominal output current

See the available output currents in [Table 2](#).

Table 2: Available Output Current Ratings

Motor voltage [V]	3300	4160
Output current [A]	0425	0340
	0640	0510
	0820	0650
	1230	0980

#### 4. Nominal input voltage

Nominal supply voltage: 03 = 3300 V or 04 = 4160 V.

#### 5. Option codes

Optional components.

See the available codes in [3.4 Available Options](#).

### 3.4 Available Options



Table 3: Available Options for VACON® 3000 Drive Kit

Option Code	Option Description
+PICM (1)	Input common-mode filter The option is only available for AFE drives. Always include the input common-mode filter in VACON® 3000 AFE installations, which are not supplied by a dedicated transformer.
+DBCU (1)	Brake chopper unit for dynamic braking The option includes one brake chopper module. The option does not include a brake resistor. The option is for 12-pulse drives. If a brake chopper is required for an AFE drive, contact Danfoss.
+PHSI	High source impedance Option for installation locations with high source impedances (~10–15% SI). For example, marine applications usually have a high source impedance. The option affects the size of the input filters. The default installation location has small source impedance (SSI). This option is only available for AFE drives. Examine each application one by one. To see if this option is necessary, find out the source impedance and see <a href="#">11.3.7 Source Impedance Specifications</a> . If necessary, consult Danfoss.
+PFCH +PFC1 +PFC0	Filter inductors Inductors included Inductors included without heat exchanger and fan No inductors included
+SC__ +SD__ +SE__	C, D, and E slot option boards Default: No option boards in slots C, D, and E. See the available option boards in <a href="#">Table 4</a> .
+HMDR	Door keypad mounting kit with drive side IP54 protection and a cable length of 3 m (9.84 ft)
+QAIT	Isolation transformer Isolated auxiliary transformer for the power section, 120/240 V input voltage, 120 V output voltage, 3 kVA The option is recommended to separate the low-voltage devices in the low-voltage section and the devices in the medium-voltage section.
+QGSW	Grounding switch This option is recommended. A 5-pole switch is supplied for AFE drives, and a 2-pole switch for 12-pulse drives.
+QPTR	Potential transformer for input voltage measurement
+QSPD	Surge protection device The option is recommended for AFE drives with a high probability of large transient overvoltages at the drive input.
+PMRK (1)	Mounting rack for power modules and the DC capacitors for DFE
+SAXB	Additional auxiliary I/O board for the power section. One auxiliary I/O board is included in the kit by default.
+HGAS	Gasket sealing for increased dust protection of power modules
	Control and fan supply voltage 115 V (default for 4160 V)

Option Code	Option Description
+QFV1 +QFV2	230 V (default for 3300 V)
+PGDR +PGDN	Grounding of the heat sink and connection of the grounding resistor in power modules R: DC neutral-to-ground resistor connected (default) N: DC neutral-to-ground resistor not connected
+QP24 +QP40 +QP48	Precharge input voltage 240 V 400 V (default for 3300 V) 480 V (default for 4160 V)
+QGSK	Mechanical interlocking system Included by default with option +GAUL.
+GAUL	cUL certificate
+GACE	EU declaration, CE approval

<sup>1</sup> The nominal current and voltage selected in the type code of the VACON® 3000 affect this option. The correct size and number of parts is supplied automatically. If a different size or number of parts is needed, an order for separate parts is possible.

**Table 4: Available Option Boards for Slots C, D, and E**

Slot C	Slot D	Slot E	Option Board <sup>(1)</sup>
+SCB1	+SDB1	+SEB1	I/O board OPTB1: 6 x Digital input/digital output, programmable
+SCB2	+SDB2	+SEB2	I/O board OPTB2: 1 x relay output (NO/NC), 1 x relay output (NO), Thermistor
+SCB4	+SDB4	+SEB4	I/O board OPTB4: 1 x analog input, 2 x analog output (isolated)
+SCB5	+SDB5	+SEB5	I/O board OPTB5: 3 x relay output
+SCB9	+SDB9	+SEB9	I/O board OPTB9: 1 x relay output, 5 x digital input (42–240 V AC)
+SCBF	+SDBF	+SEBF	I/O board OPTBF: 1 x analog output, 1 x digital output, 1 x relay output
+SCBH	+SDBH	+SEBH	I/O board OPTBH: 3 x Temperature measurement (support for PT100, PT1000, NI1000, KTY84-130, KTY84-150, KTY84-131 sensors)
	+SDD3	+SED3	Adapter board OPTD3: RS232 adapter
	+SDE3	+SEE3	Fieldbus board OPTB3: PROFIBUS DP-V1 (Screw connector)
	+SDE5	+SEE5	Fieldbus board OPTB5: PROFIBUS DP-V1 (D9 connector)
	+SDE6	+SEE6	Fieldbus board OPTB6: CANopen
	+SDE7	+SEE7	Fieldbus board OPTB7: DeviceNet
	+SDE9	+SEE9	Fieldbus board OPTB9: 2-port ethernet
	+SDEA	+SEEA	Fieldbus board OPTEA: Advanced 2-port ethernet
	+SDEC	+SEEC	Fieldbus board OPTBEC: EtherCAT

<sup>1</sup> For a 12-pulse drive, the option includes one board. For an AFE drive, the option includes two boards, one for the AFE control unit and one for the INU control unit. If the drive also has the brake chopper option (+DBC), the option includes one more board for the brake chopper control unit.

## 4 Receiving the Delivery

### 4.1 Checking the Delivery

1. After removing the packaging, examine the drive for transport damages.
  - If the drive was damaged during the shipping, speak to the cargo insurance company or the carrier.
2. To make sure that the delivery is correct, compare the type code for the order to the type code on the package label. The type code specifies the drive type, nominal output current, nominal input voltage, and option codes. See [3.3 Type Code Description](#).
  - If the delivery does not agree with the order, speak to the vendor immediately.

The contents of the delivery are different for each type of drive kit. Below are the components, which are always included in the delivery.

#### AFE drive

- LC filter (AFE shunt capacitor and AFE converter side inductor)
- Common-mode capacitor
- AFE phase modules
- AFE control unit
- Auxiliary I/O board
- INU phase modules
- INU control unit
- Pre-charge unit

#### 12-pulse drive

- DFE power module
- Auxiliary I/O board
- DC capacitors for DFE
- Common-mode capacitor
- INU phase modules
- INU control unit
- Pre-charge unit

### 4.2 Storage

#### N O T I C E

##### LIQUID IN THE HEAT SINK

If the coolant is not removed from the heat sink before storage or shipping, the liquid can freeze and damage the drive.

- Always remove the coolant from the heat sink before storage or shipping. Plug or seal the inlet and outlet coolant connectors.

If the AC drive or drive components are kept in storage, keep them in controlled conditions.

- Storage temperature: -40...+70 °C (-40... +158 °F). If the storage temperature is below 0 °C (+32 °F), make sure that there is no coolant in the heat sinks.
- Relative humidity: < 95%, no condensation

Keep the equipment sealed in its packaging until installation.

### 4.3 Lifting the Drive Components

#### ⚠ WARNING ⚠

##### LIFTING HEAVY EQUIPMENT

Follow local safety regulations for lifting heavy weights. Failure to follow recommendations and local safety regulations can result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that the lifting equipment is in proper working condition.

The VACON® 3000 phase modules and other components, such as inductors, capacitors, and transformers are heavy. Use a lifting device to move the heavy components.

The power modules have 13 mm (0.51 in) holes on top of the units, where lifting rings can be installed. The lifting rings are not included in the delivery.

Before lifting the inductors, remove the heat exchanger from the top of the inductor. Lift the inductors from the lifting rings on top of the components.

Put the lifting hooks symmetrically in two or more lifting rings. Make sure that the lifting device can lift the weight of the equipment. The maximum lifting angle is 90°.

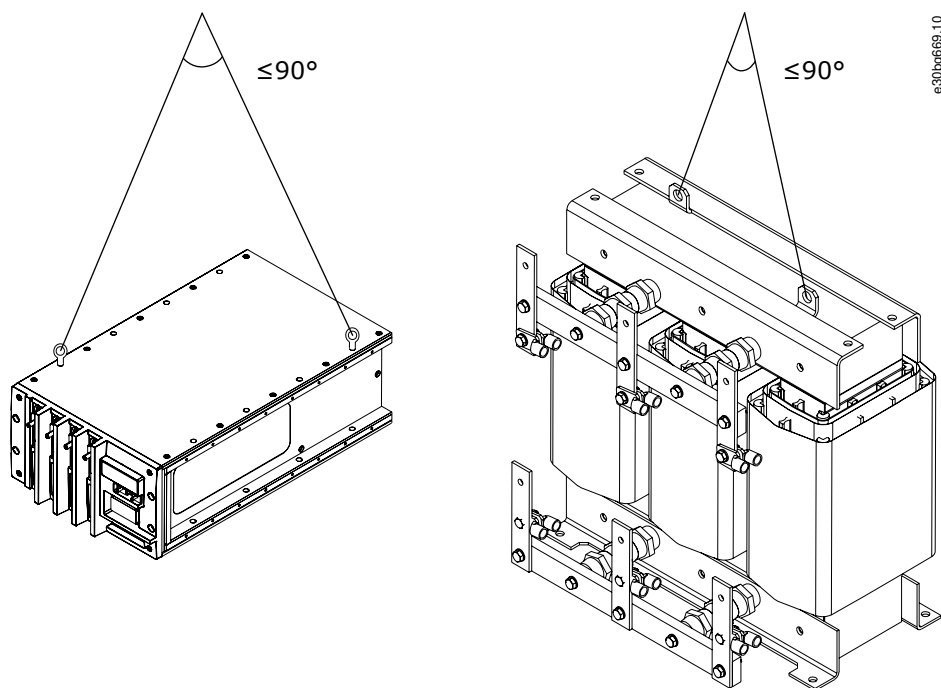


Illustration 6: Lifting a VACON® 3000 Phase Module and an Inductor

## 5 Mechanical Installation

### 5.1 Operating Environment

#### NOTICE

##### CONDENSATION

Moisture can condense on the electronic components and cause short circuits.

- Avoid installation in areas subject to frost.  
Install space heaters to warm the air inside the cabinets.  
Before powering the drive, run the cooling pumps to warm up the components, until the drive is warmer than the ambient air.

#### NOTICE

##### EXTREME AMBIENT CONDITIONS

Hot or cold temperatures compromise unit performance and longevity.

In environments with airborne liquids, particles, or corrosive gases, ensure that the IP/Type rating of the equipment matches the installation environment. For specifications regarding ambient conditions, see [11.3.5 Ambient Conditions](#).

### 5.2 Cabinet Installation

The VACON® 3000 power modules and other components have the protection rating IP00. Therefore, the drive must be installed in a metal cabinet or other enclosure which is applicable for medium-voltage applications. The enclosure must have the correct level of protection against the ambient conditions in the installation area. Make sure that the cabinet gives protection against:

- Water
- Humidity
- Dust
- Other contaminations

The cabinet must also be sufficiently strong for the weight of the drive components and auxiliary devices. When preparing the installation, obey the applicable local regulations.

The cabinet assembly must have sufficient space for all the drive components, the power and control cables, and auxiliary devices. There must also be sufficient space to make the cable connections. Make sure that it is also possible to do service work, for example:

- Replace the fans,
- make inspections,
- tighten terminal screws.

The enclosure must obey the EMC requirements of the second environment, class 2. See the standard IEC 61800-3.

Installation guidelines:

- Locate the drive enclosure as near to the motor as possible.
- Ensure unit stability by mounting the enclosure on a solid surface.
- Ensure that the strength of the mounting location supports the unit weight.
- Ensure that there is enough space around the unit for proper cooling.
- Ensure that there is enough room to open the cabinet doors and for working on the equipment.

### 5.3 Mounting Rack Installation

#### 5.3.1 VACON® 3000 Mounting Racks

The installation of phase modules, DFE power modules, DC capacitors for DFE and brake chopper units in a cabinet is easy with the mounting racks supplied by Danfoss.

The mounting racks are easy to use. The modules are pushed in the mounting rack and mounted with screws from the front of the module. The easy installation also makes the removal and maintenance of the modules fast and easy.

Mounting racks are supplied in different sizes and they can contain a different number of modules.

- Mounting racks for AFE + INU systems usually hold six phase modules, but also racks with 3 slots are available.
- Mounting rack for DFE + INU systems contain 6 slots (1xDFE + 3xINU + 1xDC capacitor + one slot for BCU or extra DC capacitor).
- The mounting racks are available in two different widths: one for the L20 size modules and one for the L30/H30 size modules.

The mounting racks are available as option +PMRK.

The mounting racks are delivered as a kit and require assembly.

### 5.3.2 Mounting Rack and Module Installation Guidelines

To keep the busbar connections between the modules as short as possible, follow these guidelines when assembling the mounting racks and installing the modules in the racks.

#### AFE Drives

In AFE drives, install the AFE and INU phase modules next to each other in the 6-slot or 3-slot racks. If the drive has parallel power circuits, install the AFE phase modules in one rack and the INU phase modules in the other rack.

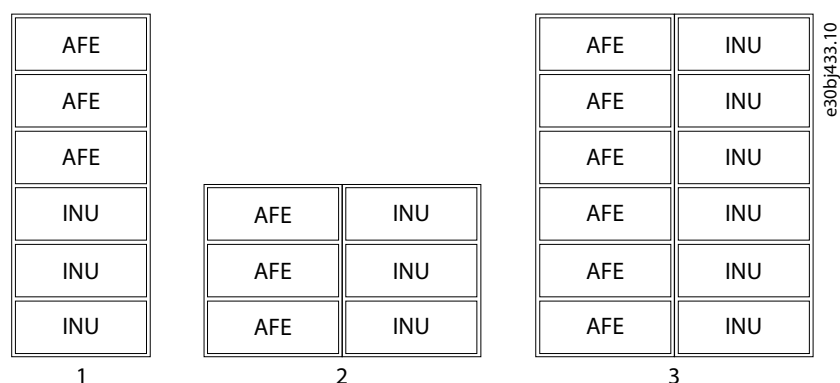


Illustration 7: Mounting Rack Configuration Examples for AFE Drives

1	AFE/INU phase modules in 6-slot rack	3	AFE/INU phase modules in two 6-slot racks
2	AFE/INU phase modules in two 3-slot racks		

#### 12-pulse Drives

In 12-pulse drive installations, follow these guidelines:

- Install the DFE module at the top or at the bottom, and next to the DC capacitor.
- Install the INU phase modules next to each other, and next to the DC capacitor.
- If the drive uses a 7-terminal DC capacitor (which is larger than a 6-terminal capacitor), use the rack with a specific slot for the capacitor.
- In 6-slot racks, the extra slot can be used for a brake chopper unit or an extra DC capacitor.
- If an extra DC capacitor is required, install it next to the other DC capacitor.
- If the extra slot in the rack is not required, a 5-slot rack can be used. The extra slot can also be left empty. In this case, it is recommended to leave the empty slot at the top of the rack, so that the center of gravity of the assembly is lower.
- If the drive has parallel power circuits, and the modules for each circuit are installed in separate racks side-by-side, the configuration in both racks must be the same.

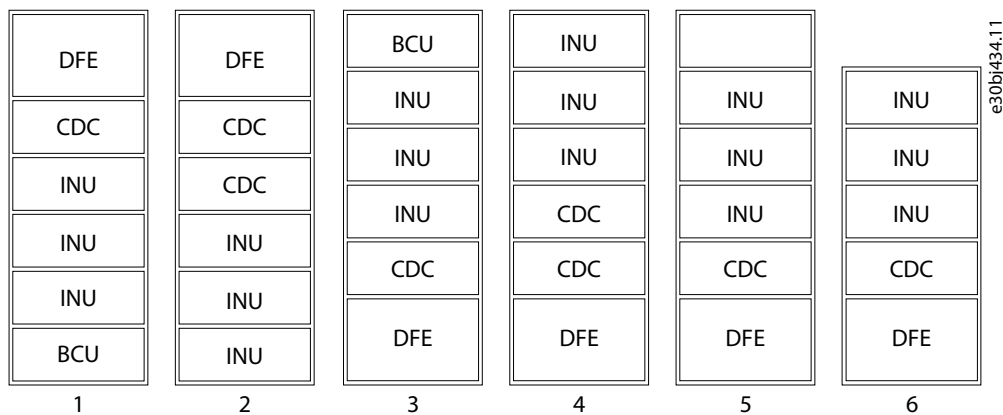


Illustration 8: Mounting Rack Configuration Examples for 12-pulse Drives

1	DFE module at the top and BCU in extra slot	4	DFE module at the bottom and CDC in extra slot
2	DFE module at the top and CDC in extra slot	5	DFE module at the bottom and extra slot empty
3	DFE module at the bottom and BCU in extra slot	6	5-slot rack with DFE module at the bottom

#### Drives with Parallel Power Circuits

In drives with parallel power circuits in side-by-side racks, make the DC-link connection between the racks:

- AFE: In the middle of the AFE/INU phase modules (between 3rd and 4th module in a 6-slot rack).
- DFE: At the DC capacitor.

For details of the DC-link connections, see [6.2.4 DC-Link Connections](#).

### 5.3.3 Assembling the Mounting Racks

These assembly instructions apply to all mounting racks. The example illustrations are of a mounting rack for 12-pulse (DFE) drives.

#### Procedure

1. Attach the slides to all the racks with M4x10 flat head screws. Make sure that the slides are level with the front of the rack.

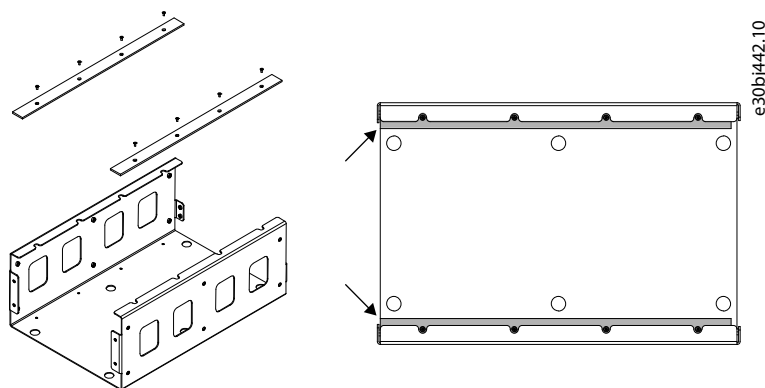


Illustration 9: Mounting the Slides on the Racks



- Set down 3 horizontal beams.

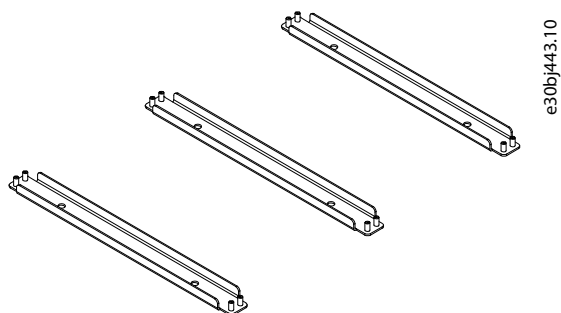


Illustration 10: The Horizontal Beams

- Set one rack on the horizontal beams and align them.

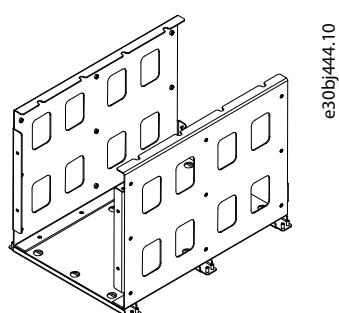


Illustration 11: Aligning the First Rack with the Horizontal Beams

- Assemble the vertical beams to the horizontal part and align with the holes on the rack. Make sure that the slotted holes in the vertical beams are at the top. Mount the vertical beam to the rack with M8x20 torx pan head screws. Tighten the screws by hand only.

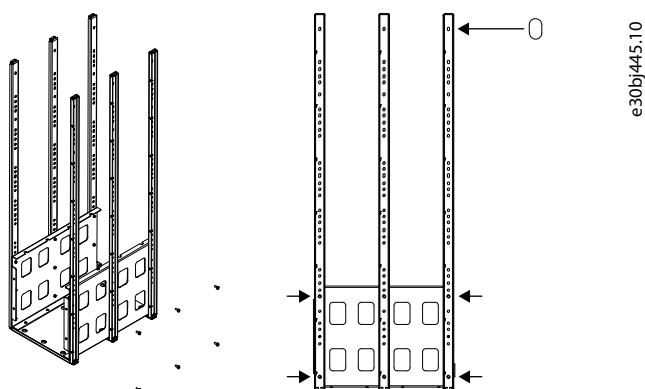


Illustration 12: Assembling the Vertical Beams

5. Mount the vertical beams to the horizontal beams with M8 nuts. Tighten the nuts by hand only.

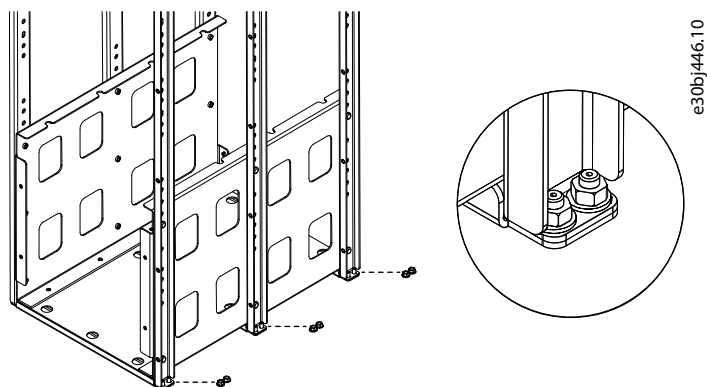


Illustration 13: Mounting the Vertical Beams to the Horizontal Beams

6. Stack the other racks on top of the first rack and align them.

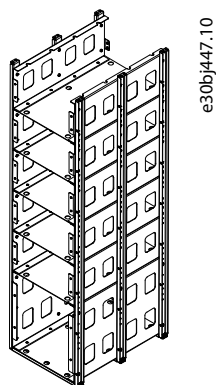


Illustration 14: Stacking the Racks

7. Attach the vertical beams to the other racks, like the first one.
8. Mount the 3 horizontal beams on top of the rack assembly with M8 nuts. Tighten the nuts by hand only.

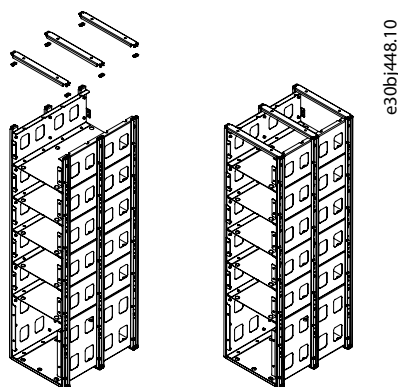


Illustration 15: Mounting the Horizontal Beams at the Top

9. Mount the clips to the back of the rack assembly with M6 screws. There are 2 clips per rack slot.

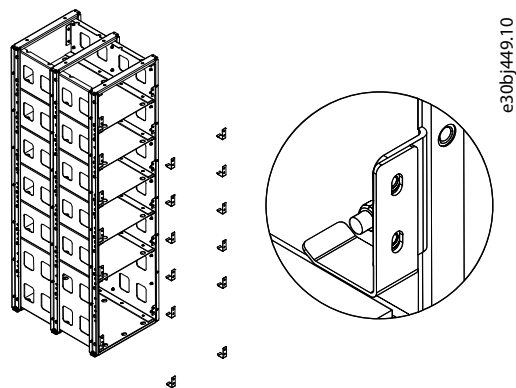


Illustration 16: Mounting the Clips

10. Tighten all the fasteners.

Table 5: Tightening Torques

Screw size	Torque (Nm)
M4	3
M6	6
M8	9

### 5.3.4 Installation of the Mounting Rack

Attach the mounting rack tightly at the bottom in all installations. The mounting rack can also be attached from the top. Always attach the mounting rack at the top in locations where vibration of the cabinet is possible.

See the dimensions of the mounting racks in [11.1.16 Dimensions, Mounting Rack](#).

### 5.3.5 Grounding of the Mounting Rack

The mounting rack has a copper ground bar installed to the right side to make it easy to ground each power module. Connect the mounting rack ground to the primary ground bar of the cabinet. Use the hole at the bottom of the copper bar in the right side of the mounting rack.

### 5.3.6 Cabling in the Mounting Rack

There is a wire duct in the mounting rack, on top of the ground bar. Use the wire duct for the 24 V DC power cables and optical fibers to the phase modules.

## 5.4 Installing Modules in a Mounting Rack

### Installing the Modules in a Mounting Rack

1. Lift the module in the mounting rack.

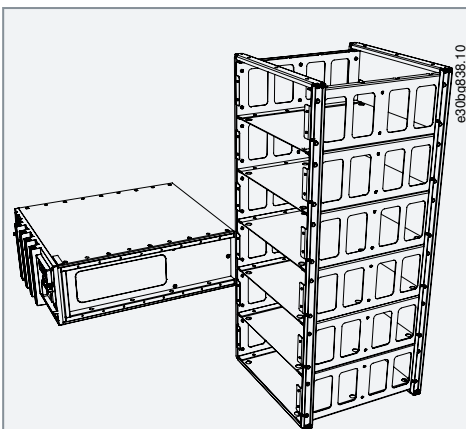


Illustration 17: L20 Phase Module and a Mounting Rack for Six Modules

2. Push the module in the mounting rack as far as it goes.

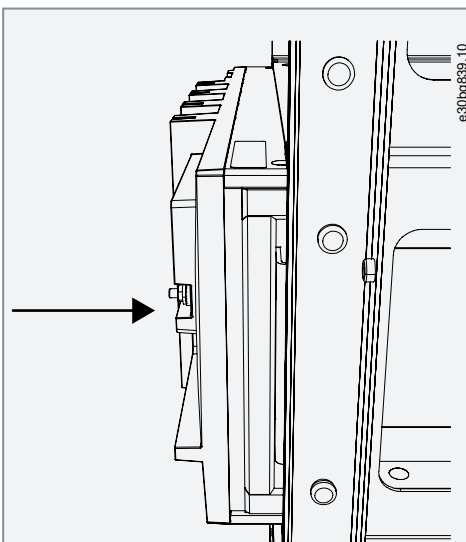


Illustration 18: L20 Phase Module Pushed in the Mounting Rack

3. Attach the module to the mounting rack with screws in the front of the module. The screws are included in the delivery.

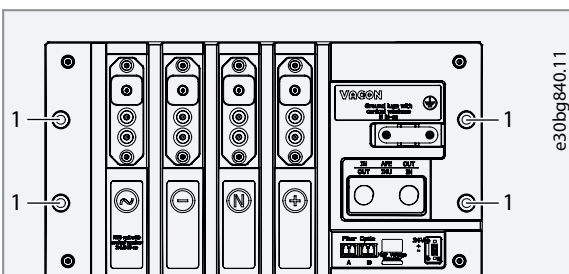


Illustration 19: Locations of the Mounting Screws in the L20 Phase Module

A      Mounting screws

## 5.5 Liquid Cooling Requirements

### 5.5.1 Safety in Liquid-cooling

#### ⚠ WARNING ⚠

##### POISONOUS COOLANTS

Glycols and inhibitors can be poisonous. If touched or consumed, they can cause injury.

- Prevent the coolant from getting into the eyes.
- Do not drink the coolant.

#### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

##### HOT COOLANT

Hot coolant can cause burns.

- Avoid contact with the hot coolant.

#### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

##### PRESSURIZED COOLING SYSTEM

Sudden release of pressure from the cooling system can cause injury.

- Be careful when operating the cooling system.

#### NOTICE

##### INSUFFICIENT COOLING CAPACITY

Insufficient cooling can cause the product to become too hot and thus become damaged.

- To make sure that the cooling capacity of the cooling system stays sufficient, make sure that the cooling system is vented, and that the coolant circulates properly.

#### NOTICE

##### DAMAGE TO COOLING SYSTEM

If the coolant circulation is stopped too soon, high temperature components can cause rapid local increase in the coolant temperature, which can damage the cooling system.

- Do not stop the cooling system when stopping the drive. Keep the coolant circulation flowing for 2 minutes after the drive has been stopped.

### 5.5.2 General Information on Liquid Cooling

VACON® 3000 drives are liquid-cooled. The liquid circulation of the drive is connected to a heat-exchanger that cools down the liquid circulating in the cooling elements of the drive. The power modules have aluminum heat sinks, which give good and safe temperature control. Because the cooling elements are made of aluminum, the cooling liquids allowed to be used are inhibited pure water, inhibited demineralized water, or an inhibited mixture of water and glycol.

The inductors of the input and output filters use air-to-liquid heat exchanger units for forced air cooling. The heat exchangers decrease the heat losses to the air and thus decreases the number of fans necessary for cooling the cabinet.

There are two types of cooling systems: open systems and closed systems.

An open system has no pressure but the hydrostatic and pumping pressure. It allows free contact between the cooling liquid and air. Air is continuously dissolved into the cooling liquid.

In a closed system, the piping is air-tight and there is a preset pressure inside the pipes. The pipes must be made of metal, or a specific plastic or rubber that includes an oxygen barrier that limits the diffusion of oxygen. Minimizing of oxygen content in the cooling liquid decreases the risk of corrosion of the metal parts. Closed systems usually have an expansion vessel that allows for a safe change of volume of the cooling liquid due to temperature changes.

Always use a closed system with Danfoss liquid-cooled drives.

### 5.5.3 Cooling Liquid

#### 5.5.3.1 Quality Requirements for the Purified Water

#### N O T I C E

##### DAMAGE TO SYSTEM FROM THE USE OF HYDROCARBONS

Hydrocarbons damage the rubber seals of the cooling system.

- Do not use hydrocarbons (for example mineral oil) as coolant. Do not mix hydrocarbons to coolant.

Table 6: Requirements for the Purified Water

Property	Required value
pH	6...8
Chlorides	≤ 25 ppm
Sulphate ions	≤ 25 ppm
Maximum particle size	≤ 50 µm
Total dissolved solids	≤ 200 ppm
Total hardness (CaCO <sub>3</sub> )	3...4.6 dH° (53...80 ppm)
Hydrogen carbonate	≤ 50 ppm
Electrical conductivity	≤ 500 µS/cm

#### 5.5.3.2 Purified Water as Coolant

Purified water can be used as coolant if there is no risk of freezing. Freezing water permanently damages the cooling system. Purified water is demineralized, deionized, or distilled water.

Always use an inhibitor Cortec VpCI-649 with 1.0% of volume with purified water.

#### ⚠ C A U T I O N ⚠

##### CORROSION HAZARD WITH DRINKING WATER

Some components are made of aluminum, which has limited corrosion resistance against high chloride concentrations. Drinking water can have a chloride concentration of 250 ppm, which increases the aluminum corrosion rate. High chloride concentration exposes aluminum especially to pitting corrosion which can damage the system relatively quickly.

- Use purified (demineralized, deionized, or distilled) water with corrosion inhibitors.

#### 5.5.3.3 Antifreeze Mix as Coolant

The following antifreeze products are a good general solution for liquid cooling since they provide freeze protection and corrosion protection.

The allowed antifreeze coolants are the following ethylene glycols and propylene glycols.

##### Ethylene glycols

- DOWCAL 100
- Clariant Antifrogen N

##### Propylene glycols

- DOWCAL 200
- Clariant Antifrogen L

These glycols already include corrosion inhibitors. Do not add any other inhibitor. Do not mix different glycol qualities because there can be harmful chemical interactions.

The glycol concentration of the coolant must be 25–55% by volume, according to the specified ambient temperature. Higher concentration reduces cooling capacity. Lower concentration results in biological growth and inadequate amount of corrosion inhibitors. Antifreeze must be mixed with purified water according to [5.5.3.1 Quality Requirements for the Purified Water](#).

### 5.5.3.4 Temperature of the Cooling Liquid

To gain full performance of the product, the temperature of the cooling liquid entering the drive components must be a maximum of 43°C (109°F) and above the dew point. While circulating inside the cooling element, the liquid transfers the heat produced by the power semiconductors and other components. The temperature rise of the cooling liquid during the circulation is typically less than 4°C (7.2°F). Typically, more than 95% of the power losses are dissipated in the cooling liquid. It is recommended to equip the cooling circulation with temperature supervision.

The secondary circuit maximum temperature must always be lower than the primary circuit temperature. The temperature difference must be at least 5°C (9°F) with equal flow. The temperature difference is necessary for the correct operation of the heat exchanger.

There are 3 external causes that affect the nominal temperature of the primary circuit:

- The maximum ambient temperature at the drive installation location.
- The maximum relative humidity at the drive installation location.
- The maximum secondary circuit liquid temperature.

All these causes must be examined when calculating the primary circuit temperature. The primary circuit temperature can be different for each installation.

### 5.5.3.5 Condensation

Condensation must be avoided. Always keep the temperature of the cooling liquid a minimum 2°C (3.6°F) above the dew point. Use the graph in [Illustration 20](#) to see if the conditions (combination of room temperature, humidity, and cooling liquid temperature) are safe for the drive to operate.

The conditions are safe when the point is below the related (cooling liquid temperature) curve. If they are not, decrease the ambient temperature or the relative humidity. Also the cooling liquid temperature can be increased. Note, that if the cooling liquid temperature is increased above the figures in loadability charts, it decreases the nominal output current of the drive. The curves in [Illustration 20](#) are valid at sea level altitude (1013 mbar/14.69 psi).

If the temperature of the liquid in the secondary circuit is lower than the ambient temperature and the relative humidity is high, condensation can occur on the secondary circuit pipes and the plate heat exchanger in the HX unit. The condensation is not dangerous, but it is not recommended. If there is condensation in the HX unit, it can cause the leak sensor in the cabinet to give a leak alarm. If a leak alarm occurs again and again, install insulation in the secondary circuit pipes and the plate heat exchanger. The insulation stops the condensation and thus prevents the incorrect leak alarms.



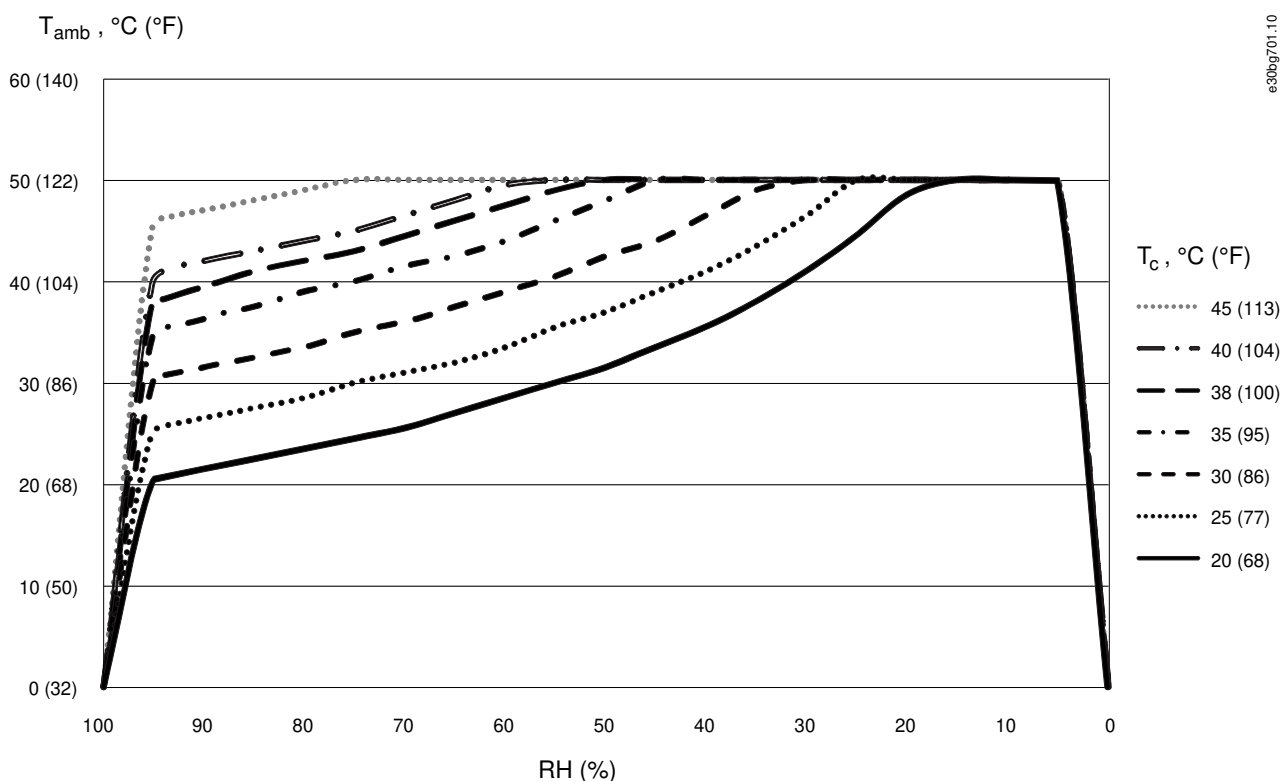


Illustration 20: Safe Operating Conditions in Relation to Condensation

RH	Relative humidity	$T_c$	Cooling liquid temperature
$T_{amb}$	Ambient temperature		

**Example****Safe Operating Conditions**

If the ambient temperature is +30°C (+86°F), the relative humidity is 40% and the cooling liquid temperature is +20°C (+68°F, the lowest curve in [Illustration 20](#)), then the drive operation conditions are safe.

If the ambient temperature increases to +35°C (+95°F) and the relative humidity to 60%, then the operation conditions of the drive are not safe. To get safe operation conditions, the ambient temperature must be decreased to +28°C (+82°F) or below. If it is not possible to lower the ambient temperature, then the cooling liquid temperature can be increased to +25°C (+77°F) or above.

**Example****Dew Point and Primary Circuit Temperature**

If the ambient temperature and the maximum relative humidity at the drive installation location is known, the dew point chart (see [Illustration 21](#)) can be used to find the correct temperature for the primary circuit.

- Ambient temperature = 35°C (95°F)
- Maximum relative humidity = 60%

According to the diagram in [Illustration 21](#), the dew point for the given values is 26°C (78.8°F). Always keep the temperature of the cooling liquid a minimum 2°C (3.6°F) above the dew point. Thus the primary circuit minimum temperature is set to 28°C (82.4°F).

The secondary circuit maximum temperature must always be 5°C (9°F) lower than the primary circuit temperature. Thus, in this example, the secondary circuit temperature must be below 23°C (73.4°F) during operation.

Notice, that these conditions are valid for the starting of the drive. After the start, the temperature inside the cabinet starts to increase and the humidity decreases.

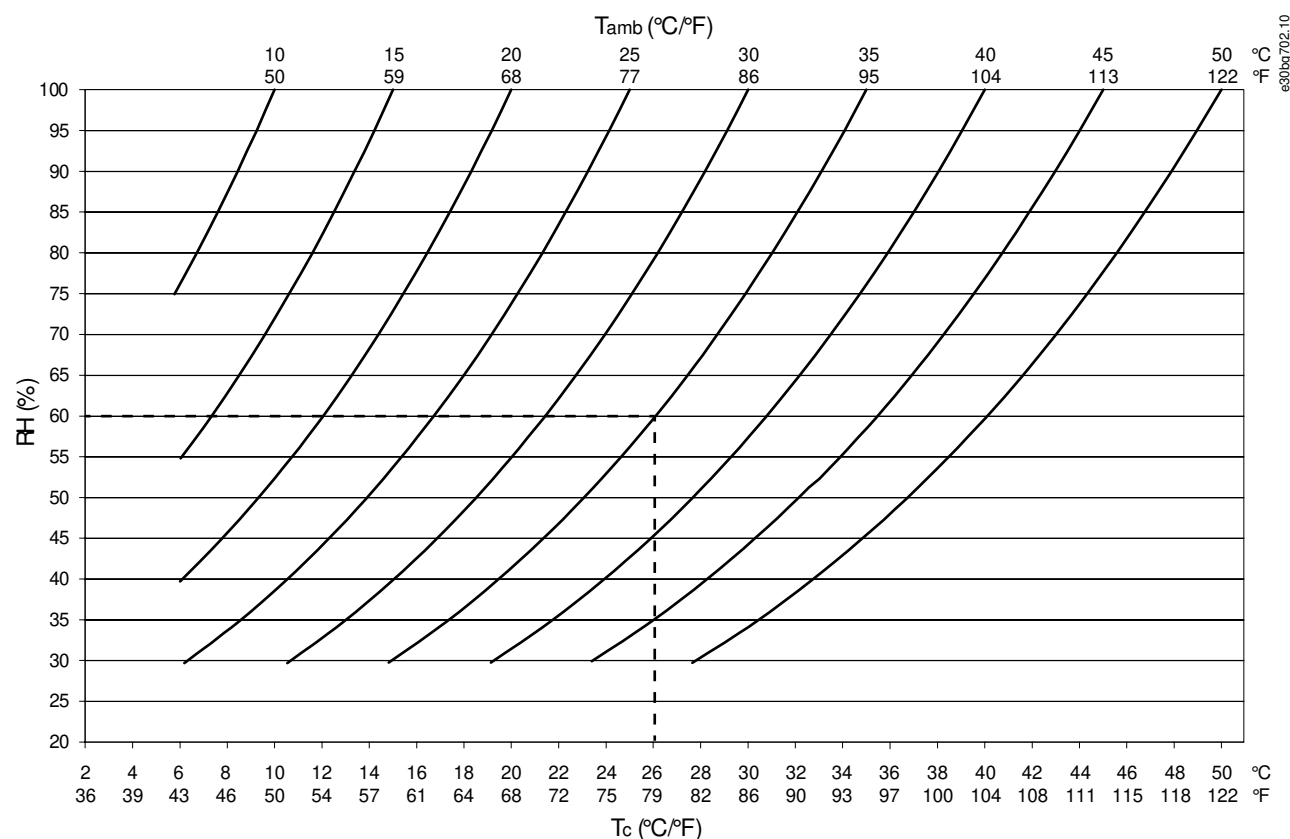


Illustration 21: Dew Point Diagram for Ambient Temperatures between +10°C...+50°C (+50°F...+122°F) at 1013 mbar (14.69 psi)

RH	Relative humidity	$T_c$	Primary circuit temperature
$T_{amb}$	Ambient temperature		

## 5.5.4 Cooling System

### 5.5.4.1 Materials

#### CAUTION

##### COPPER OR COPPER ALLOY PARTS DAMAGE THE SYSTEM

Using copper or copper alloy pipes or parts in contact with the cooling liquid damages the system.

- Do not use pipes made of copper or alloys that include copper. If metallic pipes are used in the cooling system, use aluminum or stainless steel pipes.

##### Allowed materials in the cooling system

These materials are allowed in the cooling system if they are compatible with the cooling liquid:

- Aluminum (EN-AW6060, EN-AW6063, or EN-AW6082)
- Stainless steel (AISI 304/316)
- Plastic\*
- Elastomers (EPDM, NBR, FDM)\*

\* If plastic or elastomers are used, check material compatibility within the temperature range of the cooling liquid. See the specifications in [11.3.6 Cooling](#).

Do not use PVC, copper, brass, or other materials not compatible with the heat sink material or cooling liquid.

##### Recommended material for pipes

- PA11
- PA12
- PEX with oxygen barrier
- PEX-AL-PEX

The electrical resistance of the plastic and rubber pipes must be  $>10^9 \Omega$ .

### 5.5.4.2 Heat Exchanger

The heat exchanging equipment can be located outside the electrical room in which the AC drives are. The connections between these two are made on site. To minimize the pressure drops, the piping must be made as short and straight as possible. It is also recommended to install a regulating valve that is equipped with a flow rate measurement point. This makes it possible to measure and regulate the cooling liquid circulation in the commissioning phase.

The highest point of the piping must be equipped with either an automatic or a manual venting device. The material of the piping must comply with at least AISI 304 (and AISI 316 is recommended). Before connecting the pipes, clean the bores thoroughly. If cleaning with water is not possible, use pressured air to remove all loose particles and dust.

The VACON® 3000 Drive Kit does not include a heat exchanger unit, but Danfoss supplies a range of applicable liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers. It is recommended to use Adwatec CCE-series cooling modules. Suitable pump sizes depending on the required cooling power are 10-4, 15-3, or 32-2.

### 5.5.4.3 Cooling System Installation

Install the power modules and liquid-to-air heat exchangers to the cooling system in parallel. Do not install the modules in series! Incorrect installation of the liquid cooling system can lead to overheating of the drive components and can damage the equipment.

See [Illustration 22](#) for examples of the cooling system and the connections between the AC drive components and the cooling system.

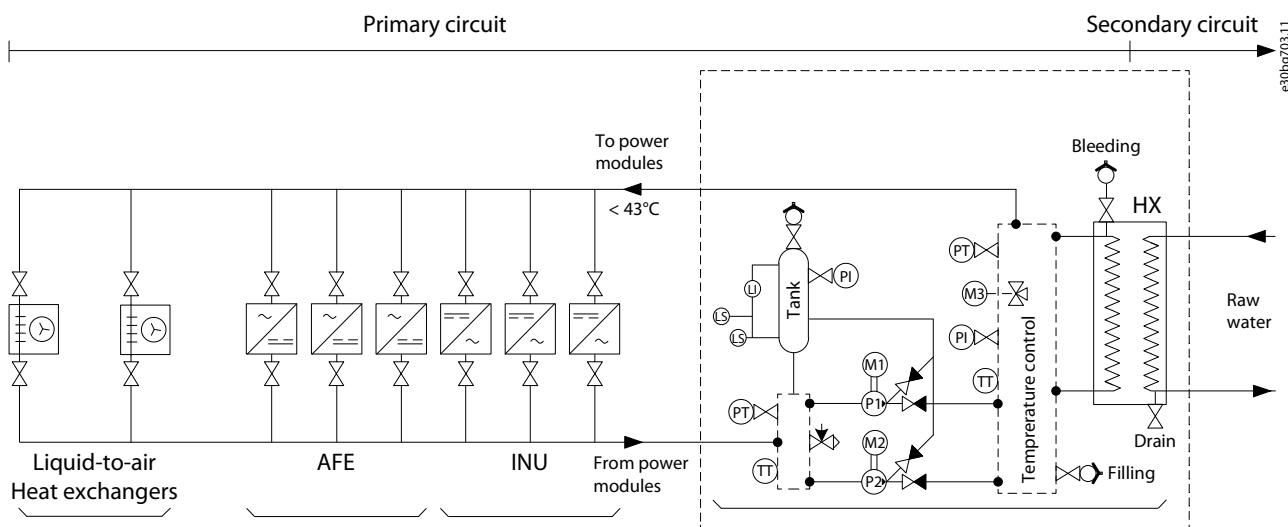


Illustration 22: Cooling System Example

HX	Heat exchanger	PI	Pressure indicator
LI	Level indicator	PT	Pressure transmitter
LS	Level switch	Px	Pump
Mx	Motor	TT	Temperature transmitter

### Recommended Components

#### Valves

Install a bypass valve in the primary or secondary line, and valves at each PCU inlet. The bypass valves make it possible to open and clean the cooling system. Open the bypass valve and close the valves to the AC drive when cleaning the system. While commissioning the system, close the bypass valve and open the valves to the AC drive.

#### Pressure and flow supervision

Install pressure and flow supervision (FE) in the cooling system. The flow supervision can be connected to the External fault digital input function. If the cooling liquid flow is too low, the flow supervision stops the AC drive.

**Flow restrictors**

If there is a wide range of input pressure and if it is not sure, that there is an equal pressure difference, install flow restrictors in the outputs of all the power modules and the liquid-to-air heat exchangers for the inductors.

**5.5.4.4 Power Module Cooling Connections**

⚠ CAUTION ⚠

**INCORRECT COOLING CONNECTIONS**

Incorrect installation of the liquid cooling connectors can lead to overheating of the power modules and can damage the equipment.

- Do the cooling connections correctly. Make sure that the connections are tight and that there are no leaks.

The phase modules and DFE power modules have an easy inlet-outlet piping configuration in the front for connection to the heat exchanger unit. The L20/L30/H30 phase module heat sink has G1/2 holes with threads (BSPP: ISO/DIN 1179-1). The D22 power module has G3/4 size holes.

Do the sealing of the heat sink threads (BSPP G1/2) with bonded sealing washers (Dowty washers). Do not use sealing tape or compound on the threads.

The tightening torques for the cooling connections:

- G1/2 Dowty washer: 40–65 Nm.
- G3/4 Dowty washer: 70–110 Nm.

The cooling hoses are connected differently in AFE and INU phase modules. See [Illustration 23](#) and [Table 7](#). In brake chopper units, the connection order of the cooling hoses can be selected freely.

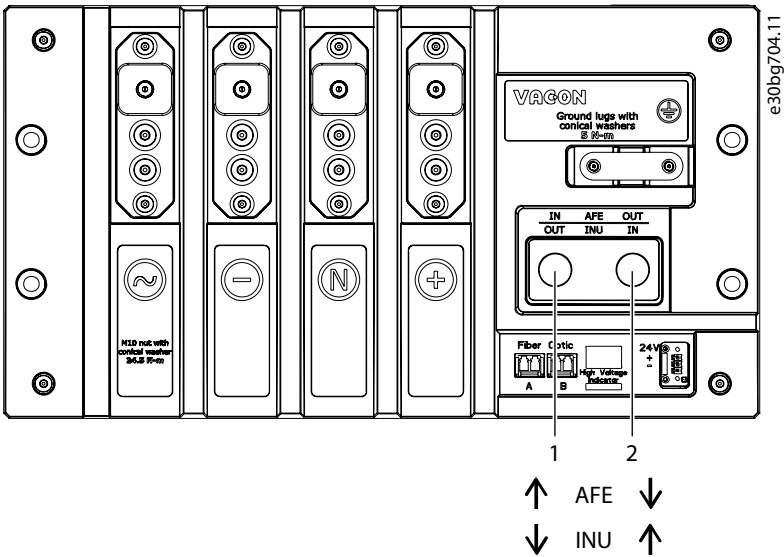


Illustration 23: Cooling Hose Terminals on the L20 Phase Module

1	Cooling hose terminal 1
2	Cooling hose terminal 2

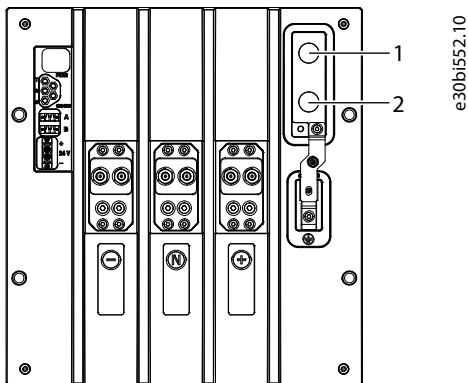


Illustration 24: Cooling Hose Terminals on the D22 Power Module

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1 | Cooling hose terminal 1 |
| 2 | Cooling hose terminal 2 |

Table 7: Power Module Cooling Connections

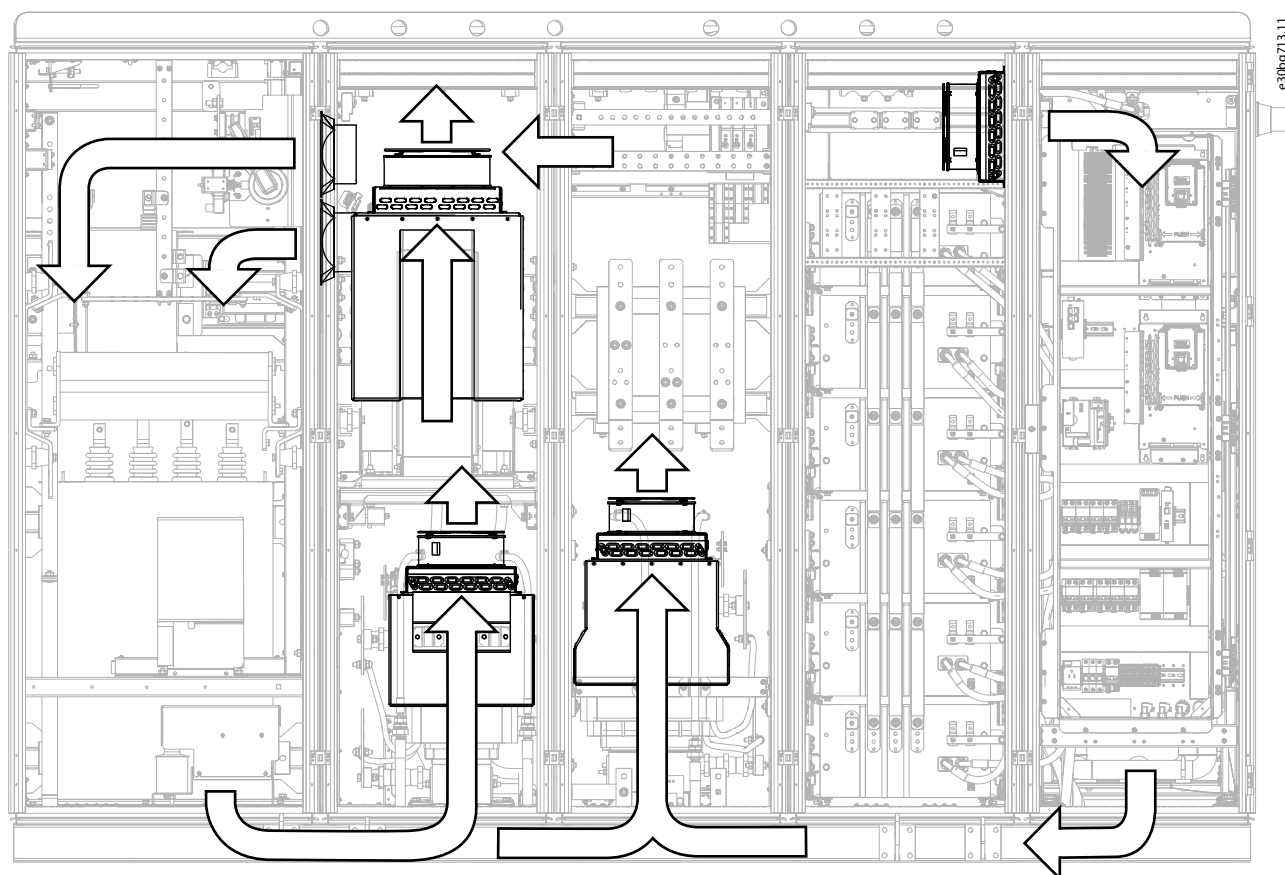
Power Module Type	Cooling Terminal 1	Cooling Terminal 2
AFE	IN	OUT
INU	OUT	IN
DFE	IN	OUT
BCU	IN/OUT	IN/OUT

## 5.6 Air Cooling Requirements

VACON® 3000 is a liquid-cooled AC drive, but in a liquid-cooled drive system, there are always some heat losses to the air. The heat losses come from the busbars, filters, inductors, and other auxiliary components. While installing the drive modules and other components to a cabinet, it must be ensured that there is sufficient airflow in each cabinet section. When designing the cooling system, refer to the highest possible continuous temperature and load.

The ambient conditions in each cabinet section must be in line with the specifications for VACON® products. Make sure that the temperature of the cooling air does not become higher than the maximum ambient temperature or lower than the minimum ambient temperature of the drive. If the AC drive becomes too hot again and again, it puts the operation at risk and decreases the life time of the installed components.

Liquid-to-air heat exchangers can be used to cool the hot air from the inductors and other components. Fans can be installed in the cabinet walls to move the air between the cabinet sections. The structure of the cabinet must be such, that the air can move freely through the cabinet.



**Illustration 25: Example of Liquid-to-Air Heat Exchangers Used for Cabinet Cooling**

If only fans are used to cool the cabinet, the cabinet door or bottom part of the cabinet must have air gaps for air intake and outlet air gaps on top of the cabinet. The inlet and outlet air gaps must obey the requirements set by the selected protection rating. The structure in the cabinet must move the hot air to the outlet at the top of the enclosure. The structure must also make sure that the hot air cannot turn back to the fans and the drive components.

The air must move freely through the cabinet. There must be a minimum of 20 cm (7.87 in) of space above the cabinet without structures that can stop the airflow. Make sure that the hot air goes out of the cabinet and does not come back into the cabinet.

## 6 Electrical Installation

### 6.1 Power Cabling Guidelines

#### 6.1.1 MV and LV Sections in the Cabinet

In the cabinet installation, make a clear separation between the low-voltage (LV) and medium-voltage (MV) sections. There must be galvanic isolation between the LV and MV sections. The insulation between the sections gives the devices in the LV section protection from the MV section voltages. The example in [Illustration 26](#) shows which components to install in the MV and LV sections.

Make all connections between the LV and MV sections with optical fiber cables. The only approved LV connections between the MV and LV sections are:

- The LV supply for the pre-charge unit (PRC)
- The LV supply for the isolation transformer (+QAIT)
- The supply voltage feedback from the potential transformer (+QPTR) to the AFE control unit

Be careful with the installation of the pre-charge unit, the isolation transformer, and potential transformer. Make sure that the LV supply cables are not near parts with medium voltage and have protection from possible arc flashes.

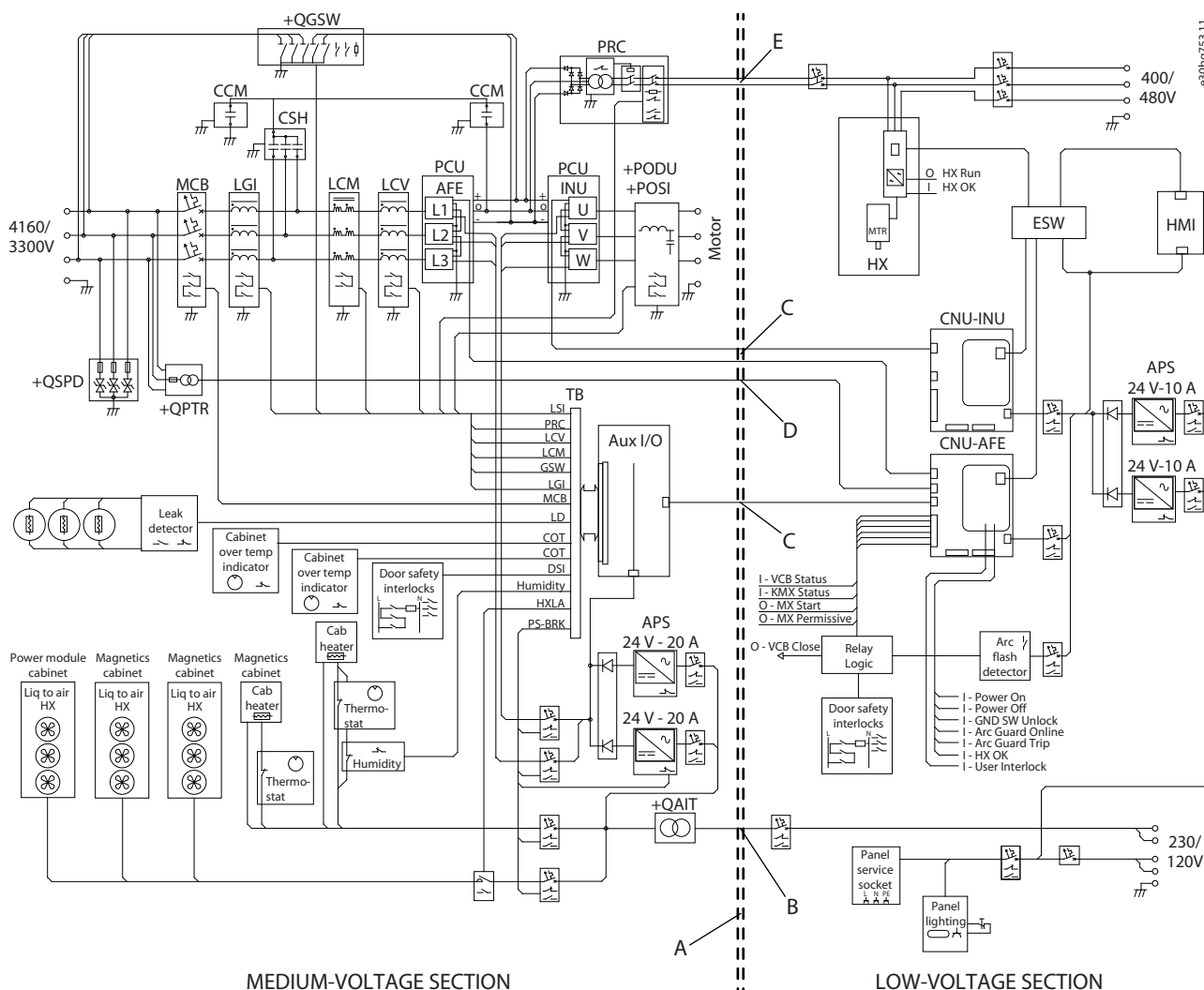


Illustration 26: Example of the MV and LV Sections

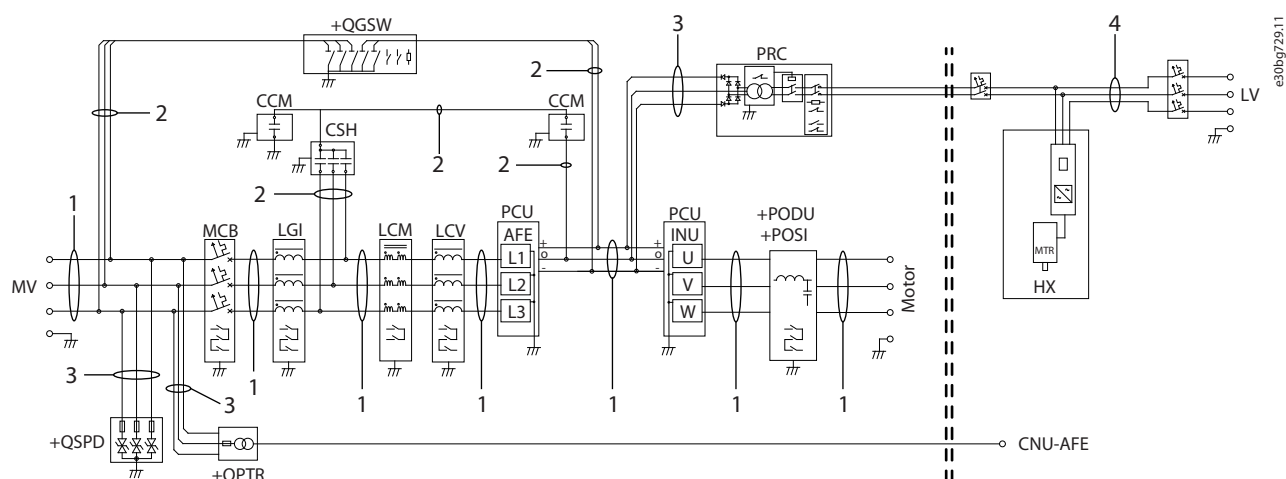
A	Galvanic isolation between the MV and LV sections	D	Supply voltage feedback from the potential transformer (+QPTR) to the AFE control unit
B	LV supply for the isolation transformer (+QAIT)	E	LV supply for the pre-charge unit (PRC)
C	Optical fiber connections		



### 6.1.2 Power Cable Selection

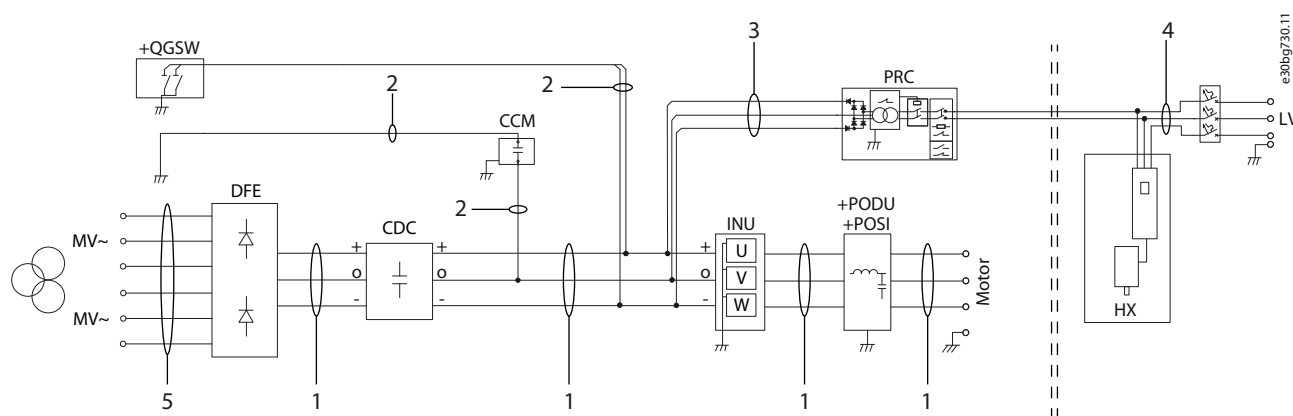
When selecting the busbars and cables for the power connections between the drive components and auxiliary components, refer to the highest possible continuous temperature and load. All the recommended cable dimensions are for copper cables. It is recommended to use, for example, Nexans SIWO-KUL B10 6.6/7.2 kV copper cables in the medium-voltage sections of the cabinet.

The recommended cable sizes apply to cables with a maximum operation temperature of +120°C (+248°F).



### Illustration 27: Recommended Cable Sizes for VACON® 3000 AFE Drives

1	See <a href="#">Table 8</a>
2–4	See <a href="#">Table 9</a>



### Illustration 28: Recommended Cable Sizes for VACON® 3000 12-Pulse Drives

1	See <a href="#">Table 8</a>	5	See <a href="#">Table 10</a>
2–4	See <a href="#">Table 9</a>		

**Table 8: The Recommended 6.6 kV Main Circuit Cable Sizes for VACON® 3000 AFE and 12-pulse drives**

Drive Nominal Voltage	Drive Nominal Current	Cable Size, Cu	Part Number <sup>(1)</sup>
3300 V	425 A	185 mm <sup>2</sup> (350 kcmil)	10148885
	640 A	240 mm <sup>2</sup> (500 kcmil)	10148947
	820 A	2×185 mm <sup>2</sup> (2×350 kcmil)	10148885
	1230 A	2×240 mm <sup>2</sup> (2×500 kcmil)	10148947

Drive Nominal Voltage	Drive Nominal Current	Cable Size, Cu	Part Number <sup>(1)</sup>
4160 V	340 A	185 mm <sup>2</sup> (350 kcmil)	10148885
	510 A	240 mm <sup>2</sup> (500 kcmil)	10148947
	650 A	2×185 mm <sup>2</sup> (2×350 kcmil)	10148885
	980 A	2×240 mm <sup>2</sup> (2×500 kcmil)	10148947

<sup>1</sup> Cu-cable SIWO-KUL B10 6.6/7.2 kV from Nexans

**Table 9: The recommended sizes for the cables 2, 3, and 4**

Cable	Cable Size, Cu	Part Number <sup>(2)</sup>
2	70 mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG00)	10148773
3	16 mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG6)	10148769
4	6 mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG10)	10148778

<sup>2</sup> Cu-cable SIWO-KUL from Nexans

**Table 10: AC Busbars for DFE Module of VACON® 3000 12-pulse drives**

Drive Nominal Voltage	Drive Nominal Current	Busbar thickness	Busbar width
3300 V	425–1230 A	8 mm (0.315 in) <sup>(1)</sup>	80 mm (3.15 in) <sup>(2)</sup>
4160 V	340–980 A		

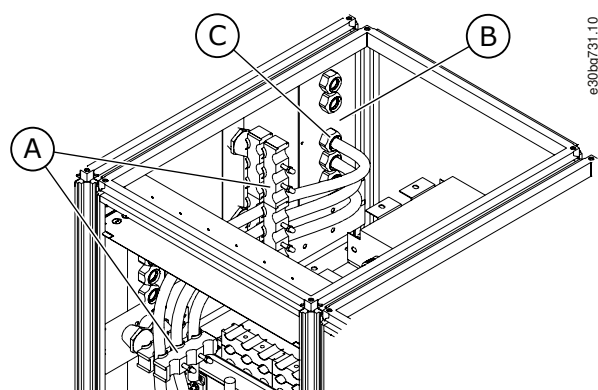
<sup>1</sup> Fixed due to DFE connector size.

<sup>2</sup> Sized according to VACON3000-12-1230-03.

### 6.1.3 Cable Inlets Between Cabinet Sections

It is recommended to use cable installation kits to make sure that there is sufficient clearance (approximately 25 mm / 1 in) between the cables and between the cables and conductor materials.

Use insulation plates that have grommets made of insulating material or non-magnetic metal (for example aluminum) for each cable inlet.



**Illustration 29: Example of Cable Installation Kits and a Cable Inlet**

A	Cable installation kits	C	Grommets made of insulating material
B	Insulation plate		

## 6.1.4 Mains and Motor Cable Selection

### ⚠ CAUTION ⚠

#### UNEQUAL LOAD

If the cable installation is not symmetrical, unequal load can occur in AC drives with parallel inputs or outputs. The unequal load can decrease loadability or damage the drive.

- In drives with parallel inputs or outputs, make sure that the cable size, cable length, cable type, and routing is the same for all parallel cables.

Use cables with a nominal voltage  $U_0/U$  of 3.6/6 kV and maximum voltage 7.2 kV. The size and type of the cable depends on the application of the drive. The cable size is also affected by:

- The current at continuous load,
- the permitted short-circuit current,
- the installation conditions.

To decrease EMI, use shielded 3-phase cables for the motor connection. If single-core cables are used in the input or output, they must be shielded.

When selecting the cable, refer to the input voltage and the load current of the drive. Obey all applicable standards and local safety regulations.

#### Example

##### Mains Cables for the VACON® 3000 4160 V 510 A AFE Drive

The recommendation for the VACON® 3000 4160 V 510 A AFE drive, is to use two 240 mm<sup>2</sup> (500 kcmil) M2N type cables (available from Liban Cables/Nexans) for each phase. The cables are 3.6/6 kV copper cables with one core, XLPE insulation, a PVC cover, shielded, and unarmored.

## 6.1.5 Mains and Motor Cable Inlet and Termination

The bottom or top sections of the enclosure must have cable entries which have flanges with rubber gaskets, grommets, or equivalent sealing for the cable entry.

Connect the mains cables to terminals L1, L2, and L3 in the mains input section. Connect the motor cables to the inverter section terminals U, V, and W. Make openings for the cables in the grommets on the bottom or top of the cabinet and push through the cables. Use cable clamps to attach the cables. Always connect the PE conductors of the mains and motor cables to the PE busbar.

In units with parallel motor outputs, do not connect the motor cables together in the AC drive end. Always connect the parallel motor cables together in the motor end only. The minimum motor cable length is 5 m (16.4 ft).

Use medium-voltage cable lugs to connect the cables to the busbar terminals. Use heat shrink or cold shrink cable termination kits on the cables, for example, the kits HIT1.1204L or CIT1.1204L available from Ensto.

The output cables to the motor must be 360° EMC grounded, for example, by installing EMC grounding clamps at the cable inlet. To make a 360° connection with the grounding clamps and the cable shield, strip the cables. The EMC grounding clamps must be the correct size to give a 360° contact with the cable shield.

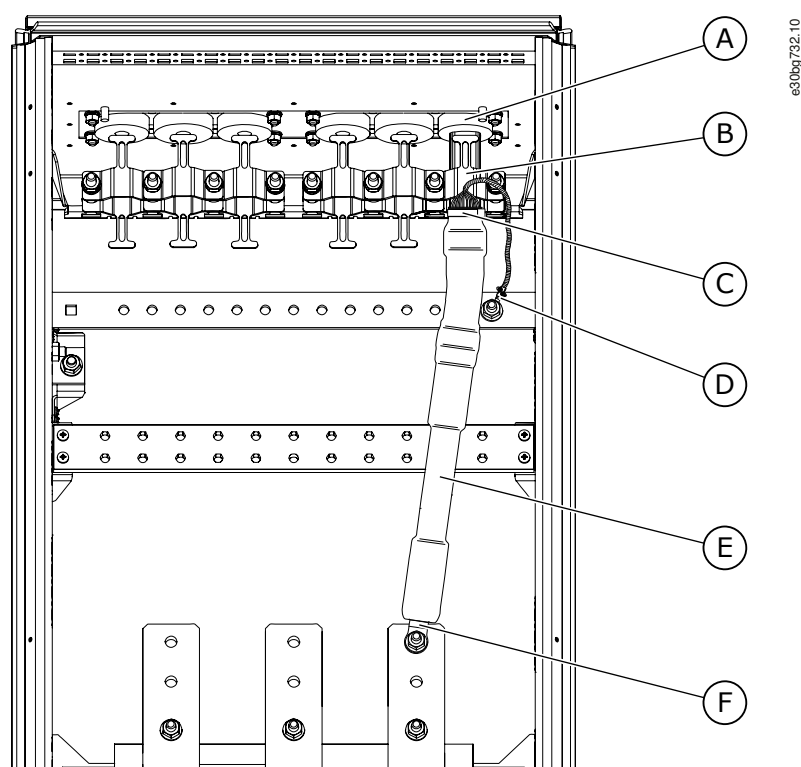


Illustration 30: Example of a 1-phase Motor Cable Inlet to the Cabinet

A Cable grommet

B Cable clamp

C 360° EMC grounding

D PE busbar

E Cable termination

F Cable lug

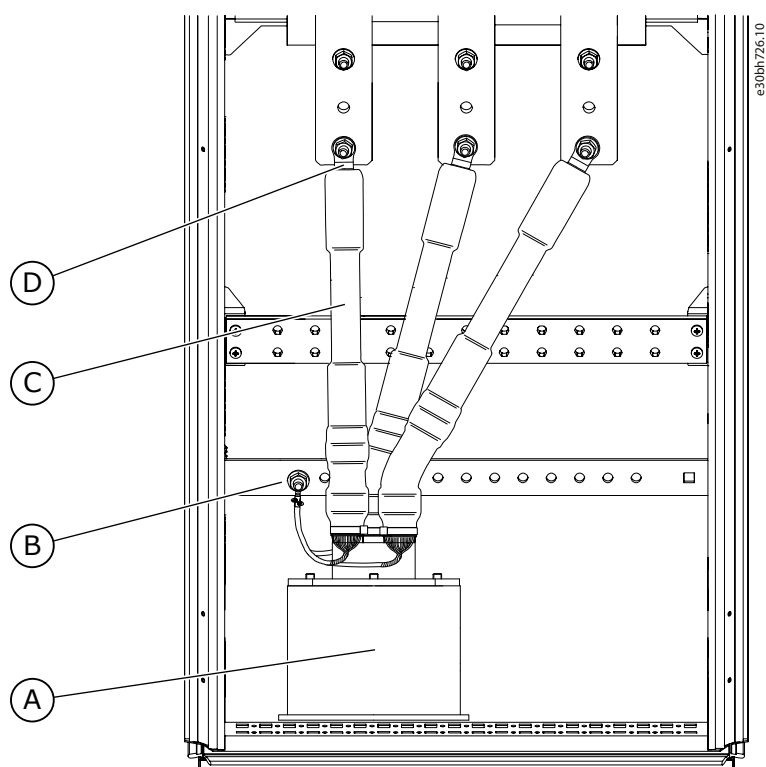


Illustration 31: Example of a 3-phase Motor Cable Inlet to the Cabinet

A	Cable entry seal with 360° EMC grounding	C	Cable termination
B	PE busbar	D	Cable lug

### 6.1.6 Grounding

Ground the AC drive in accordance with applicable standards and directives.

Unless local wiring regulations state otherwise, the cross-sectional area of the PE conductor must be at least ½ times the phase conductor and made of the same material, according to IEC 61800-5-1. The connection must be fixed.

Where relevant, refer to the grounding instructions in Article 250 of the National Electrical Code® (NEC®).

Install a protective earthing (PE) rail, for example, at the bottom front of the cabinets. Connect the PE rail to an external ground at the installation location as is approved in the applicable regulations. Obey the local regulations on the minimum size of the protective earthing conductor.

Connect the phase module grounding terminals to the PE rail. Also ground the frames of the inductors and capacitors. Use a copper grounding conductor with a cross-sectional area of minimum  $2 \times 35 \text{ mm}^2$  (2 x AWG2) for each power module or a cable which obeys the local regulations for grounding conductors.

Make sure that the ground connection to the frame of the inductors and capacitors is good. If the component is painted, remove the paint from the connection point.

Always connect the PE conductors of the mains and motor cables to the PE busbar. The output cables to the motor must be 360° EMC grounded. To make a 360° connection with the grounding clamps and the cable shield, strip the cables.

Grounding the cable shields:

- 3-phase cables: Ground the mains and motor cable shields at the drive, transformer, and motor ends of the cables.
- 1-phase cables: Ground the mains and motor cable shields only at the drive ends of the cables.

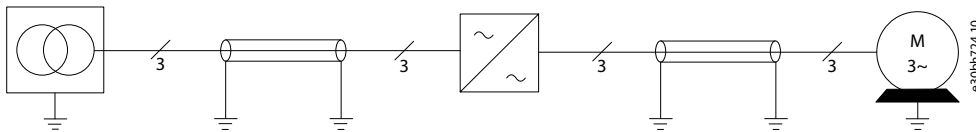


Illustration 32: Grounding the Cable Shields of 3-phase Cables

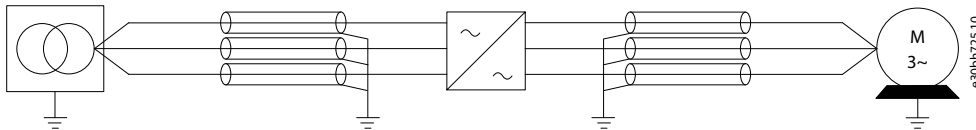


Illustration 33: Grounding the Cable Shields of 1-phase Cables

#### 6.1.6.1 Standard Grounding Configurations

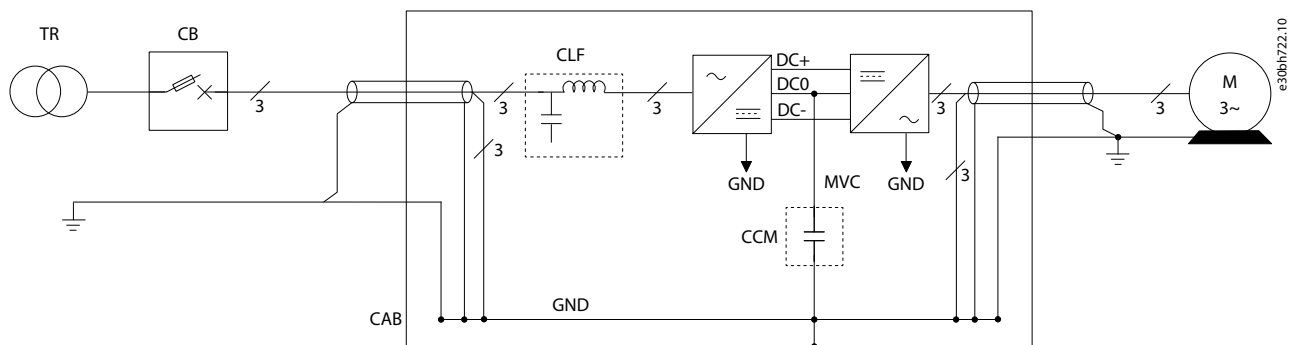


Illustration 34: Grounding of Transformer-Isolated Drives

CAB	Drive cabinet frame	GND	Grounding busbar
CB	MV circuit breaker or fused contactor	M	MV motor
CCM	Grounding capacitor	MVC	MV cable
CLF	CL filter	TR	MV transformer (secondary side ungrounded)

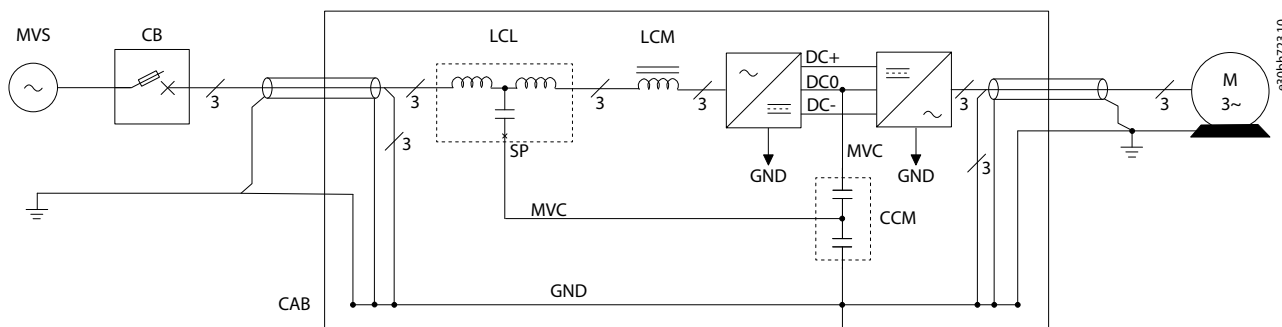


Illustration 35: Grounding of Grid-Connected Drives

CAB	Drive cabinet frame	LCM	Common-mode inductor
CB	MV circuit breaker or fused contactor	M	MV motor
CCM	Common-mode capacitor network (used in grid-connected systems only)	MVC	MV cable
GND	Grounding busbar	MVS	MV source (ungrounded or impedance grounded only)
LCL	LCL filter	SP	Star point of shunt capacitor

### 6.1.7 Installation in an IT grid

The VACON® 3000 phase modules have in-built ground fault monitoring. In networks where the mains is impedance-grounded (IT), there is often separate ground fault monitoring equipment. This external equipment usually has limitations on the minimum grounding resistance or the maximum grounding capacitance of the AC drive.

By default, the drive has a 25  $\mu\text{F}$  common-mode capacitor installed between DC neutral and ground (see [6.5.7 Common-Mode Capacitor Installation](#)). If this grounding capacitance is too high for the ground fault monitoring equipment, it can be replaced with a smaller capacitance. Contact Danfoss for further information.

For ground voltage measurement, each phase module has 12 M $\Omega$  grounding resistance between DC neutral and ground. This resistance cannot be removed. However, each phase module has also a 190 k $\Omega$  (for 3300 V) or 300 k $\Omega$  (for 4160 V) resistor installed to ground. It is possible to order the phase modules with this grounding resistor disconnected (option +PGDN).

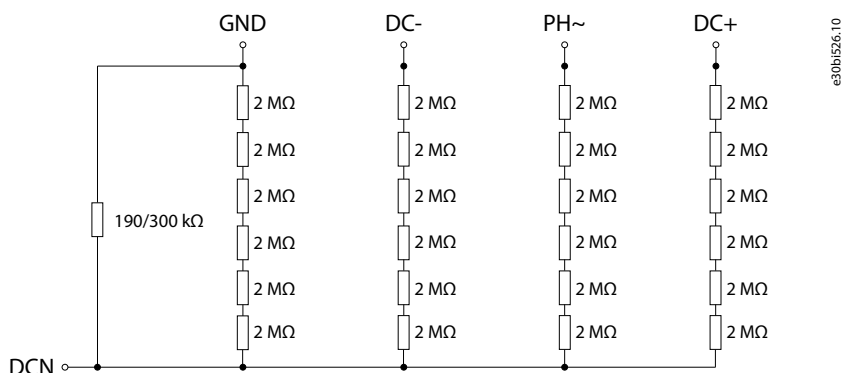


Illustration 36: Grounding Resistance in the Phase Modules

**Example**

A 4160 V, 2 MW or 3 MW VACON® 3000 AFE drive has 6 phase modules. Therefore, the total grounding resistance is approximately  $300 \text{ k}\Omega/6 = 50 \text{ k}\Omega$  (neglecting the  $12 \text{ M}\Omega/6 = 2 \text{ M}\Omega$  of the phase modules).

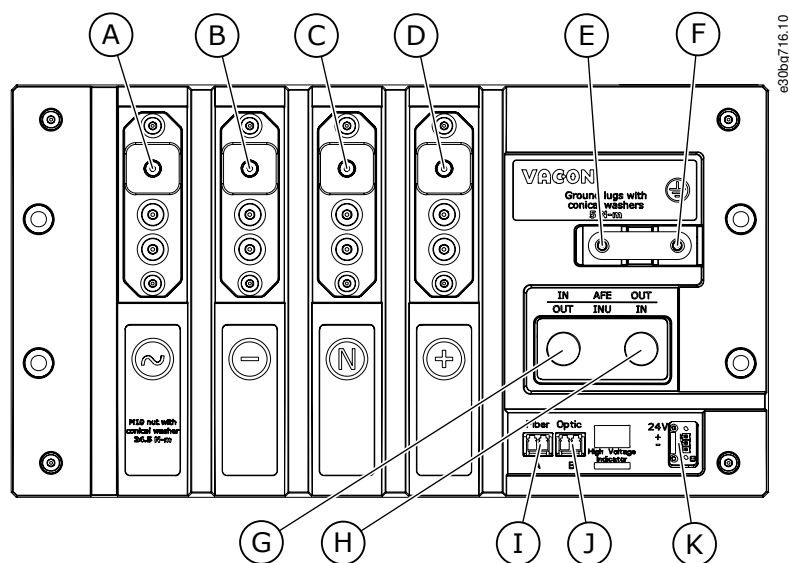
**6.1.8 Additional Instructions for Cable Installation**

- Before starting the installation, make sure that none of the components of the AC drive is live. Read carefully the warnings in the Safety section.
- Make sure that the motor cables are sufficiently far from other cables.
- The motor cables must go across other cables at an angle of 90°.
- If it is possible, do not put the motor cables in long parallel lines with other cables.
- Only use symmetrically EMC shielded motor cables.
- Make sure that there is sufficient clearance (approximately 25 mm/1 in) between the cables in the cabinet and between the cables and conductor materials.
- If cable insulation checks are necessary, see [8.4.2 Measuring the Cable and Motor Insulation](#).

**6.2 Cabling of the Power Modules****6.2.1 Phase Module Terminals**

To make access and installation easy, all terminals are located in the front of the phase modules. Phase, DC, neutral, and ground terminals have sufficient space between them and creepage walls on each side. To make the terminals compatible with different cable lugs, the terminals can be changed by removing screws from the front.

See the functions of the AFE/INU phase module terminals in [Illustration 37](#). If the phase module operates as an AFE or INU, some of the terminals have different functions.



**Illustration 37: AFE/INU Phase Module Terminals**

A	~, phase input (AFE) / motor output (INU), size M10	G	Cooling liquid terminal in (AFE) / out (INU)
B	-, DC minus, size M10	H	Cooling liquid terminal in (INU) / out (AFE)
C	0, DC link neutral point, size M10	I	Optical fiber A
D	+, DC plus, size M10	J	Optical fiber B
E	Heat sink terminal, size M6	K	24 V supply for control
F	Ground terminal, size M6		



## 6.2.2 DFE Power Module Terminals

In the DFE power module, all terminals are at the front of the module, except the AC input terminals, which are at the back of the module. DC, neutral, and ground terminals have sufficient space between them and creepage walls on each side. To make the DC terminals compatible with different cable lugs, the terminals can be changed by removing screws from the front. The AC terminals have knife type busbar connections for 10 mm (0.39 in) thick busbars.

The functions and locations of the DFE power module terminals are shown in [Illustration 38](#).

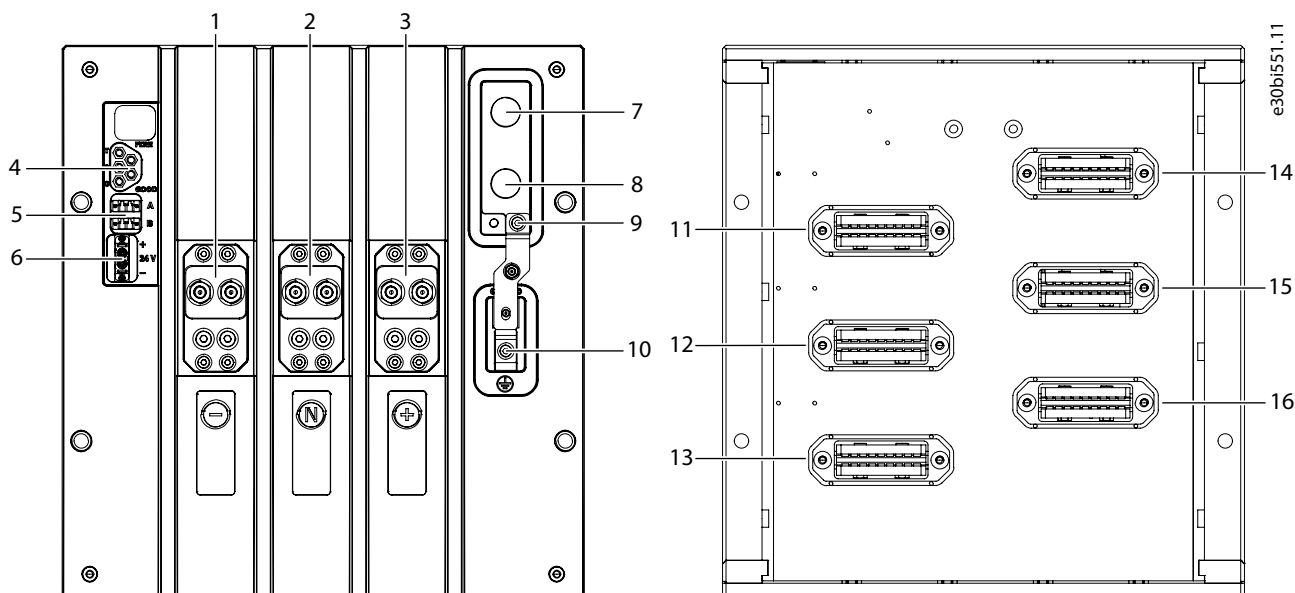


Illustration 38: Terminals in the Front (left) and Back (right) of the DFE Power Module

1	- , DC minus, size M10	9	Heat sink terminal, size M6
2	N, DC neutral, size M10	10	Ground terminal, size M6
3	+, DC plus, size M10	11	1L1, phase input
4	Optical fibers	12	1L2, phase input
5	Optical fibers A and B	13	1L3, phase input
6	24 V supply	14	2L1, phase input
7	Cooling liquid terminal in	15	2L2, phase input
8	Cooling liquid terminal out	16	2L3, phase input

### 6.2.2.1 DFE Control Terminals

The DFE power module has specific terminals for controlling the crowbar circuit in the module. Optical fiber terminals A and B are for Powerbus connection to the auxiliary I/O board.

The optical crowbar circuit control connectors:

- T: Crowbar TX
- R: Crowbar RX
- O: Crowbar fire out
- FIRE: External crowbar fire in
- GOOD: Main circuit breaker enable out

## NOTICE

To avoid unintentional crowbar firing, protect unused optical connectors with matching covers.

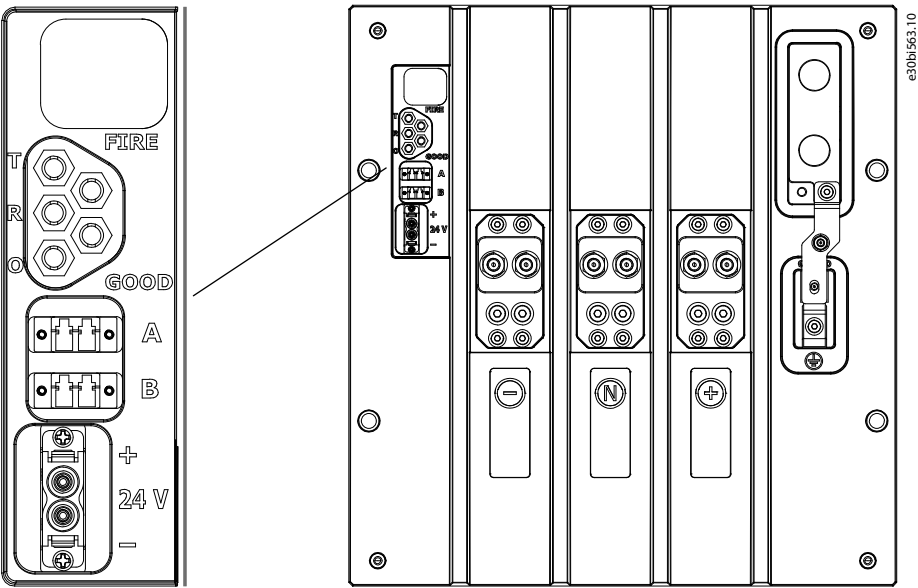


Illustration 39: Control Terminals of the DFE Power module

6.2.3 Power Module Grounding

⚠ CAUTION ⚠

**GROUNDING THE HEAT SINK**

- In the power modules, do not remove the grounding jumper between the heat sink terminal and the ground terminal.

Ground all the power modules. Also the heat sinks of all power modules must be grounded. Make sure that the grounding jumper is connected between the heat sink terminal and the ground terminal (see [Illustration 40](#)).

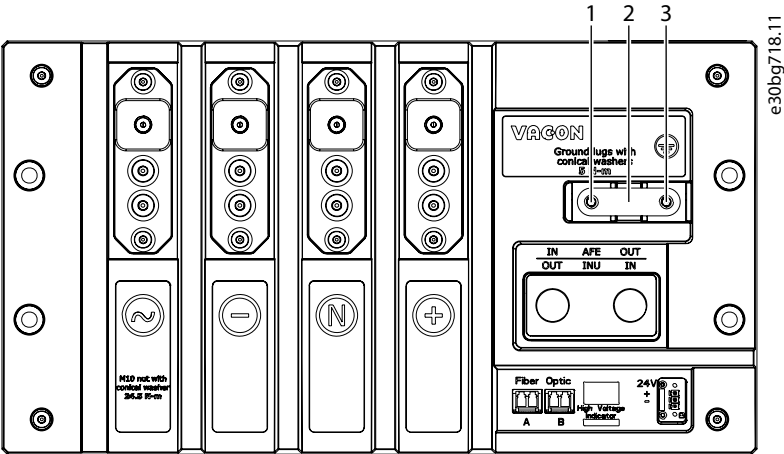


Illustration 40: AFE/INU Phase Module Grounding Terminals and Jumper

1	Heat sink terminal	3	Grounding terminal
2	Heat sink grounding jumper		

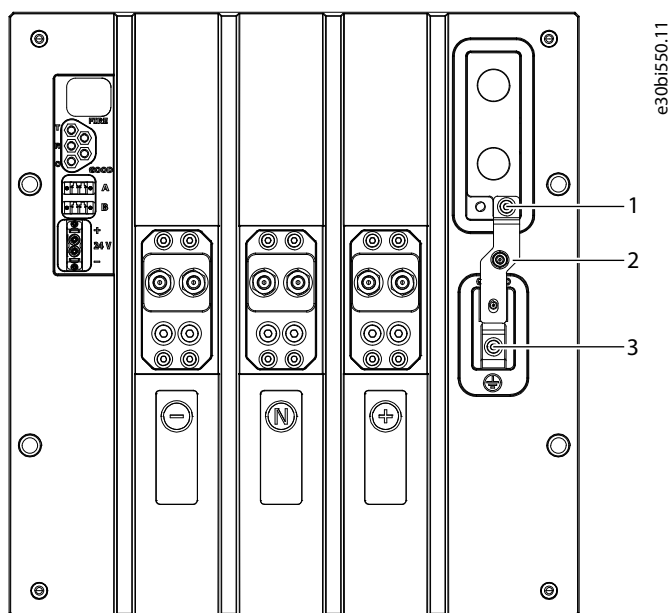


Illustration 41: DFE Power Module Grounding Terminals and Jumper

1	Heat sink terminal	3	Grounding terminal
2	Heat sink grounding jumper		

Use a busbar to connect all the grounding terminals of the phase modules and power modules to the same grounding busbar. See the example in [Illustration 42](#).

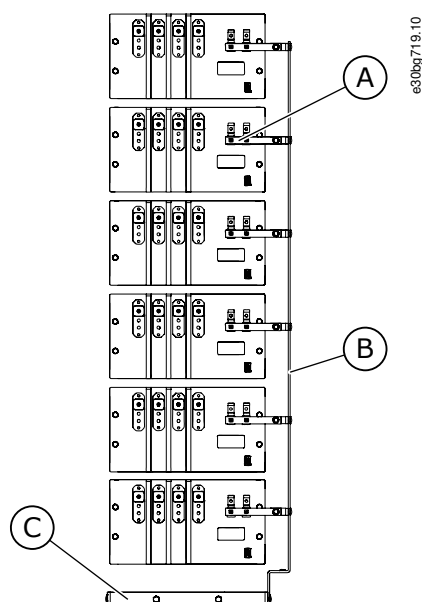


Illustration 42: Phase Module Grounding Connection Busbar Example

A	Grounding terminals	C	Grounding busbar
B	Grounding connection busbar		

## 6.2.4 DC-Link Connections

The VACON® 3000 power modules and DC capacitors for DFE have three DC terminals: plus (+), minus (-) and neutral (N).

Busbars or cables can be used to make the DC-link connections.

### DC-link connections in AFE drives

- Connect the output DC terminals of the AFE phase modules to the DC-input terminals of the INU phase modules.
- Connect the DC-plus terminals of the phase modules together and the DC-minus terminals of the phase modules together.
- Connect the DC-link neutral points of the phase modules and ground them through the common-mode capacitor (CCM).
- See circuit diagram A in [Illustration 43](#).

#### DC-link connections in 12-pulse drives

- Connect the output DC terminals of the DFE power module to the plus (+), minus (-), and neutral (N) terminals of the DC capacitor for DFE (CDC).
- Connect the DC terminals of the INU phase modules to the plus (+), minus (-), and neutral (N) terminals of the CDC.
- Ground the DC-link neutral point through the common-mode capacitor (CCM).
- See circuit diagram B in [Illustration 43](#).

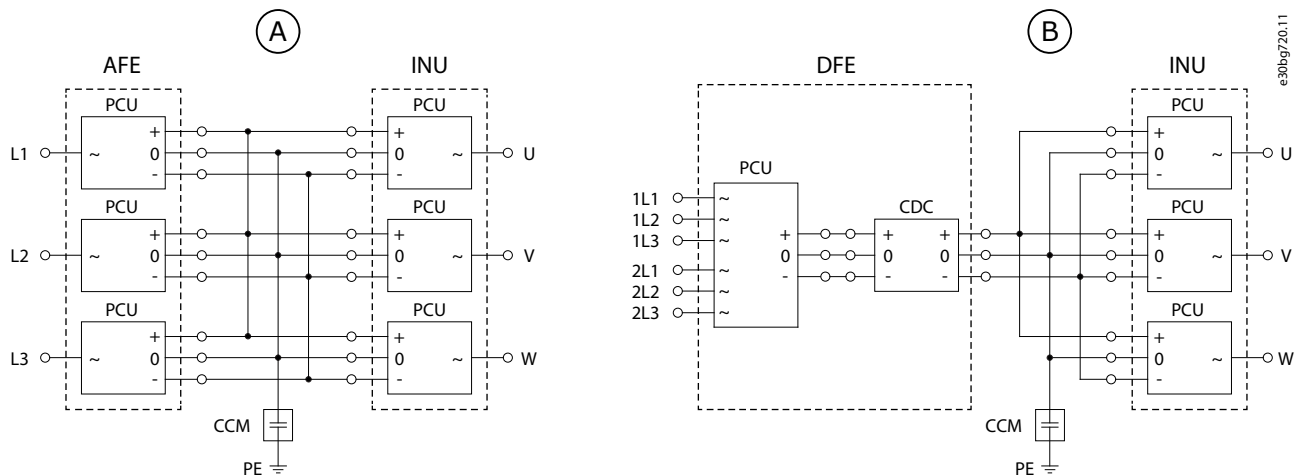


Illustration 43: DC-Link Connections in VACON® 3000 Drives

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| A | AFE drive      |
| B | 12-pulse drive |

#### DC-link connections in VACON® 3000 drives with parallel power circuits

- Connect the plus, minus, and neutral terminals of the parallel DC links.
- See the circuit diagrams in [Illustration 44](#).

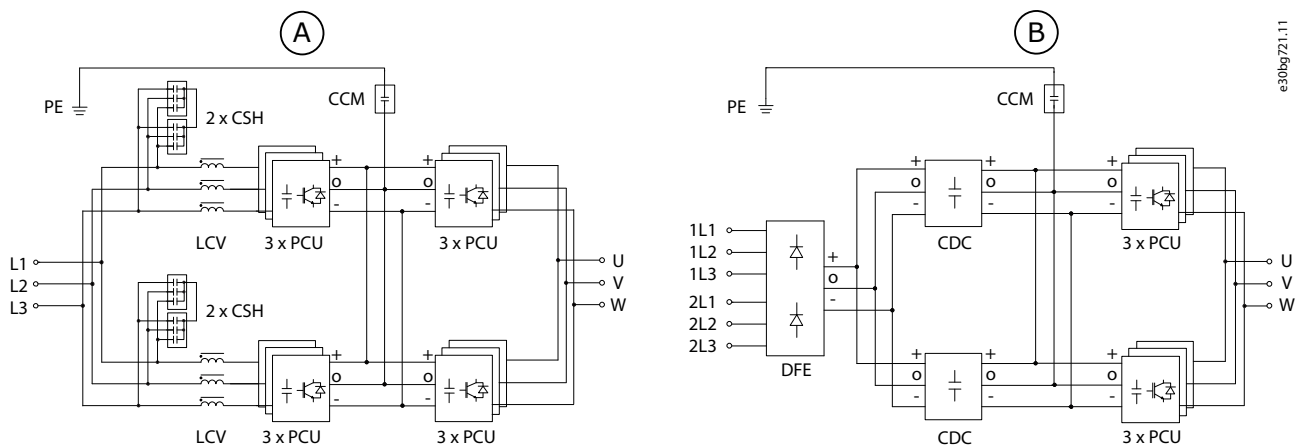


Illustration 44: DC-Link Connection Examples for VACON® 3000 Drives with Parallel Power Circuits

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| A | AFE drive      |
| B | 12-pulse drive |

## 6.2.5 Brake Chopper Installation

The brake chopper module is an L20 or L30/H30 phase module. Thus, the electrical and control interface is the same as in AFE and INU phase modules. See [6.2.1 Phase Module Terminals](#).

- Ground the brake chopper module in the same way as the other power modules. See [6.2.3 Power Module Grounding](#).
- Make the DC-link connections in the same way as for the INU phase modules. See [6.2.4 DC-Link Connections](#).

### Brake resistor connections

- Connect the brake resistor between the output terminal (~) of the brake chopper unit (+DBCUs) and the DC-link neutral point.

The brake resistor is not included in the brake chopper option (+DBCUs) delivery. The resistor can be ordered with a separate order code.

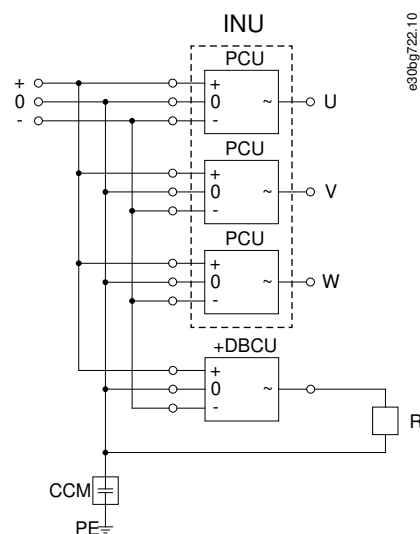


Illustration 45: DC-Link and Brake Resistor Connections of the Brake Chopper Unit

R Brake resistor

## 6.2.6 Terminal Screw Tightening Torque Specifications

Table 11: Power Module Terminal Screw Tightening Torque Specifications

Terminal	Size	Tightening Torque
Power terminals	M10	24.5 Nm (217 in-lb)
Ground terminals	M6	5 Nm (44 in-lb)

## 6.2.7 LED Display on the Phase Module

### ⚠ DANGER ⚠

#### VOLTAGE INDICATION

The voltage indicators on the phase module are not safety approved. Even if the voltage indicators are off, there can be a dangerous voltage in the module. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Even if the voltage indicators are off, before touching the module:  
Short circuit the DC-link terminals and connect them to ground.  
Do measurements and make sure that there is no voltage.

In the front of the phase module, there is a four letter LED display and four LED indicators: BBP, BBN, LED1 and LED2. BBP and BBN show if there is voltage in the DC link plus and minus busbars. The functions of LED1 and LED2 are not set.

The LED indicators BBP and BBN use the power from the DC link to operate. That is, if the 24 V supply to the phase modules stops, the LEDs show if the DC link is charged. The LEDs are on when the capacitor DC-link half voltages are >500 V. They start to blink as the voltage drops to <500 V. If the voltages drop to <25 V, the LEDs turn off.

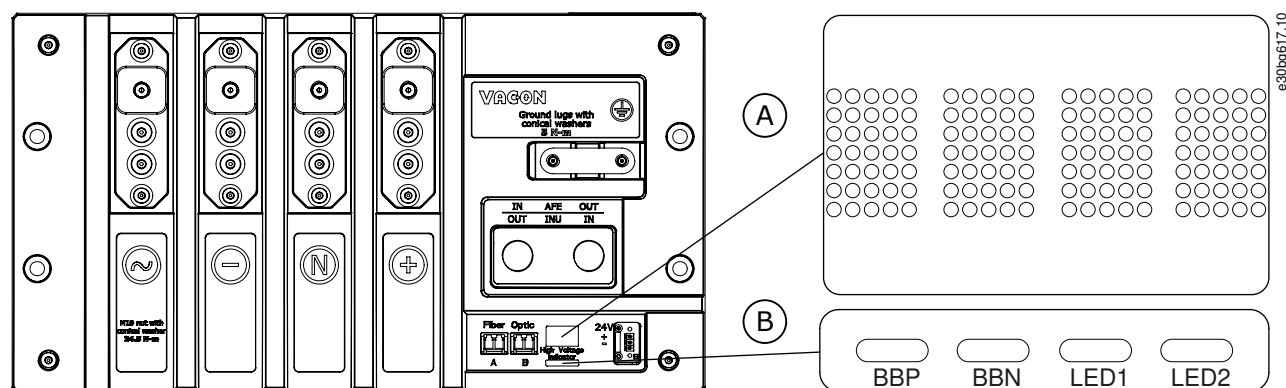


Illustration 46: LEDs in the front of the phase module

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| A | Four character LED display |
| B | LED indicators             |

### LED Display Operation

The phase module start up sequence starts when the connection between the phase module and control unit is disconnected. Usually the start up occurs when 24 V DC is supplied to the module. Also, the start up sequence occurs during a software update.

LED display modes during phase module start up:

- 1. Reset mode: The display is empty.
- 2. Phase module software setup: The phase module sets up local software.
- 3. Phase module communication setup: After the software setup, the phase module enables communication to the control unit. When the phase module receives the first message from the control unit, the PCU moves to the next mode.
- 4. Control unit setup: Set up between the control unit and the phase module. If the setup is a success, the phase module moves to the next mode.
- 5. Network setup: The last step in the setup. When the phase module receives approval from the control unit, the phase module moves to the operation mode.
- 6. Operation: In the operation mode, the LED display view changes at an interval of 3 s. The display changes between the belt information indicator (6A) and the module information indicator (6B).

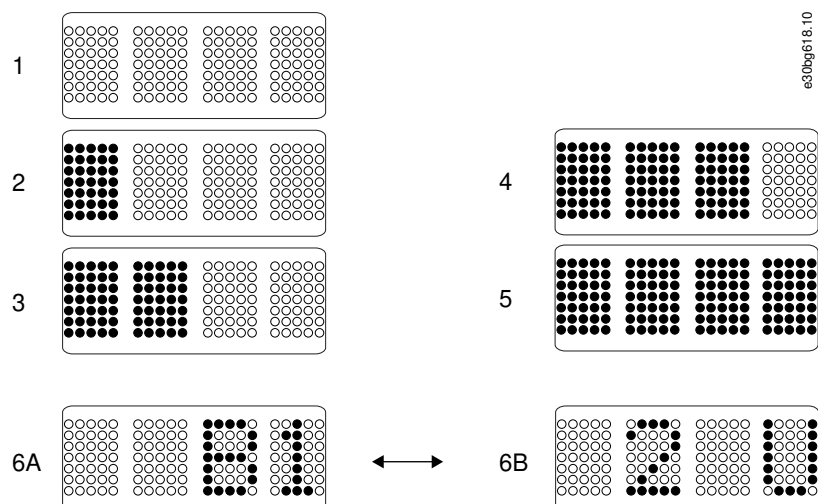


Illustration 47: LED Display Modes During Start Up

**Belt information:** The belt information indicator tells the number of the AFE or INU unit (or belt of three modules) in which the PCU is installed (see [7.8 Optical Fiber Connections](#)).

The belt information indicator is of type: [ ] [ ] [B] [belt number 1–4].

- The first two digits are empty.
- The last two digits show the belt number (B1–B4).

**Module information:** The module information indicator tells the identification number of the PCU, the unit type (AFE/INU), and the phase of the module.

The module information indicator is of type: [PowerID N\_] [PowerID \_N] [L = AFE, 'blank' = INU] [1, 2, 3 for AFE; U, V, W for INU].

- The first two digits show the ID of the phase module.
- The last two digits show the phase.
  - AFE: L1, L2, or L3.
  - INU: \_U, \_V, or \_W.
  - BCU: RA, RB, or RC.

The PowerID is a 2-digit identification number for each phase module. The ID can be mapped directly to the HMI fault source indication.

Belt and module information examples (see 6A/6B in [Illustration 47](#)):

- [ ] [ ] [B] [1] <-> [ ] [2] [ ] [U] = phase module ID 2, U phase INU in belt 1
- [ ] [ ] [B] [1] <-> [ ] [4] [ ] [W] = phase module ID 4, W phase INU in belt 1
- [ ] [ ] [B] [3] <-> [1] [0] [ ] [W] = phase module ID 10, W phase INU in belt 3
- [ ] [ ] [B] [1] <-> [ ] [2] [L] [1] = phase module ID 2, L1 phase AFE in belt 1
- [ ] [ ] [B] [1] <-> [ ] [4] [L] [3] = phase module ID 4, L3 phase AFE in belt 1

### 6.2.8 LED Display on the DFE Power Module

There is a four character LED display on the front of the DFE power module. The display functions in the same principle as the display on the phase modules, but the shown belt and module information is different. See [6.2.7 LED Display on the Phase Module](#).

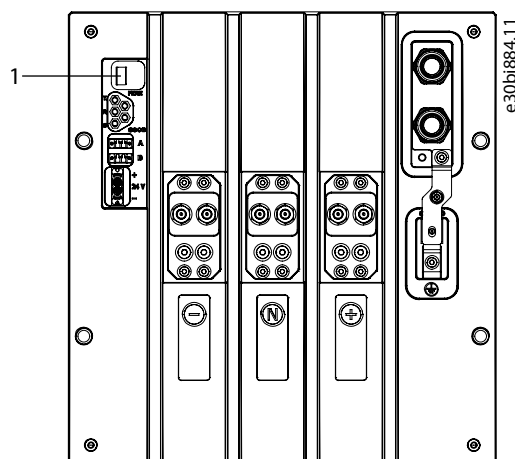


Illustration 48: LEDs on the Front of the DFE Power Module

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1 | Four character LED display |
|---|----------------------------|

**Belt information:** The belt information indicator tells the number of the channel on the control unit to which the power module is connected, in this case C5 (see [7.8 Optical Fiber Connections](#)).

The belt information indicator is of type: [ ] [ ] [C] [5].

- The first two digits are empty.
- The last two digits show the number of the channel.

**Module information:** The module information indicator tells the identification number of the power module. The number of the first installed DFE power module is 22, the second is 23, and so on.

The module information indicator is of type: [PowerID N\_] [PowerID \_N] [ ] [ ].

- The first two digits show the ID of the power module.
- The last two digits are empty.

### 6.3 Single-belt Operation

VACON® 3000 drives with parallel power circuits (dual-belt drives) can be configured for single-belt operation. If there is a fault in one of the phase modules, single-belt operation can be used temporarily to bypass one of the parallel power circuits and run the drive at lower capacity.

If single-belt operation is required, contact Danfoss.

### 6.4 Main Circuit Breaker Installation

Install a main circuit breaker for the short-circuit protection of the AC drive. Use, for example, a fast vacuum circuit breaker. When selecting the size of the mains circuit breaker, refer to the available short circuit power, continuous current, and supply voltage.

The operation time of the circuit breaker must not be longer than 4 cycles (50 Hz: 80 ms, 60 Hz: 67 ms).

The function of the circuit breaker is to give short-circuit protection. For ground fault protection, install a protection relay and resistors.

## NOTICE

### CONNECTION TO ARC FLASH PROTECTION

Connect the circuit breaker to the arc flash detection system in the AC drive cabinet.

### 6.5 Installation of Auxiliary Components

#### 6.5.1 Surge Protection Device Installation

Installation in an AFE Drive with an Input Common-Mode Filter

Install the surge protection device (SPD) in the drive cabinet near the input section. Install the SPD on the supply side of the input common-mode filter with one metal oxide varistor (MOV) between each phase and ground.

Connect the SPD grounding terminal to ground. The conductor size must be a minimum 16 mm<sup>2</sup> (AWG6).

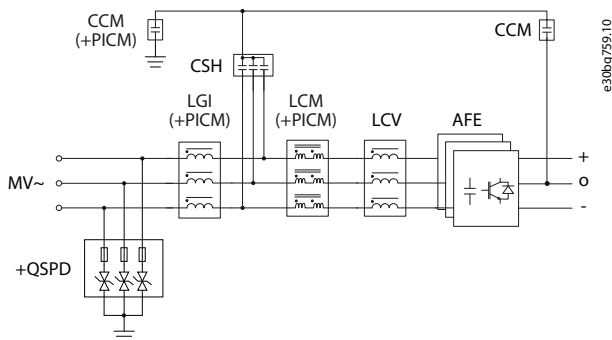


Illustration 49: Installation of the SPD option (+QSPD) in an AFE Drive with an Input Common-Mode Filter (+PICM)

Installation in an AFE Drive Supplied by a Dedicated Transformer

## CAUTION

### COMMON-MODE VOLTAGES

An AFE installation which is supplied by a dedicated transformer does not require an input common-mode filter. In this case, however, there are common-mode voltages between the supply transformer and the AFE drive. These voltages could damage the SPD.

- Because of common-mode voltages, do not install the SPD between the supply transformer and the AFE drive if there is no input common-mode filter. Instead, install the SPD on the supply side of the supply transformer.

#### 6.5.2 Potential Transformer Installation

Connect the potential transformer on the supply side of the main circuit breaker (MCB). If there is a dedicated supply transformer, install the potential transformer on the supply side.

Connect the phases L1, L2, and L3 to terminals A, B, and C on the potential transformer. Connect the terminals X1, X2, and X3 to the AFE control unit (CNU-AFE). See [7.9 Pre-charge and Supply Voltage Feedback Connections](#).



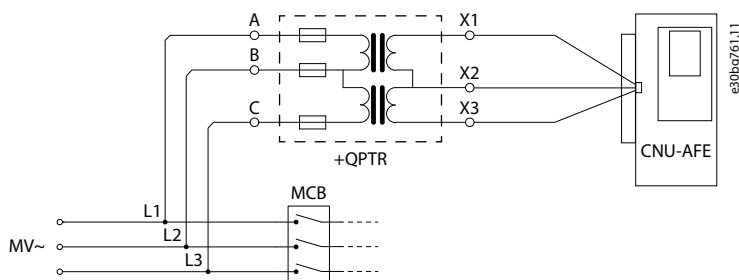


Illustration 50: Potential Transformer (+QPTR) Installation

The potential transformer available as option +QPTR can only be used for nominal primary side voltages up to 4160 V. For higher supply voltages, a different transformer is required. The transformer secondary voltages must be 120 V.

If the AC drive must fulfill the requirements of IEC 61800-5-1 and the potential transformer is to be installed inside the drive enclosure, then the transformer must fulfill the protective separation requirements for decisive voltage class D. The potential transformer available as option +QPTR does not fulfill this requirement, and must be installed outside the drive enclosure.

If the drive must fulfill the requirements of UL347A, there are no protective separation requirements.

If the potential transformer is to be installed inside the drive enclosure, install it in the low-voltage section of the cabinet. Make sure that there is a minimum of 40 mm (1.5 in) between the transformer frame and grounded cabinet parts. See the dimensions of the potential transformer in [11.1.12 Dimensions, Potential Transformer](#).

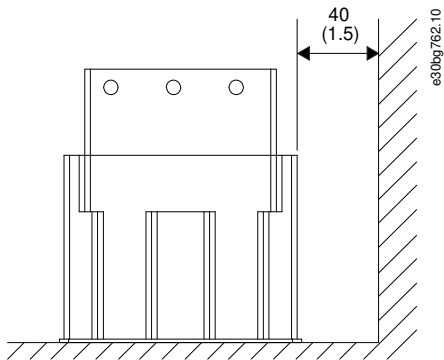


Illustration 51: Recommended Free Space Around the Potential Transformer in mm (in)

### 6.5.3 LC Filter Installation

The LC filter contains an AFE side inductor (LCV) and shunt capacitors (CSH).

Install the filter between the supply network and the AFE unit in the medium-voltage section of the cabinet.

#### Installation of the AFE Side Inductor

Install the AFE side inductor (LCV) before the input to the AFE unit. If the input common-mode filter option (+PICM) is selected, install the LCV between the common-mode inductor and the AFE unit input.

Connect the thermal switch of the inductor to the auxiliary I/O board.

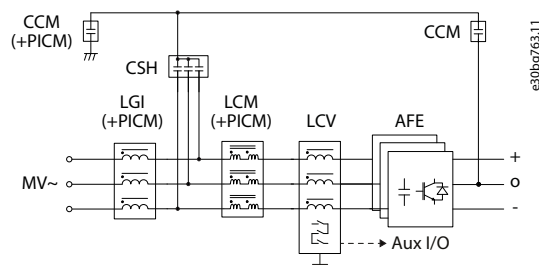


Illustration 52: Installation of the AFE Side Inductor (LCV)

## Installation of the Shunt Capacitors

**! D A N G E R !**

## SHOCK HAZARD FROM CAPACITOR

The capacitor has bleed resistors. The discharge time to < 50 V DC is 5 minutes. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Do not touch the capacitor before it has been discharged. Use a measuring device to make sure that there is no voltage.

**⚠ CAUTION ⚠**

### COMMON-MODE VOLTAGE

Common-mode voltages can damage the shunt capacitors.

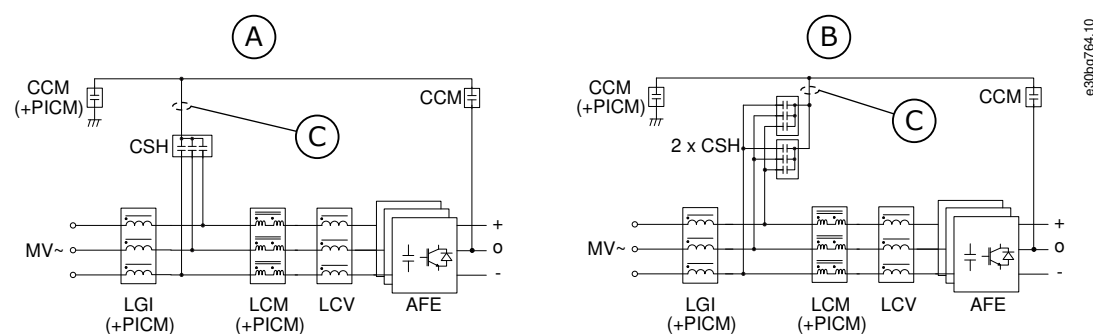
- If there is no input common-mode filter installed, do not connect the shunt capacitors to ground.

Install the shunt capacitors (CSH) between the phases L1, L2, and L3. If the input common-mode filter option (+PICM) is selected, ground the CSH through the common-mode capacitor (CCM). If there is no input common-mode filter, do not connect the CSH to ground.

Connect the shunt capacitors to the phases L1, L2, and L3 on the supply network side of the LCV. If the input common-mode filter option (+PICM) is selected, connect the CSH between the grid side AFE inductor (LGI) and common-mode inductor (LCM).

If 2 shunt capacitors are necessary, connect them in parallel. See the circuit diagram examples in [Illustration 53](#).

If it is necessary to route the cables to the CSH through a cabinet wall, put the 3-phase cables and the wye connector through the same cable inlet.



### Illustration 53: Installation of the Shunt Capacitors

A	LC Filter with 1xC5H	C	C5H ground connection
B	LC Filter with 2xC5H		

#### 6.5.4 Input Common-mode Filter Installation

The input common-mode (CM) filter includes a grid side AFE inductor (LGI), a common-mode inductor (LCM), and a common-mode capacitor (CCM).

Install the CM filter between the supply network and the AFE unit in the medium-voltage section of the cabinet.

### Installation of the Grid Side AFE Inductor and Common-mode Inductor

Install the grid side AFE inductor (LGI) and the common-mode inductor (LCM) in series, with the LGI on the supply network side.

Install the inductors on the supply side of the AFE side inductor (LCV). The shunt capacitor connection must be between the LGI and LCM.

Connect the thermal switches of the inductors to the auxiliary I/O board.

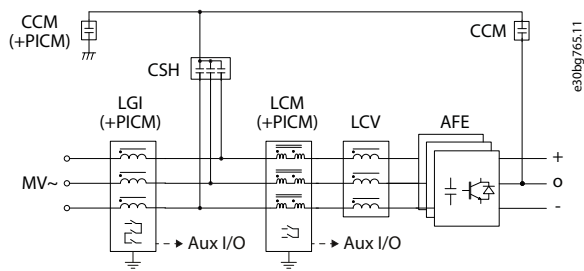


Illustration 54: Input Common-mode Filter (+PICM) Installation in a VACON® 3000 AFE Drive

### Installation of the Common-mode Capacitor

Install the common-mode capacitor (CCM) of the input common-mode filter between the shunt capacitors (CSH), the common-mode capacitor (CCM), and the ground. For more information, see [6.5.7 Common-Mode Capacitor Installation](#).

### 6.5.5 DC Capacitors for DFE Installation

Install the DC capacitors (CDC) between the DFE power module and the INU phase modules.

- Connect the DC+ connectors to terminals 1 and 2.
- Connect the neutral point to terminals 3 and 4.
- Connect the DC- connectors to terminals 5 and 6

In drives with parallel inverter units, install the DC capacitors in parallel.

See the circuit diagram examples in [Illustration 55](#).

Connect the overpressure switch of the capacitor to the auxiliary I/O board.

The DC capacitors can be installed in the mounting racks, which are available as an option (+PMRK).

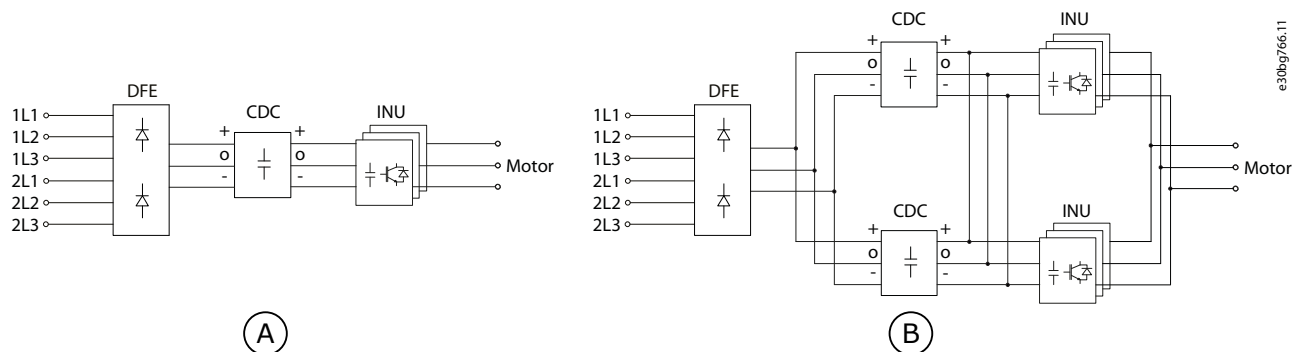


Illustration 55: DC Capacitor (CDC) Installation in a 12-Pulse Drive

A	12-Pulse drive with one INU
B	12-Pulse drive with two parallel inverter units

### 6.5.6 Grounding Switch Installation

Installing the grounding switch (GSW) is recommended. The grounding switch is available as option +QGSW. If a grounding switch is not installed, make sure that the grounding is done correctly.

Always install the grounding switch in the medium-voltage section of the cabinet. See the dimensions of the grounding switch in [11.1.14 Dimensions, Grounding Switch](#).

#### Installation in AFE Drives

The grounding switch connects the three input phases and the DC-link plus and minus to ground. In drives with parallel power circuits, both DC-link circuits are connected to the GSW.

Connect the auxiliary switches of the GSW to the auxiliary I/O board.

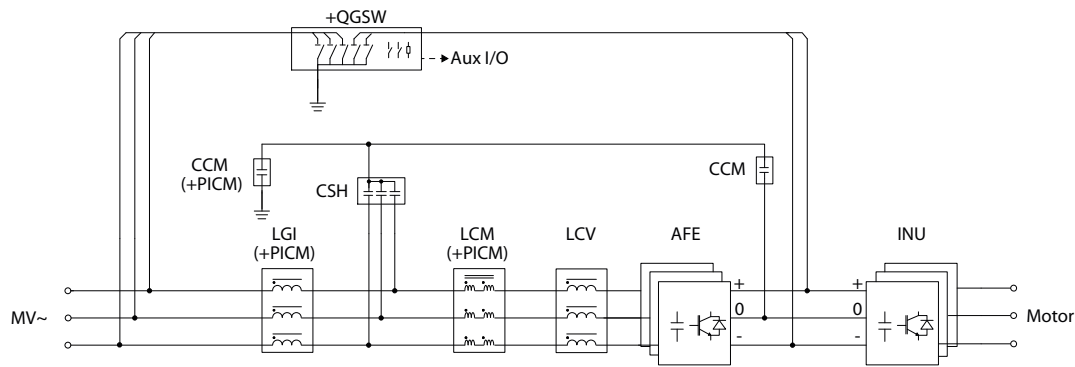


Illustration 56: Grounding Switch Installation in an AFE Drive

#### Installation in 12-Pulse Drives

The grounding switch connects the DC-link plus and minus to ground. The grounding switch does not ground the input phases. In drives with parallel power circuits, both DC-link circuits are connected to the GSW.

Connect the auxiliary switches of the GSW to the auxiliary I/O board.

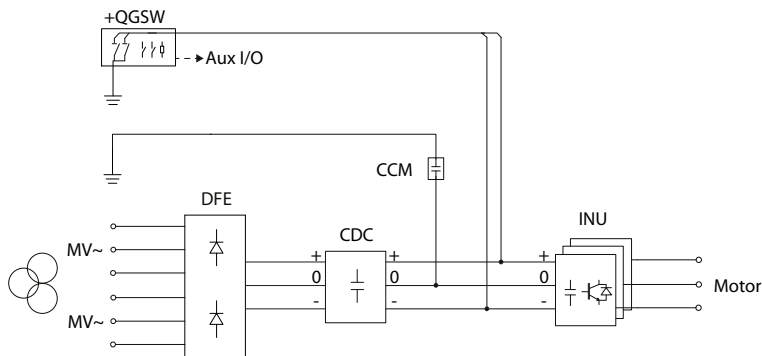


Illustration 57: Grounding Switch Installation in a 12-Pulse Drive

#### 6.5.6.1 Operating the Grounding Switch

### ⚠ DANGER ⚠

#### SHOCK HAZARD FROM THE DC LINK

A contact with the DC-link voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- After the AC drive is disconnected from the mains, wait for the DC link to discharge. Use a measuring device to make sure that there is no voltage.

1. Turn off the AFE and INU and disconnect the AC drive from the mains (DC link begins to discharge).
2. Lock out/tag out the MV power source.
3. Wait for the DC link to discharge below 50 V DC.

The discharge time is:

- <7 minutes for AFE drives.
- <21 minutes for 12-pulse drives.

If more DC capacitance than normal is installed, the discharge time can be longer.

4. Measure and make sure that the DC link is discharged before unlocking the grounding switch.
5. Unlock the grounding switch.

There is a safety solenoid on the grounding switch. The solenoid makes sure that the switch does not close while the DC link is energized or if the mains power is on.

6. Close the grounding switch.
7. Open the power module cabinet.

8. Make sure that the DC-link voltage indication lights on the front of the phase modules are not on.

See [6.2.7 LED Display on the Phase Module](#).

9. Make sure that all the blades of the grounding switch are correctly closed.

## 6.5.7 Common-Mode Capacitor Installation

### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

#### SHOCK HAZARD FROM CAPACITOR

The capacitor has bleed resistors. The discharge time to < 50 V DC is 5 minutes. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Do not touch the capacitor before it has been discharged. Use a measuring device to make sure that there is no voltage.

### N O T I C E

#### OPERATION WITHOUT A COMMON-MODE CAPACITOR

If operation without a common-mode capacitor is necessary, consult Danfoss.

Install the common-mode capacitor (CCM) between the DC-link neutral point and ground. Install this capacitor in all VACON® 3000 drives.

The input common-mode filter option (+PICM) includes a second common-mode capacitor. Install the common-mode capacitor of the CM filter between the shunt capacitors (CSH), the first common-mode capacitor (CCM), and the ground.

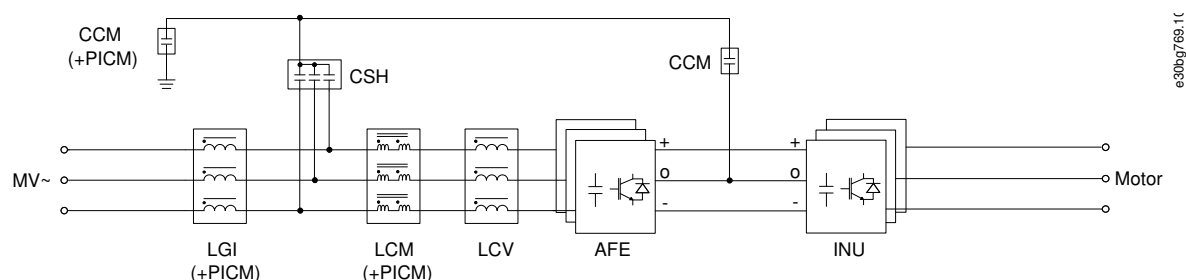


Illustration 58: Common-Mode Capacitors (CCM) Installed in a VACON® 3000 AFE Drive

## 6.5.8 Pre-Charge Unit Installation

### 6.5.8.1 Safety Notes for the Precharge Unit

### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

#### SHOCK HAZARD FROM THE PRECHARGE UNIT

The precharge unit can supply dangerous high voltages from its low-voltage source (215 V to 480 V AC). A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Do not try to energize the precharge unit before the system installation is completed!  
Do not bypass the control unit and energize the precharge unit!  
Make sure that correct lock out and tag out procedures are applied to the low-voltage input of the precharge unit.

### ⚠ C A U T I O N ⚠

#### RISK OF OVERHEATING

Successive precharge operations can overheat the transformer of the precharge unit.

- To allow the transformer enough time to cool down, ensure a minimum of 30 minutes between successive precharge operations.

The correct selection of the voltage selection board prevents the application of incorrect voltage to the transformer input.

If there is a fault condition, the 2-pole circuit breaker on top of the precharge unit opens. The breaker opens only in fault conditions in which inspection or maintenance is necessary.

The control unit monitors the DC-link voltage during the precharge sequence and if it senses an unusual condition, stops the sequence. Because of the monitoring, do not bypass these protection steps during the commissioning or troubleshooting of the drive. Precharge timeout:

- The control unit automatically limits the frequency of start ups to a safe value.

### 6.5.8.2 Pre-Charge Unit Installation

The pre-charge unit (PRC) is a medium-voltage device. Install it in the medium-voltage section of the cabinet (never in the low-voltage section). Installing the pre-charge unit in the same section as the input filters is recommended. See the dimensions of the precharge unit in [11.1.7 Dimensions, Pre-Charge Unit](#).

- Connect the low voltage input to the pre-charge unit terminals 1 and 3. L goes to terminal 3, and N to terminal 1.
- In AC Drives with parallel power circuits, a separate pre-charge unit is necessary for each parallel circuit. The low-voltage supply to the pre-charge units must be able to supply a power of 10 kVA for each pre-charge unit.
  - If there are multiple pre-charge units, make sure that all units are wired correctly and working. Pre-charging with fewer units than required can overheat the pre-charge units.
- Ground the cable shield of the LV supply cable.
- Connect the pre-charge control signals to the auxiliary I/O board and to the control unit. In AFE drives the AFE control unit controls the pre-charge and in 12-pulse drives the control comes from the INU control unit.
- The pre-charge unit has 3 medium-voltage terminals for the DC-link connection: DC(+), DC(0), and DC(-). Connect these terminals to the DC link.
- Install a circuit breaker at the low-voltage input to the PRC. The circuit breaker type/rating must be higher than the rating of the PRC circuit breaker. Install the circuit breaker in the low-voltage section of the cabinet.

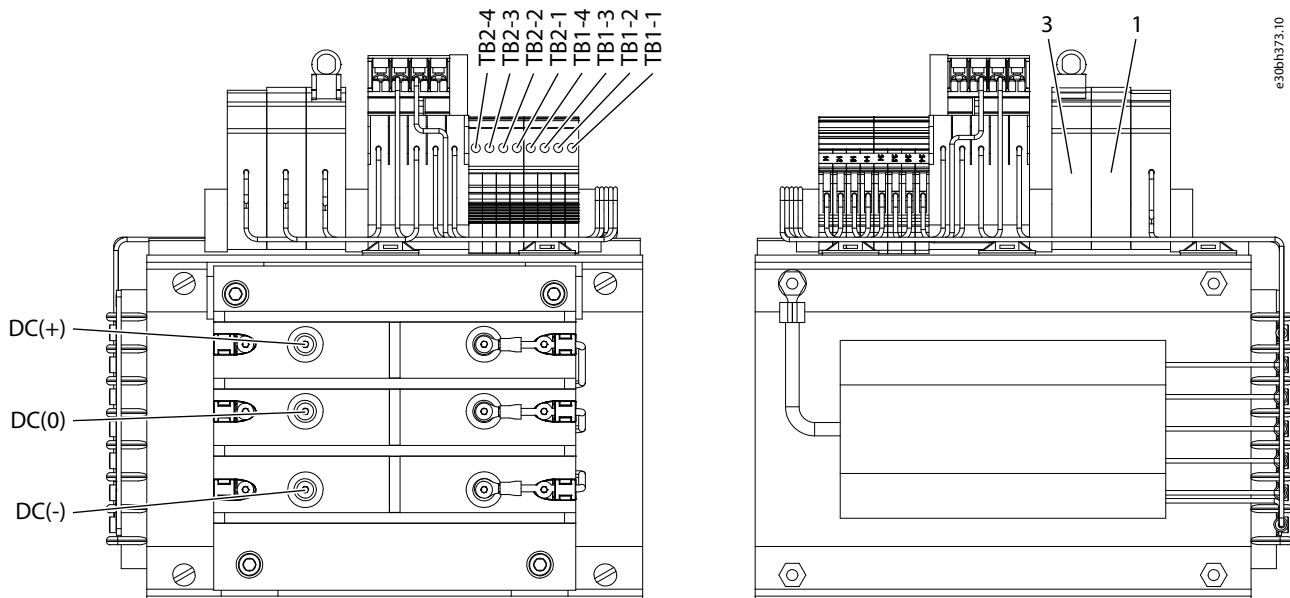


Illustration 59: Locations of the Pre-Charge Unit Terminals

### 6.5.9 Isolation Transformer Installation

Install the isolation transformer in the medium-voltage section together with the 24 V auxiliary supply for the phase modules. Do not install the transformer in the same cabinet with the control unit.

If the system is to be certified according to standard IEC61800-5-1:

- Install isolation transformers for the INU and AFE low-voltage supplies.
- The isolation transformers must provide protective separation for Decisive Voltage Class D (DVC D) according to IEC61800-5-1 for the respective system voltage.
- The transformers must have a coupling capacitance between primary and secondary of maximum 120 pF.

If the system is to be certified according to standard UL347A:

- Isolation transformers for the INU and AFE low-voltage supplies are not required.

If the Safe torque off (STO) function is required from the drive, see the additional requirements for the isolation transformers in [6.6.6 Installation Guidelines](#).

### 6.5.10 Auxiliary Power Supply Installation

Auxiliary 24 V DC power supplies are required for:

- The power electronics.
- The AFE phase modules.
- The DFE power module.
- The INU phase modules.
- The brake chopper unit.
- The control units.
- The auxiliary I/O boards.

Install the power supplies for the control units in the low-voltage section of the cabinet.

Install the power supplies for the phase modules in the medium-voltage section of the cabinet. Supply these power supplies through an isolation transformer (+QAIT).

#### Installation Guidelines for the MV Section

- Connect the neutral of the 24 V DC supply to the neutral point of the DC link.
- Connect the neutral of the DC output and the neutral of the AC input of the power supplies.
- Connect the PE and frame of the power supplies to the neutral connector.
- Since the power supplies are tied to the DC neutral, isolate them from other live parts and from ground.

The creepage and clearance distances between the DC-neutral connection, ground (basic insulation), and other parts of the LV circuit (DVC A, B, or C) must be according to standards IEC61800-5-1 and UL347A.

If the system is to be certified according to standard IEC61800-5-1:

- Install isolation transformers for the INU and AFE low-voltage supplies.
- The isolation transformers and the potential transformer must fulfill the protective separation requirements of IEC61800-5-1.
- Connect the neutral of the 24 V DC supplies for INU and AFE modules to the neutral point of the DC link.

If the system is to be certified according to standard UL347A:

- Isolation transformers for the INU and AFE low-voltage supplies are not required.
- Connect the minus of the 24 V DC supply to ground.
- The neutral of the 24 V DC supply for the AFE and INU modules can be connected to ground.

If a solution with floating 24 V supplies is used, then 24 V monitoring of the floating 24 V supplies is not possible. Thus, redundant power supplies are not recommended in such a solution.

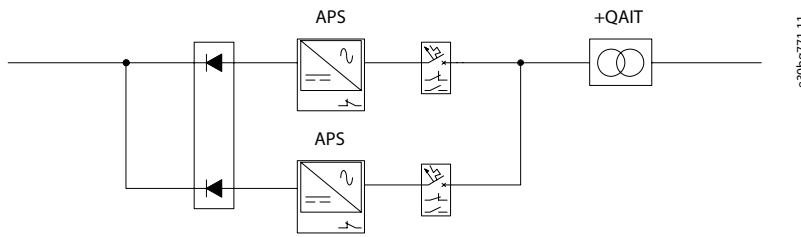
If the Safe torque off (STO) function is required from the drive, see the additional requirements for the power supplies in [6.6.6 Installation Guidelines](#).

#### Example

##### Auxiliary Power Supplies for VACON3000-4Q-0425-03

The VACON3000-4Q-0425-03 is an AFE drive. It includes three AFE and three INU phase modules. A 24 V DC, 3 A power supply is necessary for each phase module. To energize the phase modules, a 24 V DC, 20 A power supply can be used, but it is recommended to install two power supplies in parallel and supply the phase modules through a diode redundancy module. Thus, if there is a failure in one of the two power supplies, the power supply continues.

An AFE drive also includes two control units for the AFE and INU phase modules. A 24 V DC, 3 A power supply is necessary for each control unit. To energize the control units, a 24 V DC, 10 A power supply can be used, but it is recommended to install two power supplies in parallel and supply the control units through a diode redundancy module. Thus, if there is a failure in one of the two power supplies, the power supply continues.



**Illustration 60: Installation Example of Auxiliary Power Supplies (APS) in the Medium-Voltage Section of the Cabinet**

### 6.5.11 Cabinet Heater Installation

It is recommended to install cabinet heaters in these sections of the cabinet assembly:

- The power module section.
- The LC filter and input common-mode filter section.
- The control compartment.

Install thermostats in the cabinets to start and stop the cabinet heaters. Supply the cabinet heaters through the isolation transformers (+QAiT).

### 6.5.12 Overtemperature Indicator Installation

Install overtemperature indicators in the top part of the cabinets. Setting the indicators to 70°C (158°F) is recommended.

### 6.5.13 Leak Detector Installation

Install leak detectors in all the cabinets with liquid-cooled components and in the cabinet with the heat exchanger.

### 6.5.14 Arc Flash Detector Installation

Arc flash detectors sense the light from an arc flash and send a trip signal to the drive control unit.

Install arc flash detectors in all the medium-voltage sections of the cabinet. Use for example, PGR-8800 from Littelfuse. Only use optical fibers to make the connections between the LV and MV sections of the cabinet.

## N O T I C E

### CONNECTION TO THE MAINS CIRCUIT BREAKER

It is recommended to connect the arc flash detection system to the mains circuit breaker.

## 6.6 Safety Functions

### 6.6.1 Safe Torque Off (STO)

Safe Torque Off (STO) is a hardware-based safety function to prevent the drive from generating torque on the motor shaft. The STO safety function has been designed for use in accordance with the following standards:

- EN 61800-5-2 STO SIL3
- EN ISO 13849-1 PL "e" Category 4
- EN 62061 SILCL3
- IEC 61508 SIL3
- The function also corresponds to an uncontrolled stop in accordance with stop category 0, EN 60204-1.

The STO function is not the same as the prevention of unexpected start-up function. For fulfilling those requirements, more external components are required according to appropriate standards and application requirements. Required external components can be for example:

- Appropriate lockable switch
- A safety relay providing a reset function

### 6.6.2 Safe Stop 1 (SS1)

The SS1 safety function is realized in compliance with SS1-t of the drives safety standard EN 61800-5-2 (SS1-t: "The PDS(SR) initiates the motor deceleration and performs the STO function after an application-specific time delay").

The SS1 safety function has been designed for use in accordance with the following standards:



- EN 61800-5-2 Safe Stop 1 (SS1) SIL 3
- EN ISO 13849-1 PL "e" Category 4
- EN 62061: SILCL3
- IEC 61508 SIL 3
- The function also corresponds to a controlled stop in accordance with the stop category 1, EN 60204-1.

### 6.6.3 Safety Considerations

Designing of safety-related systems requires special knowledge and skills. Only qualified personnel are permitted to install and set up the STO functionality.

The use of STO or other safety functions does not in itself ensure safety. An overall risk evaluation is required to make sure that the commissioned system is safe. The safety devices must be correctly incorporated into the entire system. The entire system must be designed in compliance with all relevant standards within the field of industry.

Standards such as EN 12100 (Part 1/Part 2) and ISO 14121-1 provide methods for designing safe machinery and for carrying out a risk assessment.

The information in this manual provides guidance on the use of the STO safety function together with the VACON® 3000 Drive Kit. This information is in compliance with accepted practice and regulations at the time of writing. However, the end product/system designer is responsible for ensuring that the system is safe and in compliance with relevant regulations.

The STO function does not electrically isolate the drive output from the mains supply. If electrical work is to be carried out on the drive, the motor or the motor cabling, the drive has to be isolated from the mains supply. Use, for example, an external medium-voltage disconnecting switch (optionally as part of the main circuit breaker, see [6.4 Main Circuit Breaker Installation](#)). In addition, the grounding switch must be closed or an alternative grounding according to applicable standards must be provided (see [6.5.6.1 Operating the Grounding Switch](#)).

#### 6.6.3.1 Diagnostic Test

Performing a diagnostic test is mandatory. The achievable SIL performance level/category for STO/SS1 depends on the testing interval.

Table 12: SIL Performance Level/Category Based on Diagnostic Test Interval

Test/ diagnostic interval <sup>(1)</sup>	EN 61800-5-2	ENISO 13849-1	EN 62061
1 day	SIL3	PL "e" Category 4	SILCL3
3 months	SIL3	PL "e" Category 3	SILCL3
1 year	SIL2	PL "d" Category 3	SILCL2

<sup>1</sup> Time between tests.

To perform the test, follow this procedure.

- Start with a powered-on system. Connection to the MV grid is not required.
- Press S1 (STO/SS1 button).
  - See the diagrams in [6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring](#).
- Wait until the STO diagnostic lamp is continuously on.
- Reset S1.
- If available, push reset button S2.
- The STO diagnostic lamp should go off, and the drive should be operational again after less than 1 minute.

**Note:** A diagnostic test is also automatically executed as part of any regular STO/SS1 cycle.

### 6.6.4 STO Operating Principle

The STO safety function allows the drive output to be disabled so that the drive cannot generate torque in the motor shaft.

The STO safety function is achieved by stopping the drive operation. The drive operation is stopped by removing the 24 V supply to the inverter units. When the 24 V supply is removed, the drive stops operation and does not generate torque in the motor shaft.

To stop the 24 V supply to the power modules, use a safety relay and a sensor. See [6.6.6 Installation Guidelines](#).

The activation time of the STO function depends on the holdup time of the 24 V supply. There is internal capacitance in the power supply, which causes a delay in cutting the supply to the power modules. Thus, the maximum STO delay time can only be specified

for specific power supplies. When using the recommended 24 V power supplies, the maximum STO delay is below 1 s. For a suggested method for determining the delay time with a specific power supply, see [6.6.8 Determining the Power Supply Specific STO Delay Time](#).

### 6.6.5 SS1 Operating Principle

After receiving a safe stop command, the motor starts decelerating and the SS1 safety function initiates the STO function after a user-set time delay.

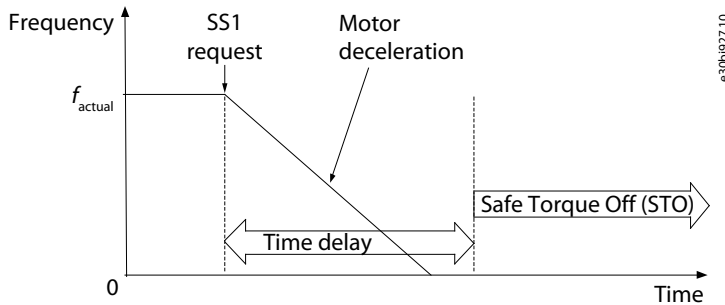


Illustration 61: The Principle of Safe Stop 1 (EN 61800-5-2, SS1-t)

The system designer/user is responsible for understanding and setting the time delay of the safety relay, as it is process/machine dependent.

- The time delay of the relay must be set to a greater value than the deceleration time of the drive. If there is a single failure or malfunctioning of the drive system, the drive may not ramp down as requested, but is always put to a safe STO state after the configured time delay of the relay. The motor deceleration time is process/machine dependent.
- The stop function of the drive must be correctly set for the process/machine. Activating the SS1 safety function must execute the configured stop in the drive, using the undelayed relay output signal "SS1 NOT ACTIVATED". In the application software, it is recommended to use the "Quick Stop" functionality for this purpose.

### 6.6.6 Installation Guidelines

The STO functionality is implemented with a relay and a sensor to stop the 24 V DC supply to the inverter units. Install these parts in the low-voltage section of the drive enclosure. The STO/SS1 components must be installed in an IP54 enclosure.

The input voltage for the safety relay must be 24 V  $\pm$  5%.

The undelayed output of the relay (STO not activated) is connected to the digital input (DI) of the INU control unit. See [6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring](#).

In the STO safety relay, set the delay time to 100 ms. The delay ensures, that there is sufficient time to notify the control unit before the 24 V at the INU modules are stopped. This allows the control unit to suppress the faults that a 24 V loss of the power modules normally generates.

For SS1, set the time delay to 0.5–30 s. This is normally the next higher relay time setting after the deceleration is guaranteed to be complete. Manual or automatic reset of the safety relay can be selected with a wiring option (see [6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring](#)). After the reset of the safety relay, the control unit needs >30 s for a drive reset before the drive can be started again.

STO/SS1 diagnostic output is available from the digital output of the INU control unit.

- 1 Hz flashing immediately after STO/SS1 activation.
- Continuous once INU is confirmed to be powered off.
- **Caution:** The diagnostic output is not a safety function. Do not rely on it to ensure an STO state.

The motor contactors must be rated according to the isolation transformer inrush current.

#### General Wiring Instructions

The maximum allowed cable length between the STO safety relay inputs (S11/S12 and S21/S22) and the STO/SS1 push button (S1) is 500 m (1640 ft). If cables with a conductor cross-sectional area smaller than 1.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (16 AWG) are used, reduce the cable length to account for increased voltage drop in the cables.

[Illustration 62](#) and [Illustration 63](#) show example wiring diagrams of the STO installation for VACON® 3000 AFE and 12-pulse drives. The wiring of the STO safety relay and contactors is shown in more detail in [6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring](#).

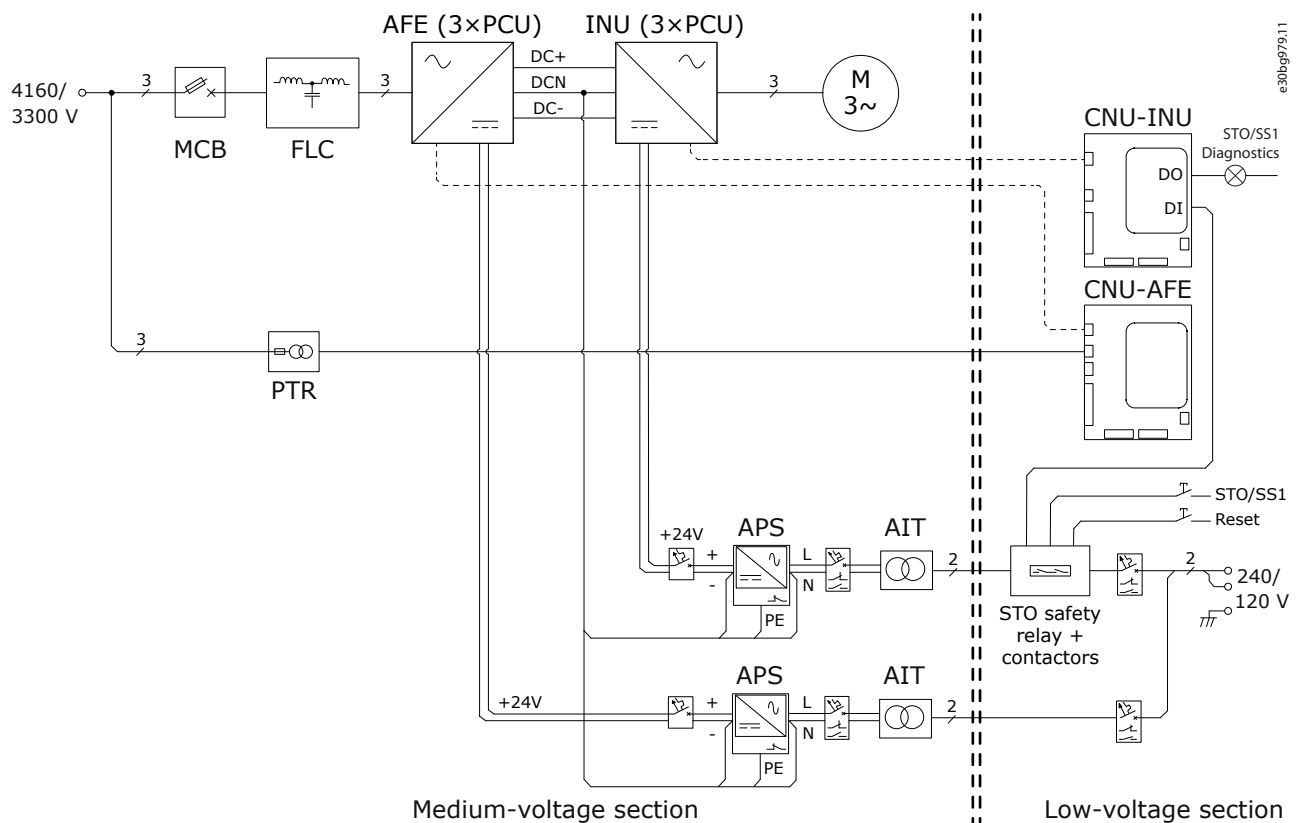


Illustration 62: Example STO Installation Wiring Diagram for a VACON® 3000 AFE Drive

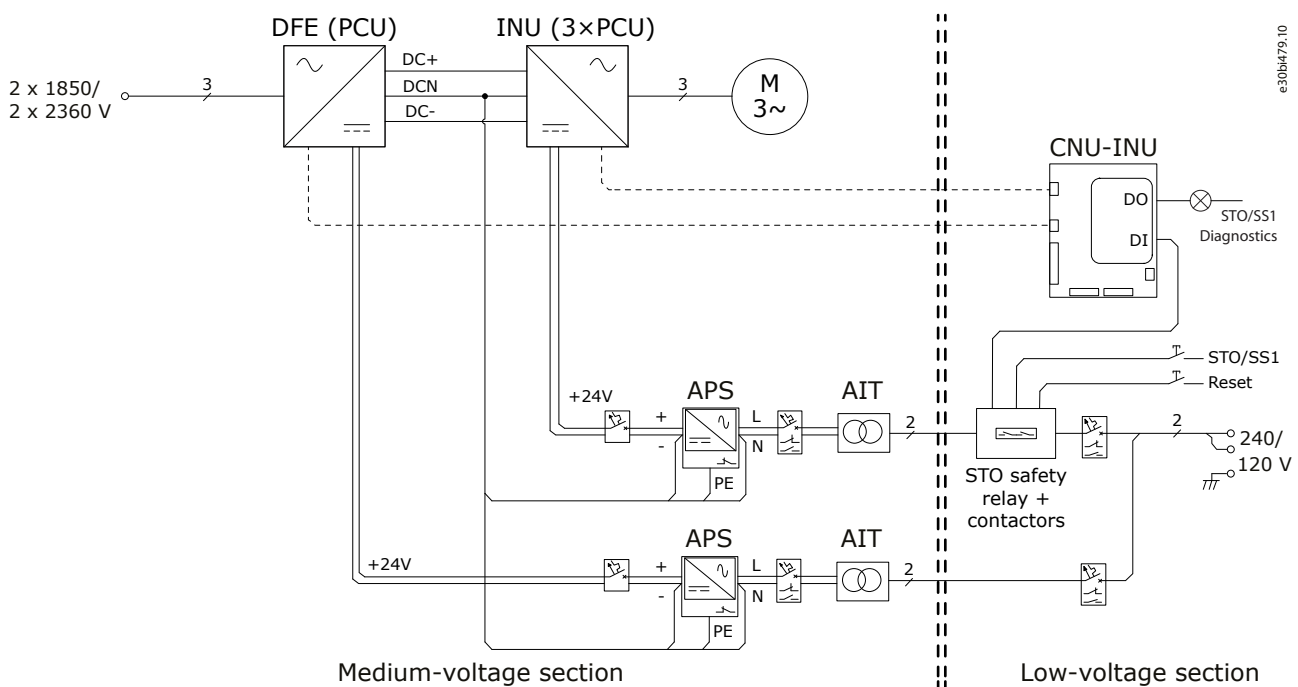


Illustration 63: Example STO Installation Wiring Diagram for a VACON® 3000 12-pulse Drive

### 6.6.7 Recommended Components

The following components are recommended for implementing the STO/SS1 function in VACON® 3000 Drive Kit configurations.  
STO Safety relay (manufacturer Phoenix Contact):

- PSR-SCP-24DC/ESD/4X1/30, type code 2981800 (screw connection terminal blocks)
- PSR-SPP-24DC/ESD/4X1/30, type code 2981813 (spring-cage connection terminal blocks)

The relays can be used for both STO and SS1 with SIL 3.

Isolation transformer (manufacturer Stangenes):

- 120-240/120-240 V AC, 500 VA, type code SIT30-500

24 V DC power supply (manufacturer Phoenix Contact):

- For 3 INU modules: QUINT-PS/1AC/ 24DC/10, type code 2866763
- For 6 INU modules: QUINT-PS/1AC/ 24DC/20, type code 2866776

Motor contactors (manufacturer Schneider Electric):

- 4 kW, 9 A, 24 V DC coil, type code LC1D09BD

STO/SS1 push button and contacts (manufacturer Schneider Electric):

- Emergency switching off push button XB4, type code ZB4BS844
- Single contact block XB4/XB5, 1 NC, type code ZBE102

There are no special requirements for the STO reset switch. See S2 in [6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring](#).

## ! C A U T I O N !

### OPERATING CONDITIONS

Incorrect ambient operating conditions can cause the components to malfunction.

- Mount the components in such a way that the requirements for the ambient operating conditions are fulfilled. Specifically, the safety relay PSR-XXX-24DC/ESD/4X1/30 has an operating temperature range of -20...+45 °C (-4...+113 °F).

Other condition requirements:

- Storage temperature: -40...+70 °C (-40...+158 °F)
- Electromagnetic environment: IEC 61800-5-2:2016 Annex E

## 6.6.8 Determining the Power Supply Specific STO Delay Time

The following procedure can be used to determine the maximum STO delay time with a specific 24 V power supply.

- If the LV supply for the 24 V power supply can have variable voltage levels, execute the test (also) at the highest input voltage level. The highest input voltage level is expected to yield the longest hold-up times.
- If a short STO delay time is needed, consider using only a single (non-redundant) power supply. In this case, also keep the power rating of the supply close to the minimum requirement.
- In applications where the maximum STO delay is critical, consider sufficient margin to account for variances including specifically of the 24 V power supply.

### Procedure

1. Measure the voltage of K5 or K6 and the 24 V output current of the 24 V power supply with an oscilloscope.

See [6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring](#).

2. Power up the control compartment only.

The MV supply remains off and grounded.

3. Reset the safety relay when the manual restart is configured.
4. Validate that 24 V is applied across K5 and K6, and current is flowing out of the 24 V power supply.
5. Trigger the oscilloscope on a negative edge on the channel showing K5/K6 voltage.
6. Push the STO button (S1).
7. Measure the time 'td24V' from the beginning of the voltage drop across K5/K6 to the time when the output current of the 24 V power supply drops to 0 A for the first time. Further high frequency oscillations can be ignored.

The maximum STO delay time is 'td24V' + 0.34 s.

The 0.34 s accounts for the maximum delay of the safety relay at the 100 ms setting (100 ms +40%) and the maximum shutdown delay within the INU Power Modules (200 ms). The delay of the contactors K5/K6 is already included in the time 'td24V' based on the described procedure.

### 6.6.8.1 Response Time and Fault Reaction Time

STO safety function:

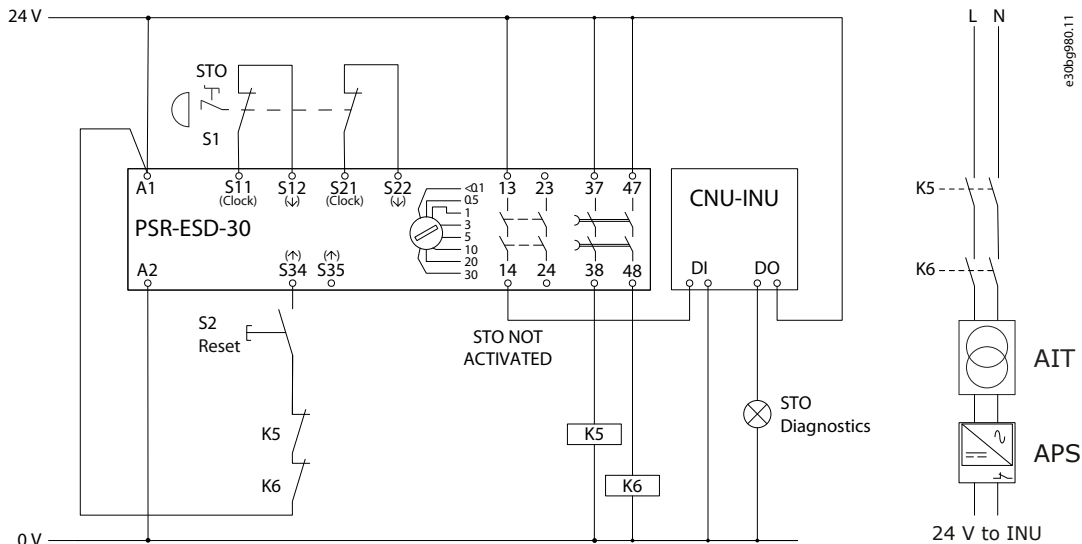
- The response time is no more than 1 s.
- The fault reaction time is no more than the response time.

SS1 safety function:

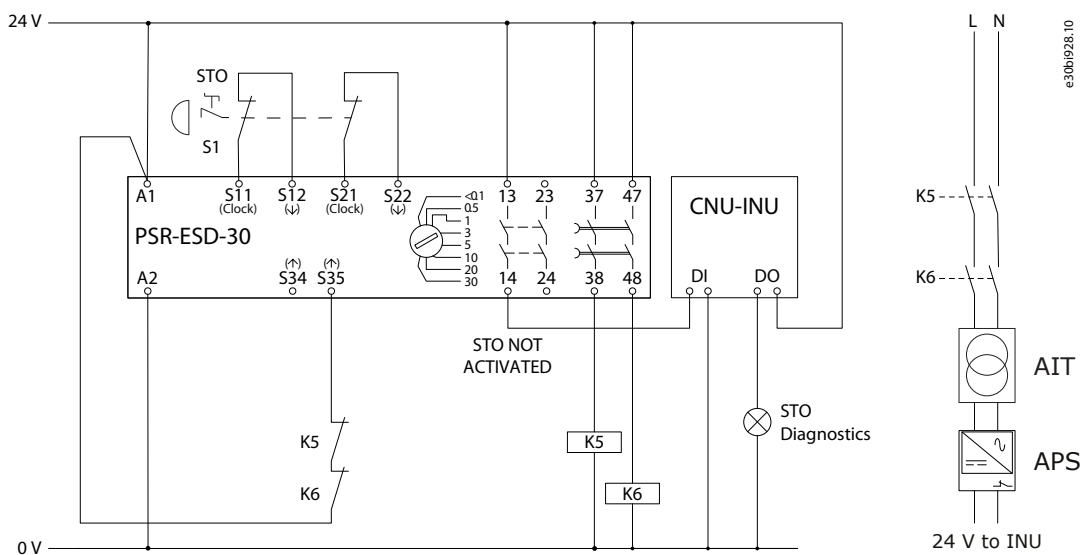
- The response time can be selected, but is no more than 30 s with  $\pm 40\%$  tolerance.
- The fault reaction time is no more than the response time.

To ensure the correct response time and fault reaction time, follow the procedure in [6.6.3.1 Diagnostic Test](#).

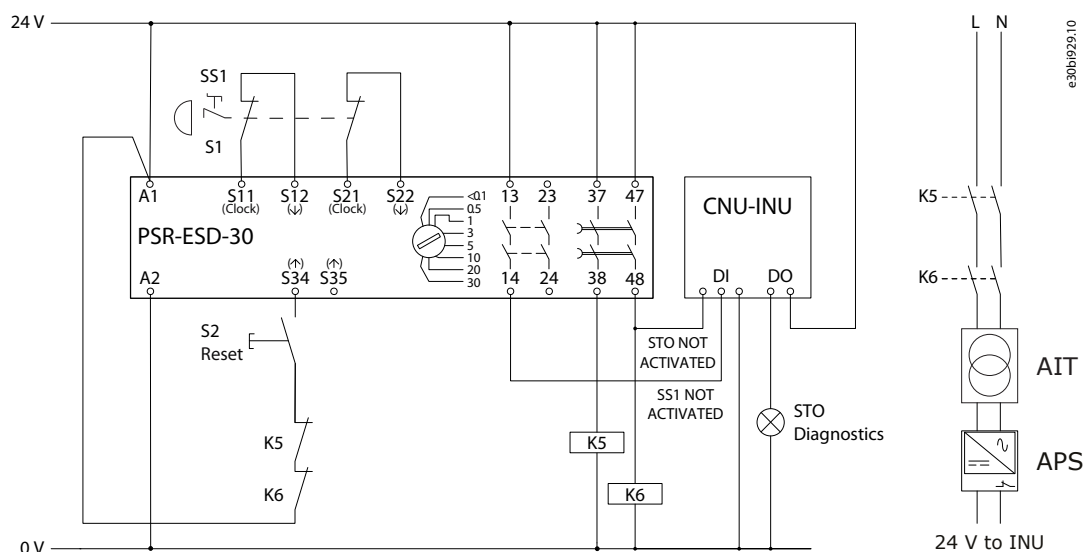
### 6.6.9 Safety Relay Wiring



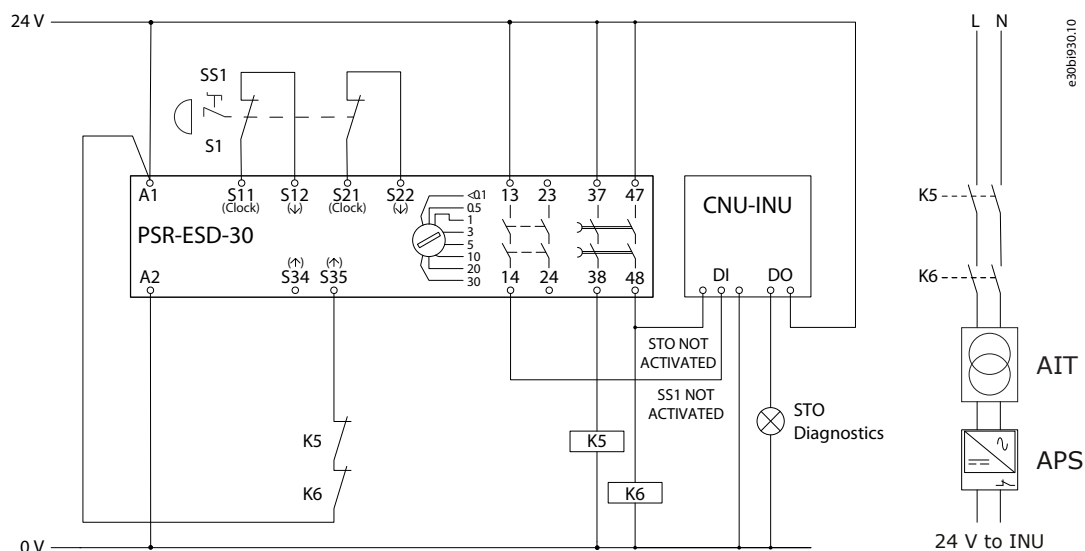
### Illustration 64: Safety Relay Wiring Diagram for STO with Manual Reset



### Illustration 65: Safety Relay Wiring Diagram for STO with Automatic Reset



### Illustration 66: Safety Relay Wiring Diagram for SS1 with Manual Reset



### Illustration 67: Safety Relay Wiring Diagram for SS1 with Automatic Reset

#### 6.6.10 Safety-related Data

The values in [Table 13](#) are used as the basis for the safety-related data calculation.

**Table 13: Calculation Basis for the Safety-Related Data**

Quantities	Values
Mean operation, $d_{op}$	365.25 days/year
Mean operation, $h_{op}$	24 h/day
Mean operation time between successive cycles, $t_{cycle}$	3600 s
Mission time	20 years

The safety-related data for STO/SS1 in VACON® 3000 drives, based on the values in [Table 13](#), and the components listed in [6.6.7 Recommended Components](#), is given in [Table 14](#).

Table 14: Safety-Related Data for STO/SS1

Standards	Safety parameters	Values
IEC 61800-5-2:2016	SIL	3
	PFH	$1.9 \times 10^{-8}$ 1/h
	HFT	1
EN 62061/A2:2015	SILCL	3
	PFH	$1.9 \times 10^{-8}$
	HFT	1
EN ISO 13849-1:2015	PL	E
	MTTFd	107 years
	DCavg	High
	Category	4
IEC 61508:2010	SIL	3
	PFH	$1.9 \times 10^{-8}$ 1/h
	HFT	1
	PFD (low demand mode, SIL 3)	$1.9 \times 10^{-4}$

## 6.7 Mechanical Interlocking System

The interlocking system ensures that the lock-out/tag-out process is followed and cannot be bypassed. UL- and CSA-certified VACON® 3000 Drive Kit (option +GAUL) are equipped with a mechanical interlocking system (Type F Isolation Interlock from Kirk Key Interlock Company LLC) by default. For other drives the mechanical interlocking system is available as an option (+QGSK).

The Kirk Key Interlock is mounted inside the cabinet as part of the grounding assembly. The locking bolt locks the grounding switch in the open position (not grounded) and the key can be removed at this position. When a matching safety-locking system is used with the upstream circuit breaker feeding the drive, the lock-out/tag-out method with trapped key interlock (TKI) can be implemented.

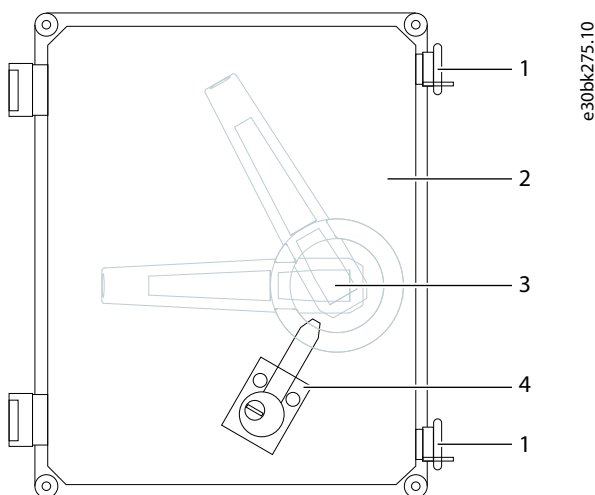


Illustration 68: Mechanical Interlock

1	Pad-lockable latches	3	Handle of grounding switch
2	Clear cover	4	Lock and locking bolt

Instructions for installing the safety-locking system for the upstream circuit breaker are available from the manufacturer of the circuit breaker.

The coded key number used in the safety-locking system of the drive is included in the product delivery. Alternatively, if the customer already has a safety-locking system in place, the existing key number can be used at the ordering phase.

## N O T I C E

Danfoss strongly promotes the full use of the benefits offered by this advanced lock-out/tag-out method. It is the responsibility of the customer to make sure that the VACON® 3000 Drive Kit is installed according to the instructions from the manufacturer and local safety regulations. Using safe working methods, such as following lockout/tagout and TKI procedures, are the responsibilities of the user/operator.

### 6.7.1 Operating the Interlocking System

This procedure describes how to perform a lock-out/tag-out procedure correctly with the trapped key interlock (TKI) system. When the process and the drive are running, the upstream breaker is closed, and the key is trapped at the breaker.

#### Procedure

1. Start the lock-out/tag-out procedure and shut down the process.
2. Stop the drive and wait until it is safe to ground the drive.
3. Once it is safe to open the upstream breaker, open, rack out, and ground the breaker.
4. Remove the key from the upstream breaker, so that the breaker cannot be operated.
5. Check that there is no voltage in the supply cables of the drive.
6. Unlock the grounding switch of the drive with the key.



The key is trapped at the drive.

7. Turn the grounding switch to ground the drive.
8. To create electrically safe working conditions, finish the lock-out/tag-out procedure.

To restart the drive and the process, follow the procedure in reverse order.



## 7 Control Connections

### 7.1 Control Unit Components

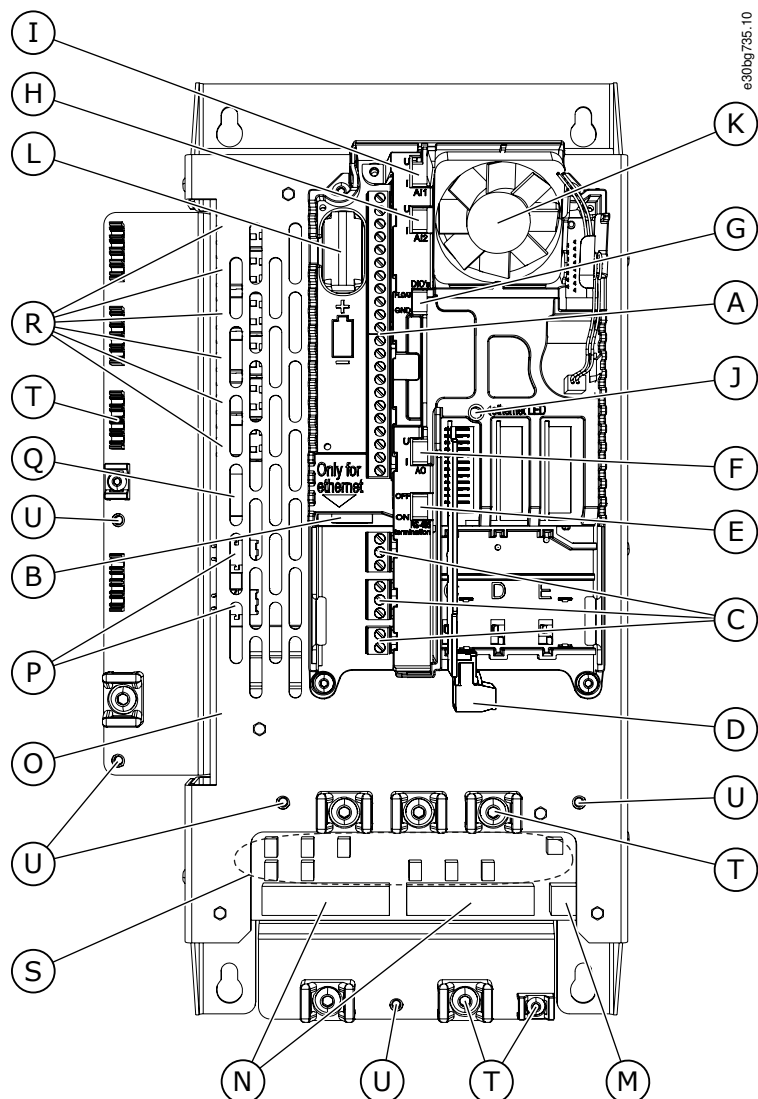


Illustration 69: The Components of the Control Unit

A	The control terminals for the default I/O connections	L	The battery for the real-time clock
B	The Ethernet connection	M	Control unit power supply terminal
C	The relay terminals for 3 relay outputs or 2 relay outputs and a thermistor	N	Encoder terminals (only used in INU control units)
D	The option boards	O	Digital inputs and outputs for pre-charge
E	DIP switch for the RS485 bus termination	P	Optical fiber inputs for external breaker enable
F	DIP switch for the signal selection of analog output	Q	Supply voltage feedback
G	DIP switch for the isolation of the digital inputs from ground	R	Optical fiber interface to phase modules
H	DIP switch for the signal selection of analog input 2	S	Encoder configuration jumpers
I	DIP switch for the signal selection of analog input 1	T	Cable clamps
J	The status indicator of the Ethernet connection	U	Ground points
K	Cooling fan		

On delivery of the AC drive, the control unit contains the default control interface (control panel with graphical display). If special options were selected in the order, the option boards are included loose in the delivery. On the next pages, there is information on the terminals and general wiring examples.

The control unit can be started with a 24 V DC  $\pm 5\%$ , 3 A power source with external overload protection. This voltage is sufficient to keep the control unit on and for setting the parameters. The measurements of the main circuit (for example, the DC-link voltage, and the unit temperature) are not available when the drive is not connected to the mains.

The status indicator on the control unit shows the status of the drive. The status indicator is on the control panel, below the keypad, and it can show five different statuses.

Table 15: Control Unit LED Status Definitions

Color/status of the LED	Status of the drive
Blinking slowly	Ready
Green	Run
Red	Fault
Orange	Alarm
Blinking fast	Downloading software

## 7.2 Control Unit Installation

Install the VACON® 3000 control units in the low-voltage section of the cabinets. Use the four mounting holes on the control unit frame. See the dimensions of the control unit in [11.1.4 Dimensions, Control Unit](#).

## 7.3 Control Interface

When the drive is connected to the mains, it must be possible to monitor the drive, reset faults, and set parameters to the drive without opening the cabinet. The drive can be controlled with a control panel or a PC connected to the control unit. The control panel can be installed on the cabinet door or outside the cabinets. A door keypad mounting kit is available as option +HMDR.

VACON® 3000 AFE drives have two control units, for the AFE and the INU. AC drives with the brake chopper option (+DBC) also have a control unit for the brake chopper. It must be clear, which of the control units controls the AFE, INU and brake chopper. Identify the control units clearly.

More information about the control interface functionality is available in the VACON® 3000 Application Guides.

## 7.4 Control Unit Cabling

Install the control cables in the low-voltage section of the cabinet. Keep the cables away from high voltages and possible electrical arcs. Make the control connections between the control units and power units with optical fiber cables.

There are cable entries at the top and bottom of the cabinet.

A VACON® 3000 12-pulse drive has one control unit, the INU control unit. Install all the I/O and relay cables to the INU control unit.

A VACON® 3000 AFE drive has two control units, the AFE control unit and the INU control unit. The I/O and relay cable installation is application-specific and both the AFE and INU control units can be used.

### 7.4.1 Selection of the Control Cables

#### NOTICE

##### CABLE SELECTION

Obey regional low-voltage standards in the cable selection.

The control cables must be a minimum of 0.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (AWG20) multi-core shielded cables. The terminal wires must be a maximum of 2.5 mm<sup>2</sup> (AWG13) for the relay board terminals and other terminals.

Table 16: The Tightening Torques of the Control Cables

Terminal	Terminal screw size	Tightening torque (Nm)	Tightening torque (lb-in)
All the terminals of the I/O board and the relay board	M3	0.5	4.5

### 7.4.2 Control Unit Terminals

Here is the basic description of the terminals of the default I/O and relay board. The standard I/O board has 22 fixed control terminals and 8 relay board terminals.

Some terminals are assigned for signals that have optional functions that can be used with the DIP switches. For more information, see [7.5 DIP Switches on the Control Unit](#).

Standard I/O board				
	Terminal	Signal	Description	
Reference-potentiometer 1...10 kΩ	1	+10Vref	Reference output	
	2	AI1+	Analog input 1+	Frequency reference (default 0...10 V)
	3	AI1-	Analog input 1-	
	4	AI2+	Analog input 2+	Frequency reference (Default 4...20 mA)
	5	AI2-	Analog input 2-	
	6	24Vout	24 V auxiliary voltage	
	7	GND	I/O ground	
	8	DI1	Digital input 1	Start forward
	9	DI2	Digital input 2	Start reverse
	10	DI3	Digital input 3	External fault
	11	CM	Common for DI1-DI6	
	12	24Vout	24 V auxiliary voltage	
	13	GND	I/O ground	
	14	DI4	Digital input 4	DI4 Open Analog input 1 Closed Preset Freq. 1
	15	DI5	Digital input 5	DI5 Open Preset Freq. 2 Closed Preset Freq. 3
	16	DI6	Digital input 6	Fault reset
	17	CM	Common for DI1-DI6	
	18	AO1+	Analog output 1+	Output frequency (0...20 mA)
	19	AO1-	Analog output 1-	
	30	+24Vin	24 V auxiliary input voltage	
	A	RS485	Serial bus, negative	Modbus RTU, N2, BACnet
	B	RS485	Serial bus, positive	
	21	RO1/1 NC	Relay output 1	RUN
	22	RO1/2 CM		
	23	RO1/3 NO		
	24	RO2/1 NC	Relay output 2	FAULT
	25	RO2/2 CM		
	26	RO2/3 NO		
	32	RO3/2 CM	Relay output 3	READY
	33	RO3/3 NO		

Illustration 70: The Signals of the Control Terminals on the Default I/O Board and the Default Control Connections for the VACON® 3000 INU Application

## 7.5 DIP Switches on the Control Unit

### 7.5.1 Selection of Terminal Functions with DIP Switches

Two selections for specified terminals can be done with the DIP switches. The switches have two positions: up and down. See the location of the DIP switches and the possible selections in [Illustration 71](#).

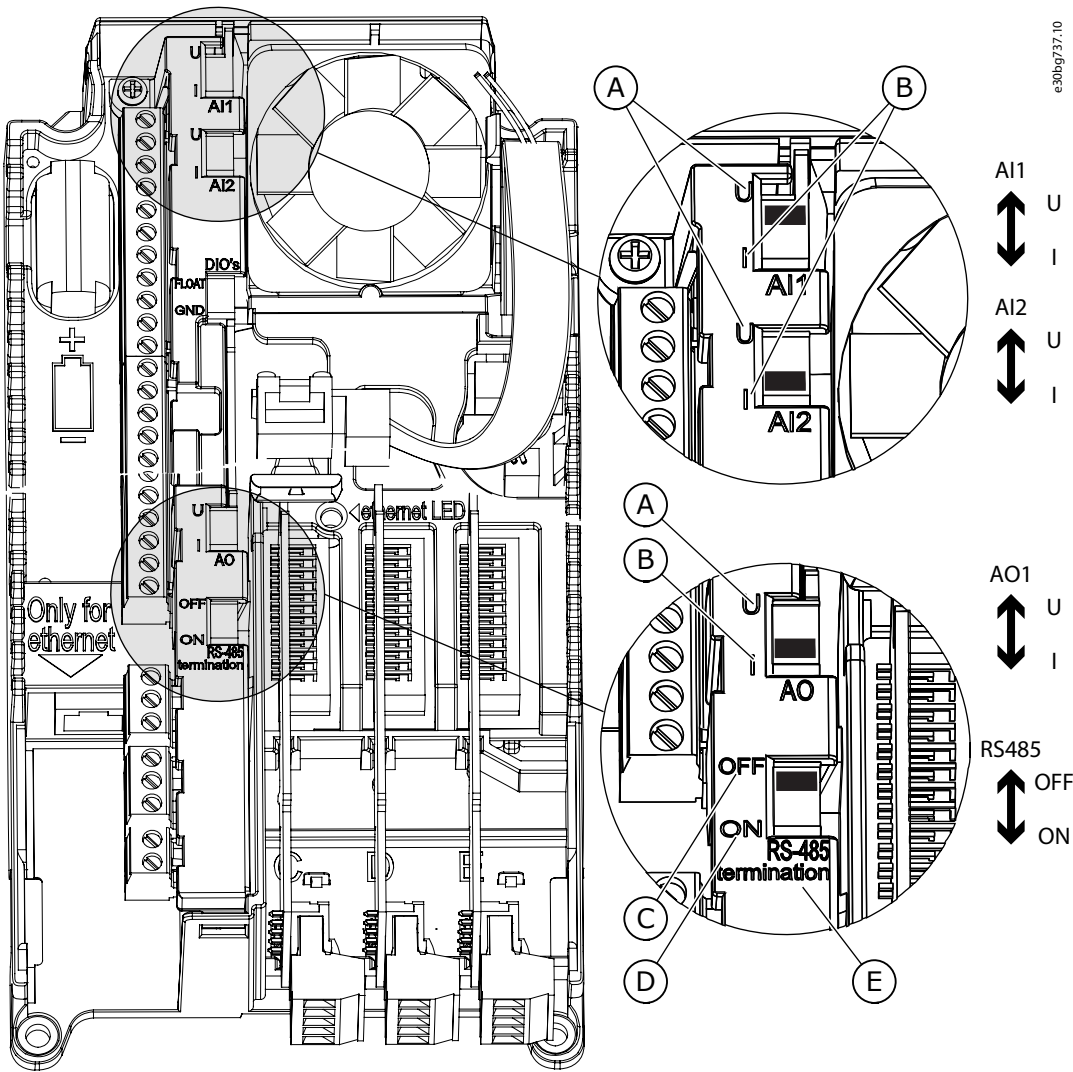


Illustration 71: The Selections of the DIP Switches

A	The voltage signal (U), 0–10 V input	D	ON
B	The current signal (I), 0–20 mA input	E	The RS485 bus termination
C	OFF		

Table 17: The Default Positions of the DIP Switches

The DIP switch	The default position
AI1	U
AI2	I
AO1	I
RS485 bus termination	OFF

### 7.5.2 Isolation of the Digital Inputs from Ground

It is possible to isolate from ground the digital inputs (terminals 8–10 and 14–16) on the standard I/O board. To do this, change the position of a DIP switch on the control board.

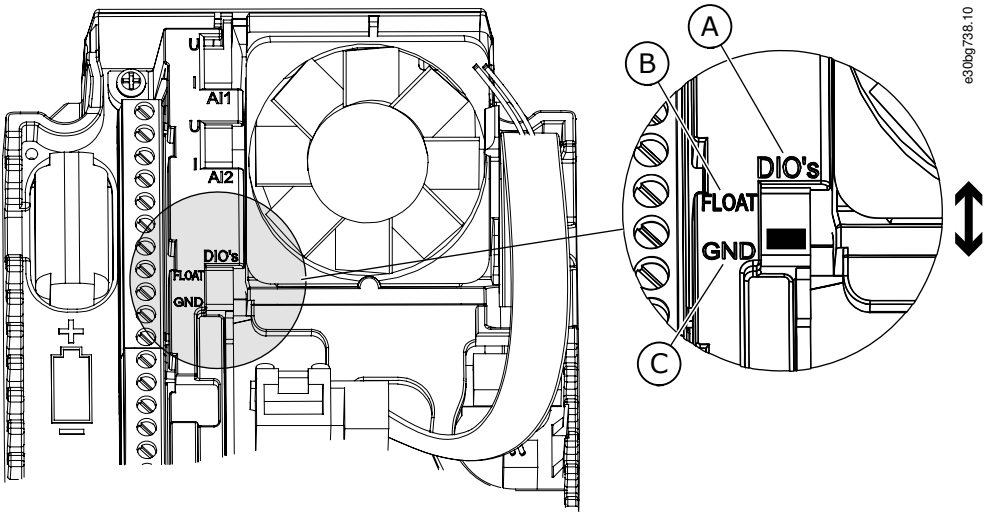


Illustration 72: Change the Position of This Switch to Isolate the Digital Inputs from Ground

A	The digital inputs	C	Connected to ground (default)
B	Floating		

## 7.6 Fieldbus Connection

### 7.6.1 Fieldbus Terminals

The drive can be connected to fieldbus with an RS485 or an Ethernet cable.

- If an RS485 cable is used, connect it to terminals A and B of the default I/O board.
- If an Ethernet cable is used, connect it to the Ethernet terminal.

In a VACON® 3000 AFE drive, connect the fieldbus to both the AFE and INU control units.

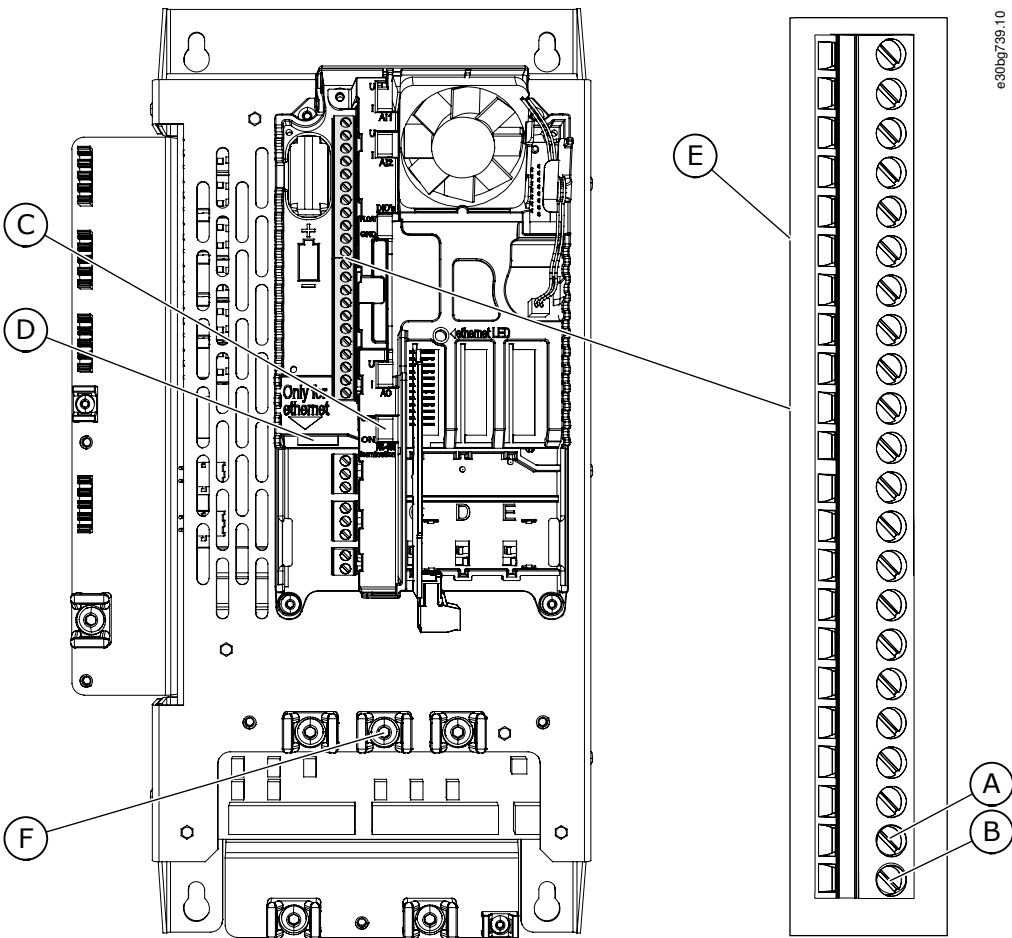


Illustration 73: The Ethernet and RS485 Connections

A	RS485 terminal A = Data -	D	The Ethernet terminal
B	RS485 terminal B = Data +	E	The control terminals
C	RS485 DIP switch	F	Cable clamps

7.6.2 Using Fieldbus through an Ethernet Cable

Table 18: Ethernet Cable Data

Item	Description
Plug type	Shielded RJ45 plug, maximum length 40 mm (1.57 in)
Cable type	CAT5e STP
Cable length	Maximum 100 m (328 ft)

Ethernet Cabling

1. Connect the Ethernet cable to its terminal.

See more in the installation guide of the used fieldbus.

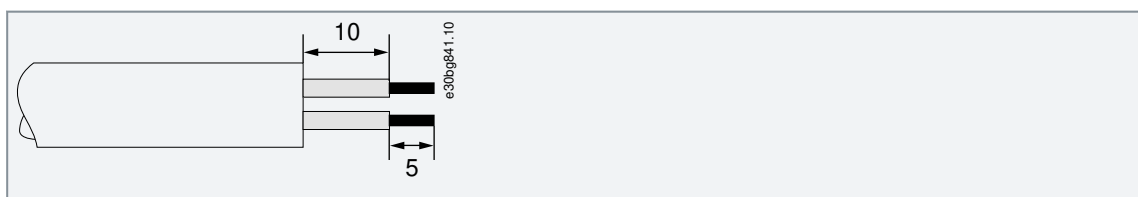
### 7.6.3 Using Fieldbus through an RS485 Cable

Table 19: RS485 Cable Data

Item	Description
Plug type	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG13)
Cable type	STP (shielded twisted pair), Belden 9841 or similar
Cable length	So that it agrees with the fieldbus. See the fieldbus manual.

#### RS485 Cabling

1. Remove approximately 15 mm (0.59 in) of the gray shield of the RS485 cable. Do this for the two fieldbus cables.
  - a. Strip the cables for approximately 5 mm (0.20 in) to put them in the terminals. Do not keep more than 10 mm (0.39 in) of the cable outside the terminals.

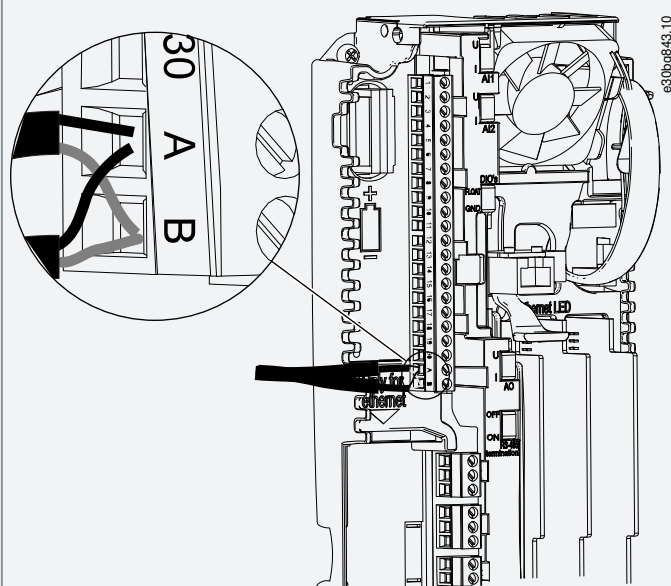


- b. Strip the cable at such a distance from the terminal that it can be attached to the frame with the grounding clamp for the control cable. Strip the cable at a maximum length of 15 mm (0.59 in). Do not remove the aluminum shield of the cable.



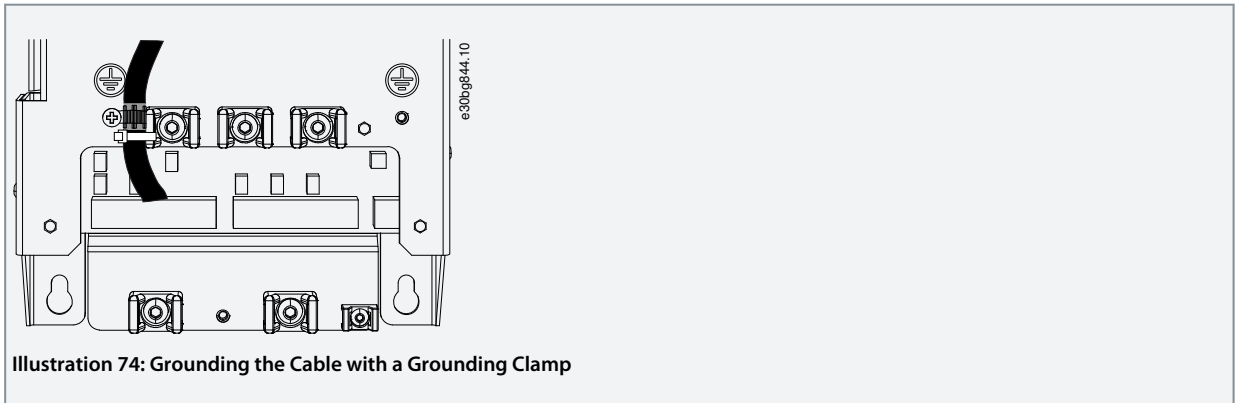
2. Connect the cable to the default I/O board of the drive, in terminals A and B.

- A = negative
- B = positive

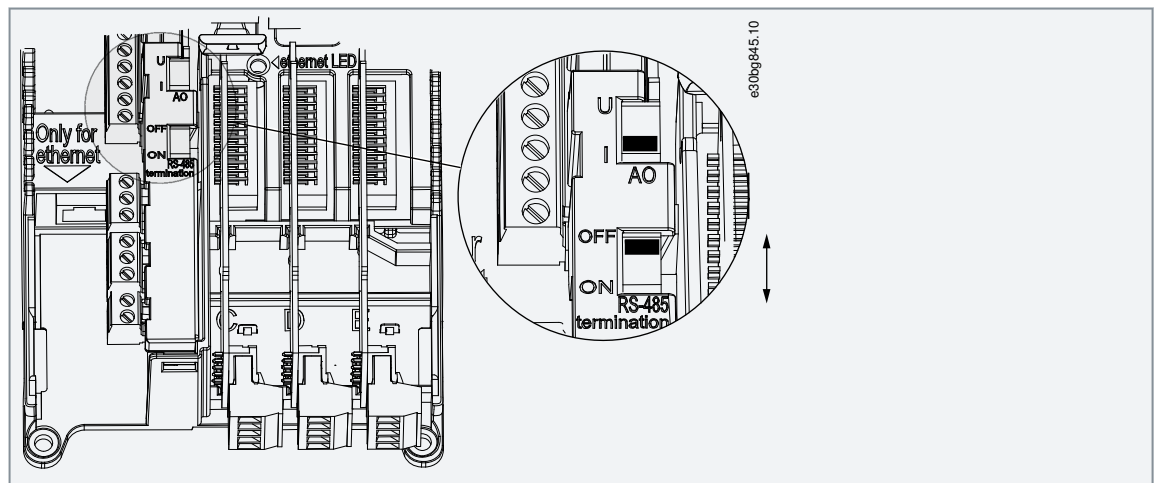




3. Attach the shield of the cable to the frame of the drive with a grounding clamp for the control cable to make a grounding connection.

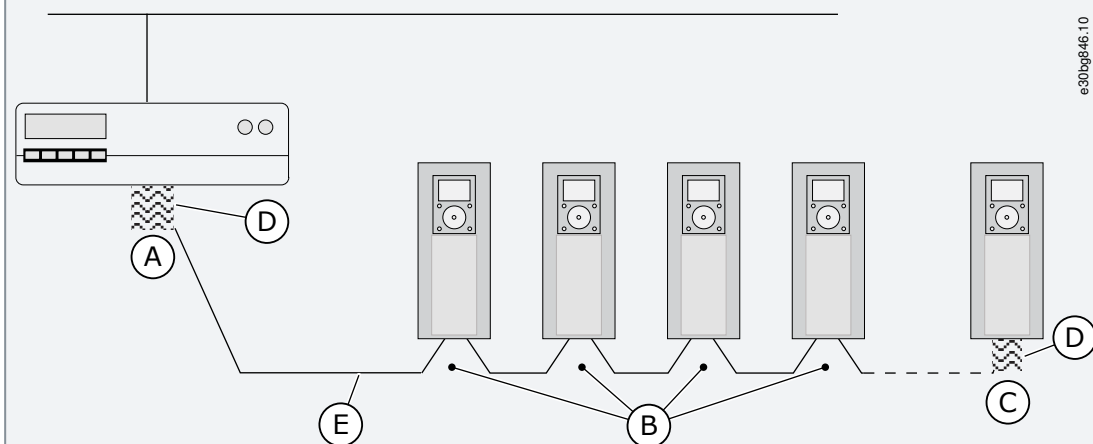


4. If the drive is the last device on the fieldbus line, set the bus termination. Set the bus termination for the first and the last device of the fieldbus line. It is recommended that the first device on the fieldbus is the master device.
  - a. Find the DIP switches on the left side of the control unit of the drive.



- b. Set the DIP switch of the RS485 bus termination to the ON position.

The termination resistors are placed at both ends of the fieldbus line to decrease signal reflections on the line. Biasing is built in the bus termination resistor. The termination resistance is 220  $\Omega$ .



**Illustration 75: Setting the Bus Termination for a Fieldbus Line**

A	The termination is activated	D	The bus termination. The resistance is 220 $\Omega$ .
B	The termination is deactivated	E	The fieldbus
C	The termination is activated with a DIP switch		

N O T I C E

**LOSS OF TERMINATION RESISTANCE**

If the last device on the fieldbus line is powered down, the termination resistance is lost. The loss of termination resistance causes signal reflections on the line, which can disrupt the fieldbus communication.

- Do not power down the last device on the fieldbus line while the fieldbus is active.

## 7.7 Option Board Installation

### ⚠ W A R N I N G ⚠

#### SHOCK HAZARD FROM CONTROL TERMINALS

The control terminals can have a dangerous voltage also when the drive is disconnected from mains. A contact with this voltage can lead to injury.

- Make sure that there is no voltage in the control terminals before touching the control terminals.

### N O T I C E

#### INCOMPATIBLE OPTION BOARDS

It is not possible to install option boards that are not compatible with the drive.

If the installed board is an OPTB or an OPTC option board, make sure that the label on it says "dv" (dual voltage). This marking shows that the option board is compatible with the drive.

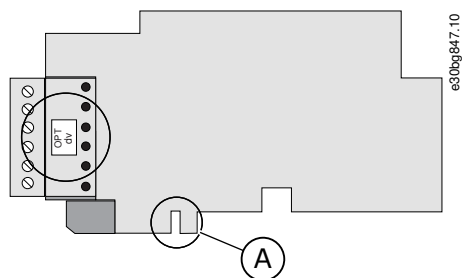
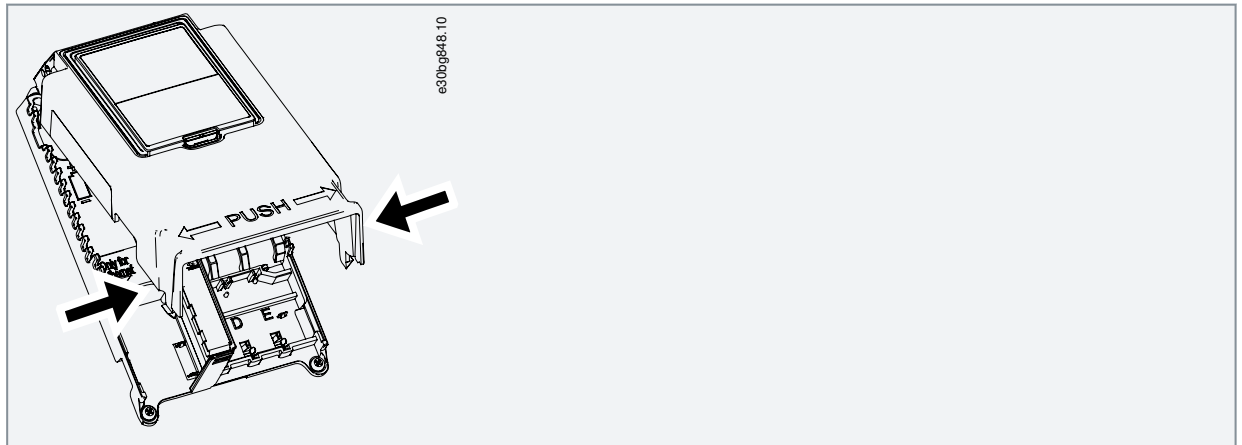


Illustration 76: Label on the Option Board

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | The slot coding |
|---|-----------------|

### Installation Procedure

1. To get access to the option slots, open the cover of the control unit.



2. Install the option board into the correct slot: C, D, or E.

The option board has a slot coding, because of which it is not possible to install the option board in an incorrect slot.

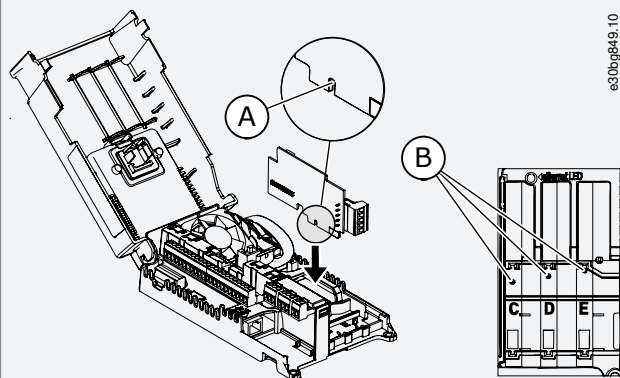


Illustration 77: Installing the Option Boards

- |   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| A | The slot coding  |
| B | The option slots |

3. Close the cover of the control unit.

## 7.8 Optical Fiber Connections

The VACON® 3000 drive has a high-speed Powerbus optical fiber interface for internal connections. The control unit has six optical fiber connections: four for phase modules, one for the connection between the control units and one for an auxiliary board. The two terminals used for the control of the INU or AFE phase modules are shown in [Illustration 78](#).

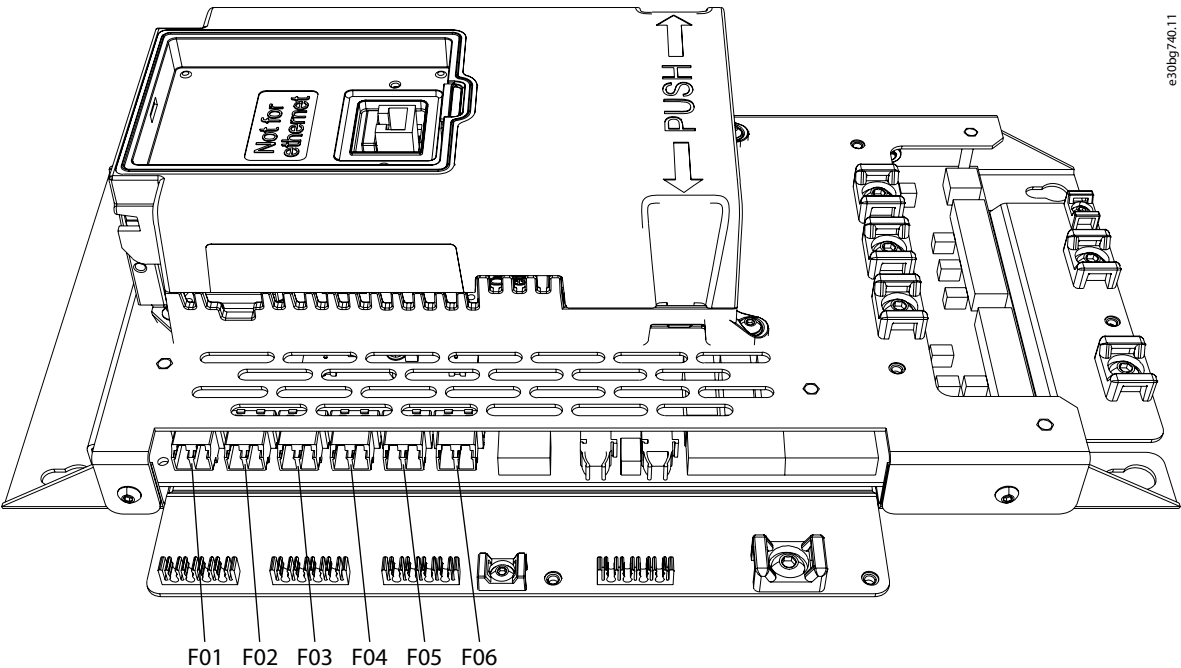


Illustration 78: Optical Fiber Terminals

F01	Terminal for phase module connections (belt 1)	F04	Terminal not used
F02	Terminal for phase module connections (belt 2)	F05	Terminal for auxiliary I/O board and DFE connections
F03	Terminal not used	F06	Terminal not used

Connect the phase modules of each AFE or INU in series (see [Illustration 79](#)).

- Connect the optical fiber from connector A of the phase module L1/U to connector F01 on the control unit.
- Connect the optical fiber from connector A of the phase module L2/V to connector B on phase module L1/U.
- Connect the optical fiber from connector A of the phase module L3/W to connector B on phase module L2/V.

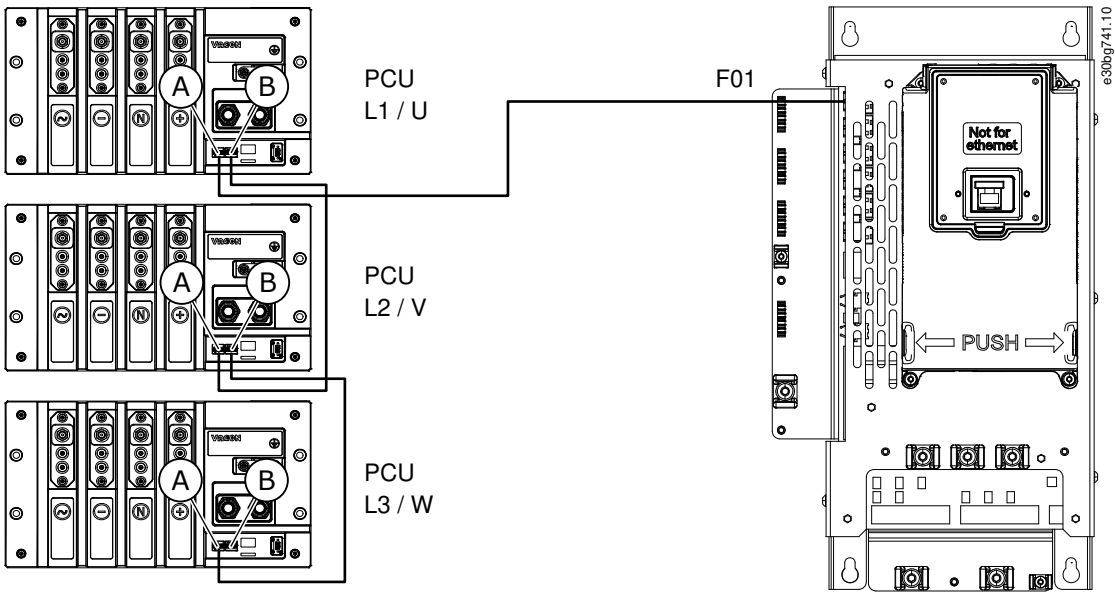


Illustration 79: Optical Fiber Connections between Control Unit and Phase Modules

Two parallel AFE or INU units can be connected to one control unit. The first AFE or INU unit (Belt 1, series connection of three phase modules) is connected to control unit connector F01 and the second (B2) to connector F02.

If a brake chopper is installed (option +DBC), there is a separate control unit for the brake choppers. Connect the brake chopper modules in series as shown in [Illustration 80](#). A maximum of three modules can be connected in series. Brake choppers can also be connected to the control unit one by one (BCU1 to connector F01, and BCU2 to F02).

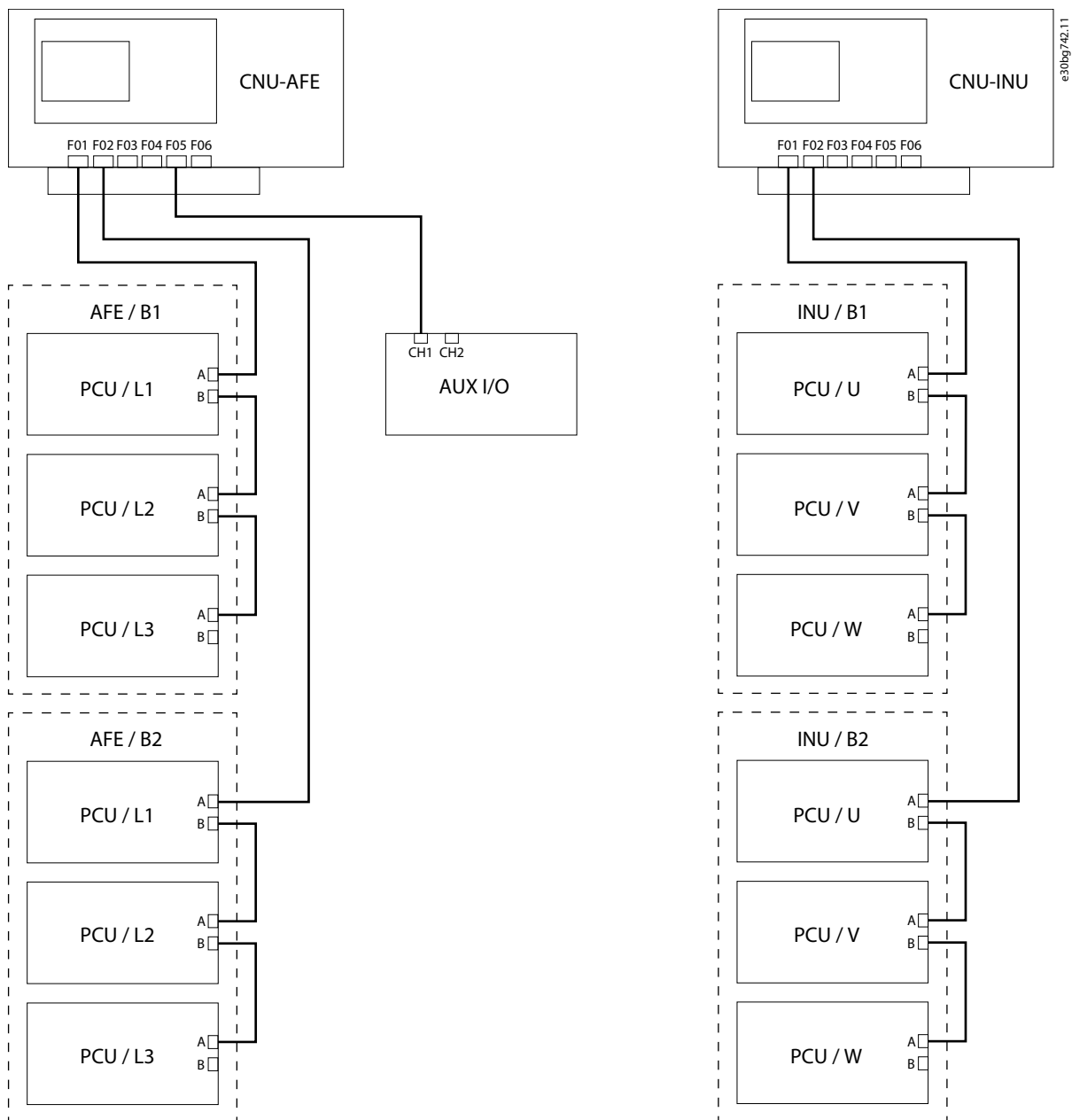


Illustration 80: Parallel Optical Fiber Connections in an AFE Drive

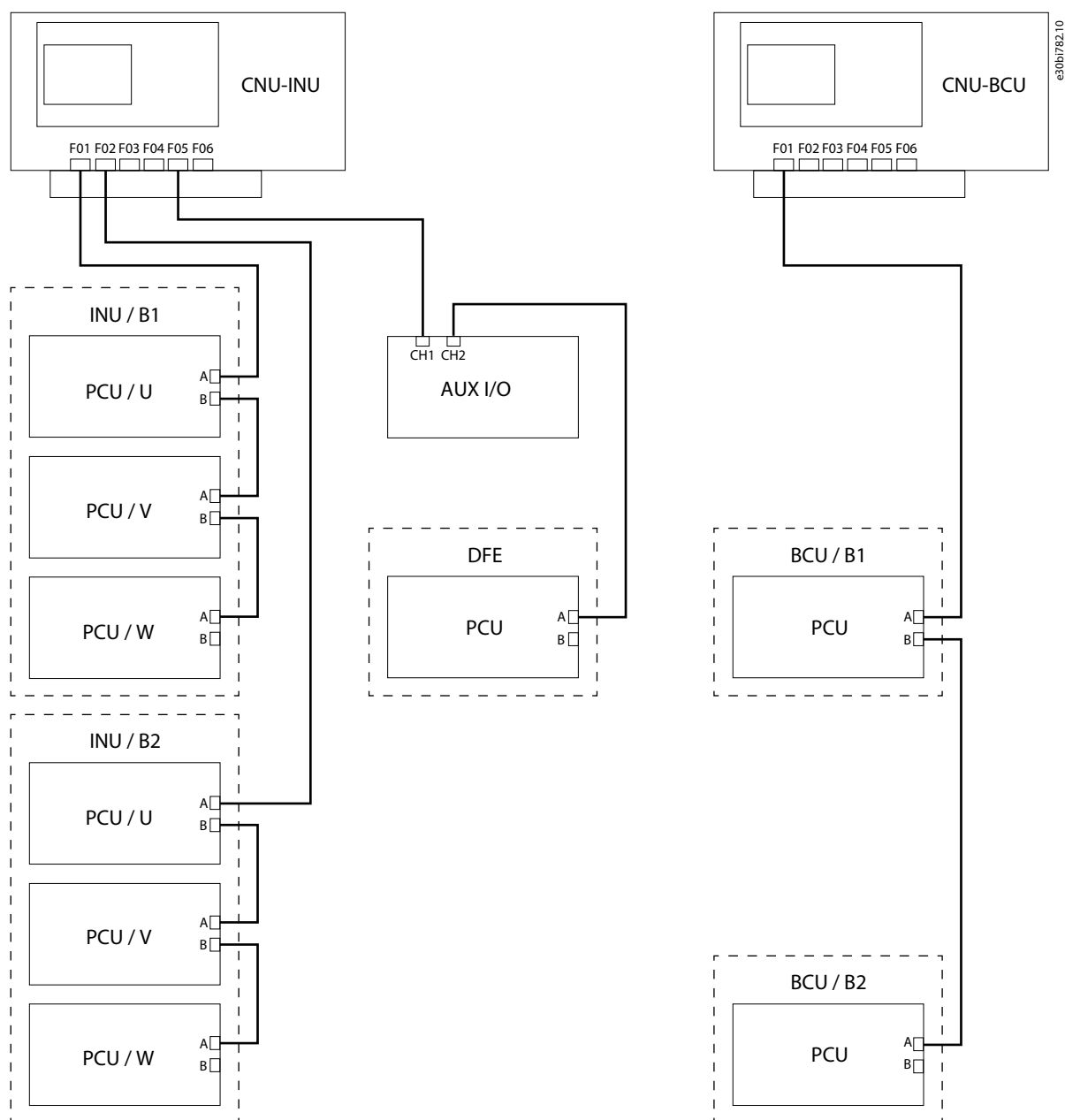


Illustration 81: Parallel Optical Fiber Connections in a 12-pulse Drive with BCU Option

### 7.8.1 Selection of Optical Fiber Cables

SI-POF duplex cables are recommended for all optical fiber connections. The connector type must be LC duplex. The specifications in [Table 20](#) are for cables manufactured by Firecomms. The cable assemblies (POF and connectors) are available from Firecomms resellers with type code FD-XXX-LDB, where XXX is the length of the cable, XXC in centimeters, and XXM in meters.

Table 20: Optical Fiber Cable Specifications

Item	Specification
Operation temperature	-40...+85°C (-40...+185°F)
Minimum bend radius	25 mm (1 in)
Cable size (outer dimensions)	2.2 x 4.4 mm (0.087 x 0.173 in)
Fiber size	d = 1 mm (0.04 in)
Cover material	Flame resistant PE or PVC

Item	Specification
UL flame resistance	VW-1
Cable standard	Compatible with IEC 60793-2-40 class A4a
Plastic optical fiber type	Duplex optical fiber, 1 mm (0.04 in) high-purity core. The core and cladding are surrounded by a 2.2 mm (0.082 in) polyethylene (PE) jacket. Firecomms type code: FC-500-0DB
Connector type	Firecomms type code: FP-00C-LD0
Connector standard	Compatible with IEC 61754-20 edition 2

Recommended tools (from FiberFin):

- LC Duplex crimp tool, 2.60 mm hex, PEW 8 (FiberFin type code: FF-CRMP-LC-WL)
- Ultra Low Loss finishing tool, LC Connector (FiberFin type code: FF-LC-RZR1)
- Installer kit, including finishing tool and crimping tool (FiberFin type code: FF-STDLCINST-K)

## 7.8.2 Making Optical Fiber Cables

The fiber optic cables most likely to need replacement are the ones connected to the phase modules. During the installation or replacement of modules, it is possible to damage the fiber optic cables accidentally. This procedure describes how to make new cables.

These tools and equipment are required:

- Specialized tool kit for fiber optics
  - Wire stripper
  - Wire cutter
  - Crimper tool
- Fiber optic wire
- Connectors

For details, see [7.8.1 Selection of Optical Fiber Cables](#).

### Procedure

1. Cut the required length of fiber optic wire. Use a wire cutter to make sure that the cuts are clean.
2. Use the stripper tool to strip the wires approximately 25 mm (1 in) at both ends.

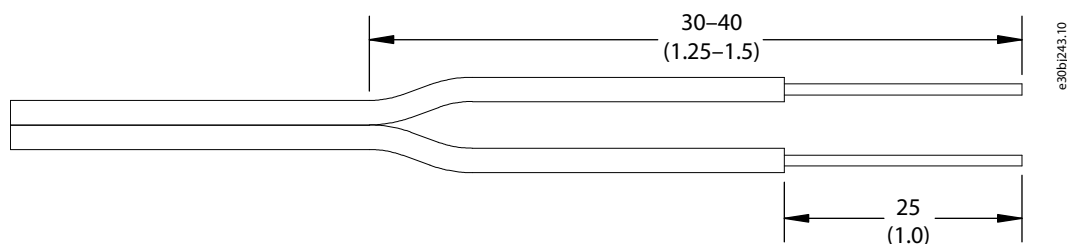


Illustration 82: Stripping and Splitting the Cable

3. Split the wires apart 30–40 mm (1.25–1.5 in) from both ends.

See [Illustration 82](#).

4. Place a connector into the crimper tool.

5. Push the fibers into the connector. Make sure that the fibers are fully pushed in. The fibers must come out of the end of the connector approximately 1.6 mm (0.63 in).

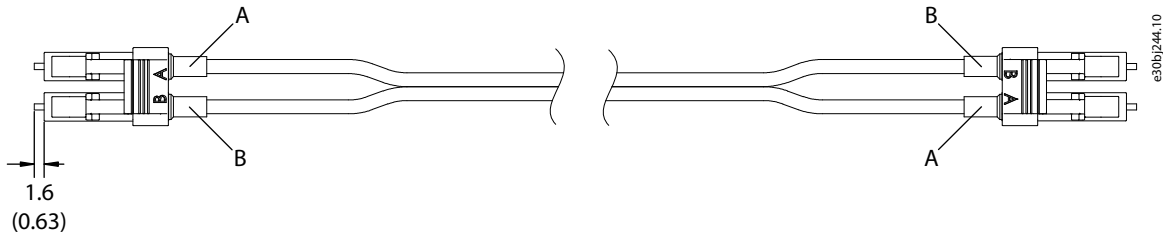


Illustration 83: Installing the Connectors on the Cable

6. When the wires and connector are fully in position, firmly close the crimper grip.
7. Install the connector on the other end of the cable. Notice the labels A and B on the connectors. When making the connection for the other end of the wire, B goes to the A slot and A to B.

See [Illustration 83](#).

8. Check the cable by shining an LED on one end of the cable and verifying that the other end is lit. For example, shine on wire A on one end, and verify that B is lit on the other end.

### 7.9 Pre-charge and Supply Voltage Feedback Connections

The control unit has specific terminals for the DC-link pre-charge function. See [Illustration 84](#).

- 3 digital inputs and 3 digital outputs for the operation of the DC-link pre-charge function.
- 2 optical fiber inputs from external sources, for example, an arc flash detector.
- A 3-phase input for supply voltage feedback. The feedback voltage is supplied to the control unit by a potential transformer.

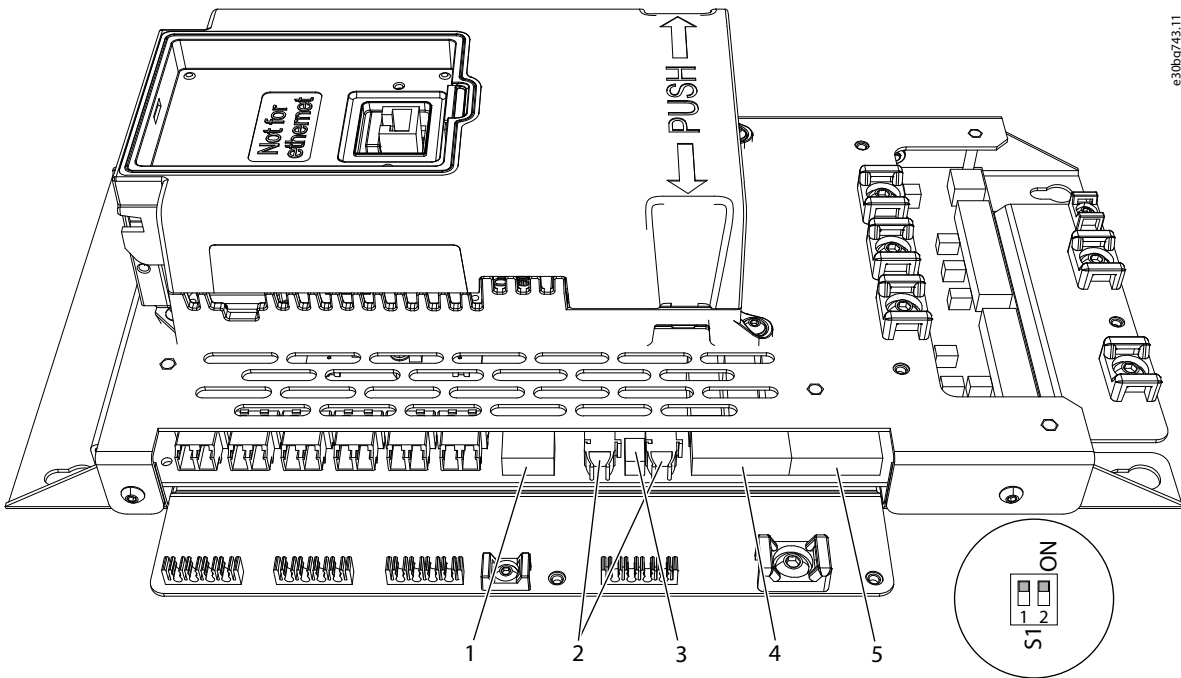


Illustration 84: Terminals for Pre-charge I/O and Supply Voltage Feedback

1	Supply voltage feedback (L1, L2, L3)	4	Digital outputs (DO1, DO2, DO3) for the operation of the DC-link pre-charge function
2	Optical fiber inputs for Breaker enable 1 (FR1) and Breaker enable 2 (FR2)	5	Digital inputs (DI1, DI2, DI3) for the operation of the DC-link pre-charge function
3	Breaker enable bypass switch (S1)		

If the breaker enable fiber connections are not used, set the corresponding bypass switch to the ON position.



- Switch S1.1 = Bypass for Breaker enable 1 (FR1)
- Switch S1.2 = Bypass for Breaker enable 2 (FR2)

Table 21: The Digital Inputs and Outputs for External Pre-charge Control

Terminal	Signal <sup>(1)</sup>	Technical information
DO1	Breaker start	SPDT, SPST-NO Switching capacity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24 V DC / 8 A</li> <li>• 250 V AC / 8 A</li> <li>• 125 V DC / 0.15 A</li> </ul> Maximum switching capacity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2000 VA / 150 W</li> </ul> Minimum switching load <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 V DC / 10 mA</li> </ul>
DO2	Breaker enable	
DO3	Pre-charge permissive	
DI1	Pre-charge contactor feedback	24–48 V DC, optically isolated
DI2	Breaker status	
DI3	Pilot relay status	

<sup>1</sup> The digital inputs/outputs are configurable.

## 7.10 Encoder Interface

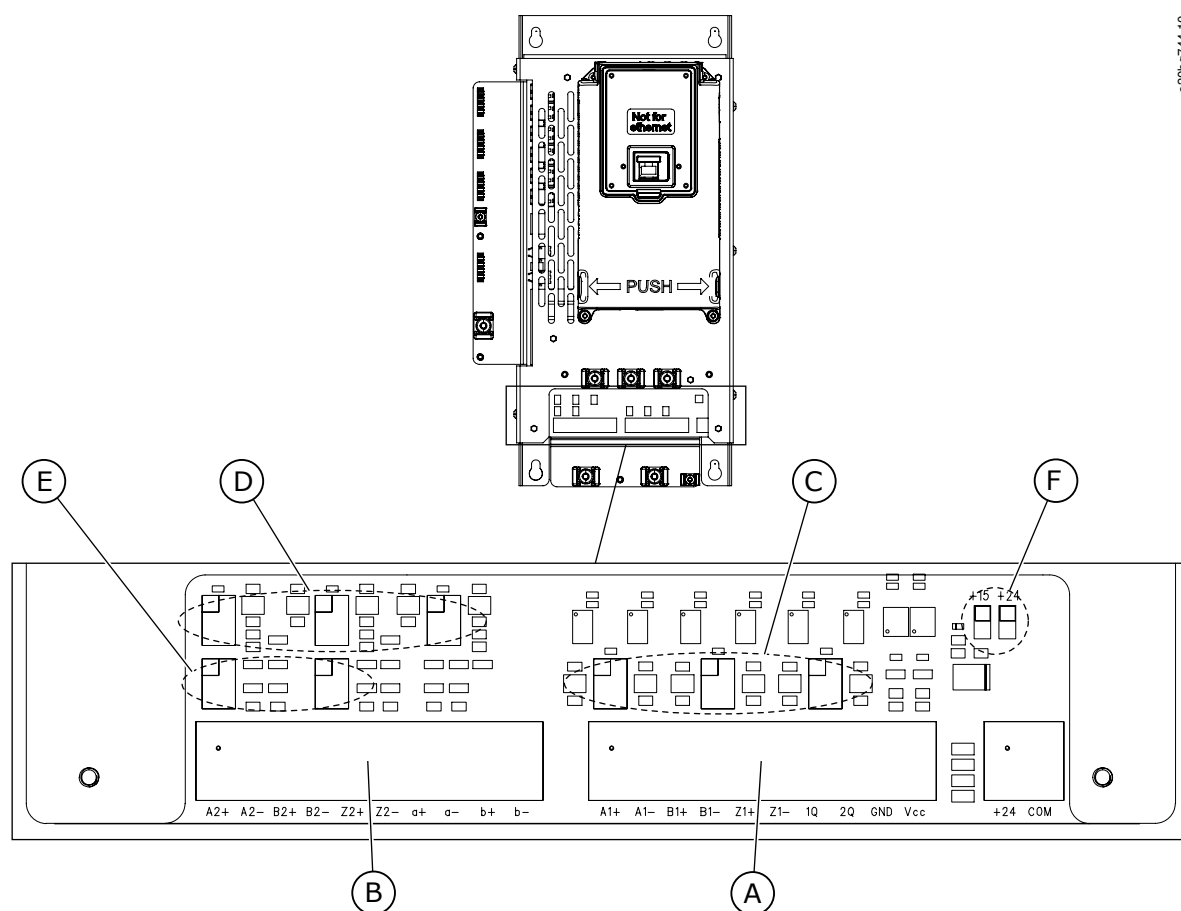
The VACON® 3000 control unit includes a 2-encoder interface. The encoder interface is only used in the INU control unit, not in AFE or BCU control units.

The encoder interface is designed for HTL (High-voltage Transistor Logic) type encoders (voltage output type Push-pull HTL, open collector output type HTL) which provide input signal levels dependent on the supply voltage of the encoder.

The encoder properties include:

- Cross-connected optically isolated feedback for good noise limits
- 150 kHz maximum frequency
- Different encoder line driver voltage levels (24 V, 15 V, 5 V)
- Different encoder supply voltage levels (+24 V, +15 V) with current limits
- Differential encoder duplicator option from one of the encoder interfaces
- Master/follower selection
- Two qualifier inputs (1Q, 2Q) for position detection or pulse tachometer applications

If absolute encoder functionality is required, contact Danfoss.

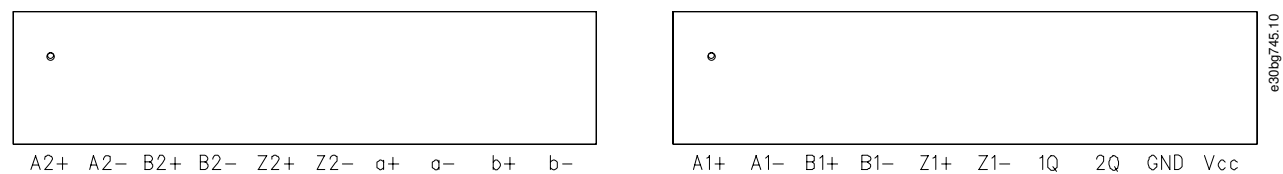


e30bg744.10

Illustration 85: Encoder Interface of the Control Unit

A	Encoder terminal, channel A	D	Encoder output voltage selection jumpers, channel B
B	Encoder terminal, channel B	E	Master/follower selection jumpers
C	Encoder output voltage selection jumpers, channel A	F	Encoder input voltage selection jumpers

### 7.10.1 Encoder Terminals and Signals



e30bg745.10

Illustration 86: Encoder Terminals

Encoder channel A is usable only for motor control.

Table 22: Channel A Terminals and Signals

Terminal	Signal	Signal Description
1	A1+	Channel A pulse input A1+ (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V
2	A1-	Channel A pulse input A1- (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V
3	B1+	Channel A pulse input B1+ (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; 90° delay from A1+

Terminal	Signal	Signal Description
4	B1-	Channel A pulse input B1- (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; 90° delay from A1-
5	Z1+	Channel A pulse input Z1+ (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; One pulse/revolution
6	Z1-	Channel A pulse input Z1- (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; One pulse/revolution
7	1Q	Qualifier/position input; Single-ended signal (to ground)
8	2Q	Qualifier/position input; Single-ended signal (to ground)
9	GND	Ground for control and inputs 1Q and 2Q
10	Vcc	Encoder supply voltage (selection with jumpers X11 and X15)

Table 23: Channel B Terminals and Signals

Terminal	Signal	Signal Description
1	A2+	Channel B pulse input A2+ (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V
2	A2-	Channel B pulse input A2- (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V
3	B2+	Channel B pulse input B2+ (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; 90° delay from A2+
4	B2-	Channel B pulse input B2- (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; 90° delay from A2-
5	Z2+	Channel B pulse input Z2+ (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; One pulse/revolution
6	Z2-	Channel B pulse input Z2- (differential); voltage range +5 V...+24 V; One pulse/revolution
7	a+	Pulse output a+ (differential); Made internally from channel 1 or channel 2 (selection with jumper X21); Output voltage +24 V
8	a-	Pulse output a- (differential); Made internally from channel 1 or channel 2 (selection with jumper X21); Output voltage +24 V
9	b+	Pulse output b+ (differential); Made internally from channel 1 or channel 2 (selection with jumper X22); Output voltage +24 V
10	b-	Pulse output b- (differential); Made internally from channel 1 or channel 2 (selection with jumper X22); Output voltage +24 V

### 7.10.2 Encoder Jumper Configurations

See the locations of the jumpers in [Illustration 87](#) and the jumper pin sequence in [Illustration 88](#).

The available encoder jumper configurations:

- Encoder input voltage selection, jumpers X11 and X15, see [Table 24](#).
- Master/follower selection, jumpers X21 and X22, see [Table 25](#).
- Encoder output voltage selection for channel A, jumpers X23-X25, see [Table 26](#).
- Encoder output voltage selection for channel B, jumpers X26-X28, see [Table 27](#).

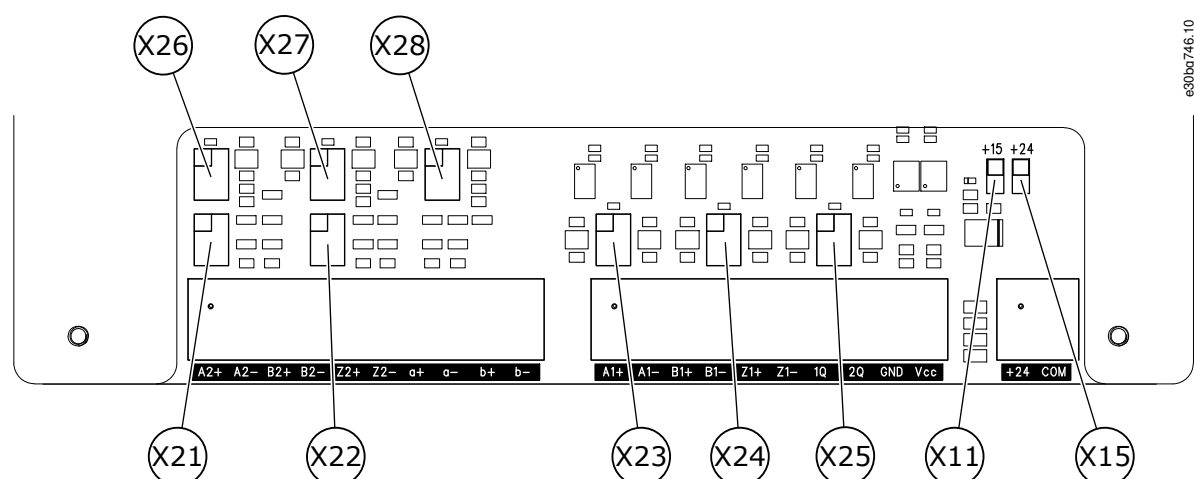


Illustration 87: Encoder Jumper Locations



Illustration 88: Jumper Pin Sequence and Connection Example (Pins 1-3 and 2-4 Connected)

Table 24: Encoder Input Voltage Selection, Jumpers X11 and X15

Jumper Selection	Pins to connect, Jumper X11	Pins to connect, Jumper X15
+15 V (default)	1-2	open
+24 V	open	1-2

Table 25: Master/Follower Selection, Jumpers X21 and X22

Jumper Selection	Pins to connect
Master (default)	3-5 and 4-6
Follower	1-3 and 2-4

Table 26: Encoder Output Voltage Selection, Channel A

Jumper Selection	Pins to connect, Jumper X23 (input A1)	Pins to connect, Jumper X24 (input B1)	Pins to connect, Jumper X25 (input Z1)
+24 V	open	open	open
+15 V (default)	1-3 and 2-4	1-3 and 2-4	1-3 and 2-4
+5 V	3-5 and 4-6	3-5 and 4-6	3-5 and 4-6

Table 27: Encoder Output Voltage Selection, Channel B

Jumper Selection	Pins to connect, Jumper X26 (input A2)	Pins to connect, Jumper X27 (input B2)	Pins to connect, Jumper X28 (input Z2)
+24 V	open	open	open
+15 V (default)	1-3 and 2-4	1-3 and 2-4	1-3 and 2-4
+5 V	3-5 and 4-6	3-5 and 4-6	3-5 and 4-6

### 7.10.3 Encoder Connection

Ground the encoder cable shields only at the AC drive end to avoid circulating current in the shield. Isolate the shield at the encoder end.

If possible, use double shielded cable for encoder connection.

A high pulse frequency combined with a high cable capacitance places a considerable load on the encoder. Therefore, apply as low a voltage as possible for the encoder supply. Use +15 V encoder voltage input, if allowed in the voltage range specification of the encoder.

If external voltage supply is used, connect the ground of the external supply to terminal 9 in channel A of the encoder interface and to the encoder ground.

#### Differential Connection

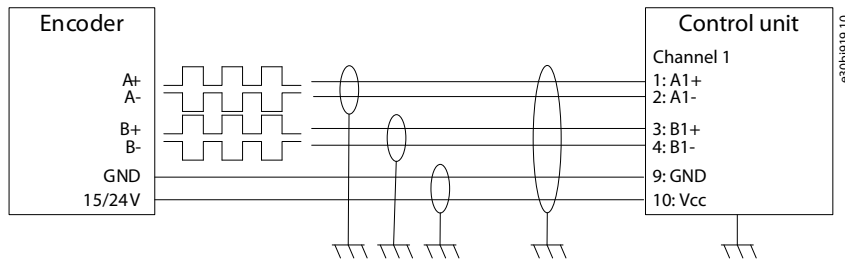


Illustration 89: HTL Type Encoder Connection with Differential Inputs

#### Single-ended Connection

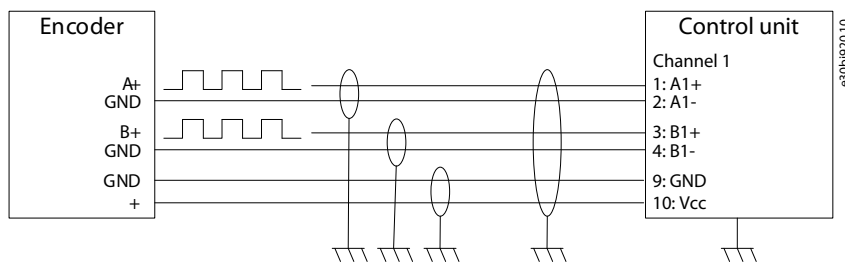


Illustration 90: HTL Type Encoder Connection (Open Source) with Single-ended Inputs

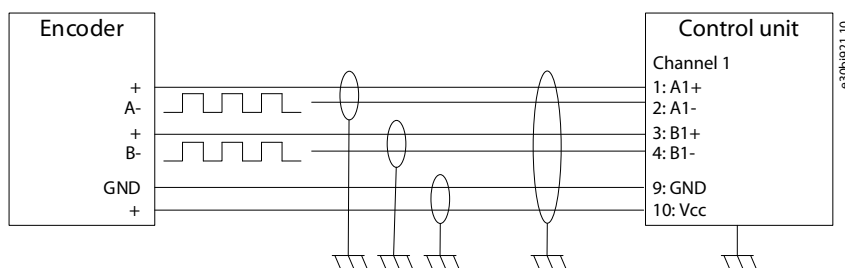


Illustration 91: HTL Type Encoder Connection (Open Collector) with Single-ended Inputs

## Chain Connection

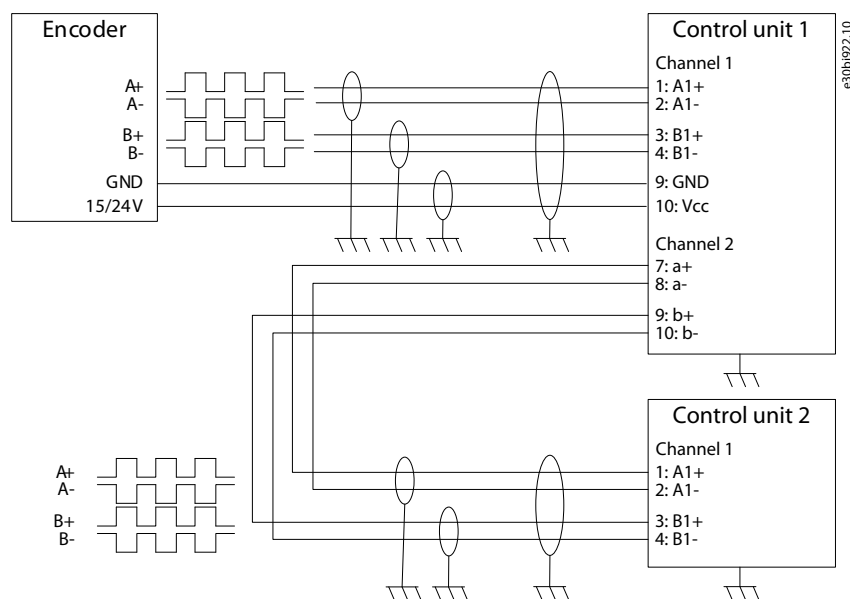


Illustration 92: Chain Connection with Duplicated Differential Inputs

## 7.11 Battery for the Real-Time Clock (RTC)

To use the real-time clock (RTC), a battery must be installed in the left side of the control unit. See [7.1 Control Unit Components](#). Use a ½ AA battery with 3.6 V and a capacity of 1000–1200 mAh. Use, for example, a Vitzrocell SB-AA02 battery.

The battery lasts approximately 10 years. See more about the functions of the RTC in the application guides.

## 7.12 Galvanic Isolation Barriers

The control connections are isolated from the mains. The ground terminals are permanently connected to the I/O ground.

The digital inputs on the standard I/O board can be galvanically isolated from the I/O ground. To isolate the digital inputs, use the DIP switch that has the positions FLOAT and GND. See [7.5.2 Isolation of the Digital Inputs from Ground](#).

## 7.13 System and Application Software

The VACON® 3000 control unit comes with AFE or INU system and application software. There is also separate application software for the brake chopper control unit.

The application software is specific to the VACON® 3000 and comes installed on the drive. For more information, see the VACON® 3000 Application guides.

## 7.14 Technical Data on Control Connections

For more detailed information about the standard I/O board and optional I/O boards, see the VACON® 100 I/O Boards User Manual.

Table 28: The Standard I/O Board

Terminal	Signal	Technical Information
1	Reference output	+10 V, 0%...+3%, maximum current: 10 mA
2	Analog input, voltage, or current	Analog input channel 1 0...+10 V ( $R_i = 200\text{ k}\Omega$ ) 4–20 mA ( $R_i = 250\text{ }\Omega$ ) Resolution 0.1%, accuracy $\pm 1\%$ Selection V/mA with DIP switches (see chapter Selection of terminal functions with DIP switches in the Operating Guide).
3	Analog input common (current)	Differential input if not connected to ground Allows $\pm 20\text{ V}$ common-mode voltage to GND

Terminal	Signal	Technical Information
4	Analog input, voltage, or current	Analog input channel 2 Default: 4–20 mA ( $R_i = 250\ \Omega$ ) 0...+10 V ( $R_i = 200\ \text{k}\Omega$ ) Resolution 0.1%, accuracy $\pm 1\%$ Selection V/mA with DIP switches (see chapter Selection of terminal functions with DIP switches in the Operating Guide).
5	Analog input common (current)	Differential input if not connected to ground Allows $\pm 20\ \text{V}$ common-mode voltage to GND
6	24 V auxiliary voltage	+24 V, $\pm 10\%$ , maximum voltage ripple < 100 mV rms Maximum 250 mA Short-circuit protected
7	I/O ground	Ground for reference and controls (connected internally to frame ground through 1 M $\Omega$ )
8	Digital input 1	Positive or negative logic $R_i = \text{min. } 5\ \text{k}\Omega$ 0–5 V = 0 15–30 V = 1
9	Digital input 2	
10	Digital input 3	
11	Common A for DIN1-DIN6	Digital inputs can be disconnected from ground. See chapter Isolation of digital inputs from ground in the Operating Guide.
12	24 V auxiliary voltage	+24 V, $\pm 10\%$ , maximum voltage ripple < 100 mV rms Maximum 250 mA Short-circuit protected
13	I/O ground	Ground for reference and controls (connected internally to frame ground through 1 M $\Omega$ )
14	Digital input 4	Positive or negative logic $R_i = \text{min. } 5\ \text{k}\Omega$ 0–5 V = 0 15–30 V = 1
15	Digital input 5	
16	Digital input 6	
17	Common A for DIN1-DIN6	Digital inputs can be disconnected from ground. See chapter Isolation of digital inputs from ground in the Operating Guide.
18	Analog signal (+output)	Analog output channel 1, selection 0–20 mA, load < 500 $\Omega$ Default: 0–20 mA 0–10 V Resolution 0.1%, accuracy $\pm 2\%$ Selection V/mA with DIP switches (see chapter Selection of terminal functions with DIP switches in the Operating Guide) Short-circuit protected
19	Analog output common	
30	24 V auxiliary input voltage	Can be used as external power back-up for the control unit
A	RS485	Differential receiver/transmitter Set bus termination with DIP switches (see chapter Selection of terminal functions with DIP switches in the Operating Guide). Termination resistance = 220 $\Omega$
B	RS485	

Table 29: The Standard Relay Board (+SBF3)

Terminal	Signal	Technical information
21	Relay output 1 <sup>(1)</sup>	Change-over switch (SPDT) relay. 5.5 mm isolation between channels. Switching capacity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24 V DC / 8 A</li> <li>• 250 V AC / 8 A</li> <li>• 125 V DC / 0.4 A</li> </ul> Minimum switching load <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 V / 10 mA</li> </ul>
22		
23		
24	Relay output 2 <sup>(1)</sup>	Change-over switch (SPDT) relay. 5.5 mm isolation between channels. Switching capacity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24 V DC / 8 A</li> <li>• 250 V AC / 8 A</li> <li>• 125 V DC / 0.4 A</li> </ul> Minimum switching load <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 V / 10 mA</li> </ul>
25		
26		
32	Relay output 3 <sup>(1)</sup>	Normally-open (NO or SPST) switch relay. 5.5 mm isolation between channels. Switching capacity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24 V DC / 8 A</li> <li>• 250 V AC / 8 A</li> <li>• 125 V DC / 0.4 A</li> </ul> Minimum switching load <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 V / 10 mA</li> </ul>
33		

<sup>1</sup> If 230 V AC is used as control voltage from the output relays, the control circuitry must be powered with a separate isolation transformer to limit the short-circuit current and the overvoltage spikes. This is to prevent welding on the relay switches. Refer to standard EN 60204-1, section 7.2.9.

## 7.15 Auxiliary I/O Board

### 7.15.1 Connector Locations



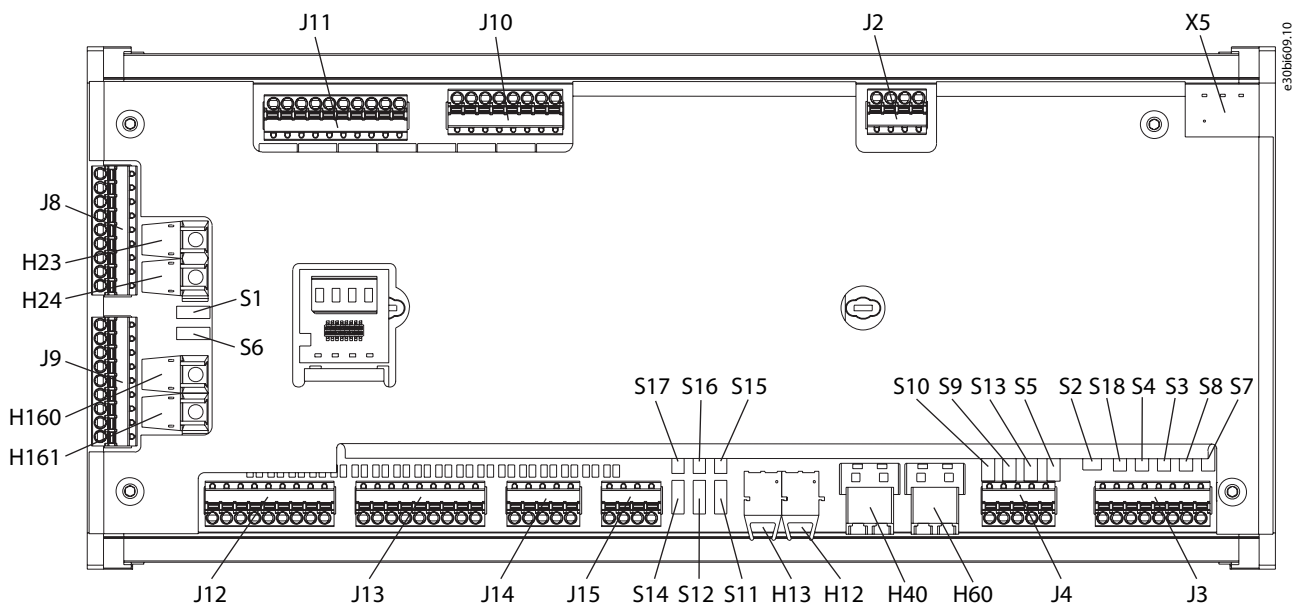


Illustration 93: The Connectors and Switches on the Auxiliary I/O Board

H12	Breaker enable fiber optic input 2	J8	Digital inputs (24 V, 0.5 A), 8 channels
H13	Breaker enable fiber optic input 1	J9	Digital inputs (24 V, 0.5 A), 8 channels
H23	External breaker enable fiber optic TX2	J10	Relay outputs, 4 channels
H24	External breaker enable fiber optic RX2	J11	Relay outputs, 5 channels
H40	Communication channel 1 (PBHS)	J12	Digital inputs (24 V, 0.5 A), 8 channels
H60	Communication channel 2 (PBHS)	J13	Digital inputs (24 V, 0.5 A), 8 channels
H160	External breaker enable fiber optic TX1	J14	Breaker enable digital inputs, 4 channels
H161	External breaker enable fiber optic RX1	J15	24 V pull-up for sensors
J2	Grid voltage measurement, 3 channels	S1–S18	Control switches
J3	Grid current measurement, 3 channels	X5	24 V input
J4	Analog voltage (0–10 V)/analog current (4–20 mA) measurement, 4 channels		

### 7.15.2 Connector Specifications

Table 30: Connectors H12/H13, Breaker Enable Optical Fiber Signals

Con- nector	Signal Name	Input Disa- ble Switch	Description
H12	Breaker ena- ble 2	S12	When light is present, the breaker is enabled. Switch in position (1-2) disables the input.
H13	Breaker ena- ble 1	S11	When light is present, the breaker is enabled. Switch in position (1-2) disables the input.

Table 31: Connectors H23/H24 and H160/H161, External Breaker Enable Optical Fiber Inputs/Outputs

Con- nector	Signal Name	Input Disable Switch	Description
H23	Ext Brk TX 2	–	Transmit breaker enable signal to other boards.
H24	Ext Brk RX 2	S1	Receive breaker enable signal from other boards. Switch position (1-2) disables external signal.
H160	Ext Brk TX 1	–	Transmit breaker enable signal to other boards.
H161	Ext Brk RX 1	S6	Receive breaker enable signal from other boards. Switch position (1-2) disables external signal.

Table 32: Connector J2, Grid Voltage (120/127 V) Measurement (Copper Wire) Analog Signals

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J2-1	Phase A	120/127 V phase A grid voltage input (LN peak -170 V)
J2-2	Phase B	120/127 V phase B grid voltage input (LN peak -170 V)
J2-3	Phase C	120/127 V phase C grid voltage input (LN peak -170 V)
J2-4	Reference	Neutral/return/artificial neutral

Table 33: Connector J3, Grid Current Measurement (Copper Wire) Analog Signals

Connector	Signal Name	Switch Control	Description
J3-1	CT Supply	–	+16 V, positive supply output for hall effect sensor
J3-2	CT Supply	–	-16 V, negative supply output for hall effect sensor
J3-3	Analog Input 5 +	S2	S2 switch position (1-2) grounds Input 1P
J3-4	Analog Input 5 -	S18	S18 switch position (1-2) connects burden resistor
J3-5	Analog Input 6 +	S4	S4 switch position (1-2) grounds Input 2P
J3-6	Analog Input 6 -	S3	S3 switch position (1-2) connects burden resistor
J3-7	Analog Input 7 +	S8	S8 switch position (1-2) grounds Input 3P
J3-8	Analog Input 7 -	S7	S7 switch position (1-2) connects burden resistor

Table 34: Connector J4, General Purpose Voltage/Current Measurement (Copper Wire) Analog Signals

Connec- tor	Signal Name	Switch Control	Description
J4-1	Analog Input 1	S10	Voltage/current input 1 (single ended). Switch toggles between current and voltage.
J4-2	Analog Input 2	S9	Voltage/current input 2 (single ended). Switch toggles between current and voltage.
J4-3	Analog Input 3	S13	Voltage/current input 3 (single ended). Switch toggles between current and voltage.
J4-4	Analog Input 4	S5	Voltage/current input 4 (single ended). Switch toggles between current and voltage.
J4-5	Common	–	Return for analog voltage signals.

Table 35: Connector J8, 24 V/0.5 A Digital Input (Copper Wire) Signals

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J8-1	Digital input 1	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-2	Digital input 2	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-3	Digital input 3	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-4	Digital input 4	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-5	Digital input 5	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-6	Digital input 6	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-7	Digital input 7	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-8	Digital input 8	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank A)
J8-9	Common A	Signal return for bank A

Table 36: Connector J9, 24 V/0.5 A Digital Input (Copper Wire) Signals

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J9-1	Digital input 9	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-2	Digital input 10	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-3	Digital input 11	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-4	Digital input 12	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-5	Digital input 13	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-6	Digital input 14	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-7	Digital input 15	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-8	Digital input 16	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank B)
J9-9	Common B	Signal return for bank B

Table 37: Connector J10, Relay Outputs

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J10-1	Relay output 1 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-2	Relay output 1 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-3	Relay output 2 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-4	Relay output 2 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-5	Relay output 3 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-6	Relay output 3 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-7	Relay output 4 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J10-8	Relay output 4 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.

Table 38: Connector J11, Relay Outputs

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J11-1	Relay output 5 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-2	Relay output 5 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-3	Relay output 6 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-4	Relay output 6 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-5	Relay output 7 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-6	Relay output 7 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-7	Relay output 8 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-8	Relay output 8 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-9	Relay output 9 CM	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.
J11-10	Relay output 9 NO	Relay is disabled when breaker enable network is not satisfied.

Table 39: Connector J12, 24 V/0.5 A Digital Input (Copper Wire) Signals

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J12-1	Digital input 17	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-2	Digital input 18	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-3	Digital input 19	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-4	Digital input 20	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-5	Digital input 21	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-6	Digital input 22	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-7	Digital input 23	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-8	Digital input 24	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank C)
J12-9	Common C	Signal return for bank C

Table 40: Connector J13, 24 V/0.5 A Digital Input (Copper Wire) Signals

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J13-1	Digital input 25	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-2	Digital input 26	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-3	Digital input 27	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-4	Digital input 28	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-5	Digital input 29	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-6	Digital input 30	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J13-7	Digital input 31	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-8	Digital input 32	24 V, 0.5 A optically isolated digital input (signal bank D)
J13-9	Common D	Signal return for bank D

Table 41: Connector J14, Breaker Enable, Copper Wire Signals (FK-MCP 1.5/5-ST-3.81)

Con- nector	Signal Name	Input Dis- able Switch	Description
J14-1	Breaker enable 3	S14	When the signal is high, the breaker is enabled. Switch position (1-2) disables the input.
J14-2	Breaker enable 4	S15	When the signal is high, the breaker is enabled. Switch position (1-2) disables the input.
J14-3	Breaker disable 1	S16	When the signal is high, the breaker is disabled. Switch position (1-2) disables the input.
J14-4	Breaker disable 2	S17	When the signal is high, the breaker is disabled. Switch position (1-2) disables the input.
J14-5	Return	–	Return for breaker enable signals

Table 42: Connector J15, 24 V Pull-up

Connector	Signal Name	Description
J15-1	24V	Current limited 24 V pull-up voltage (2 mA)
J15-2	24V	Current limited 24 V pull-up voltage (2 mA)
J15-3	GND	Return for current limited 24 V
J15-4	GND	Return for current limited 24 V

Table 43: Connector X5, Power Supply

Connector	Signal Name	Description
X5-1	24V	24 V positive supply voltage
X5-2	GND	Ground (return for 24 V supply voltage)
X5-3	PE	Protective earth

### 7.15.3 LED Display on the Auxiliary I/O Board

There is a four character LED display on the auxiliary I/O board. The display functions in the same principle as the display on the phase modules, but the shown belt and module information is different. See [6.2.7 LED Display on the Phase Module](#).

**Belt information:** The belt information indicator tells the number of the channel on the control unit to which the auxiliary I/O board is connected, in this case C5 (see [7.8 Optical Fiber Connections](#)).

The belt information indicator is of type: [ ] [ ] [C] [5].

- The first two digits are empty.
- The last two digits show the number of the channel.

**Module information:** The module information indicator tells the identification number of the auxiliary I/O board. The number of the first installed board is 14, the second is 15, and so on.

The module information indicator is of type: [PowerID N\_] [PowerID \_N] [ ] [ ].

- The first two digits show the ID of the auxiliary I/O board.
- The last two digits are empty.

#### 7.15.4 Breaker Enable Signals

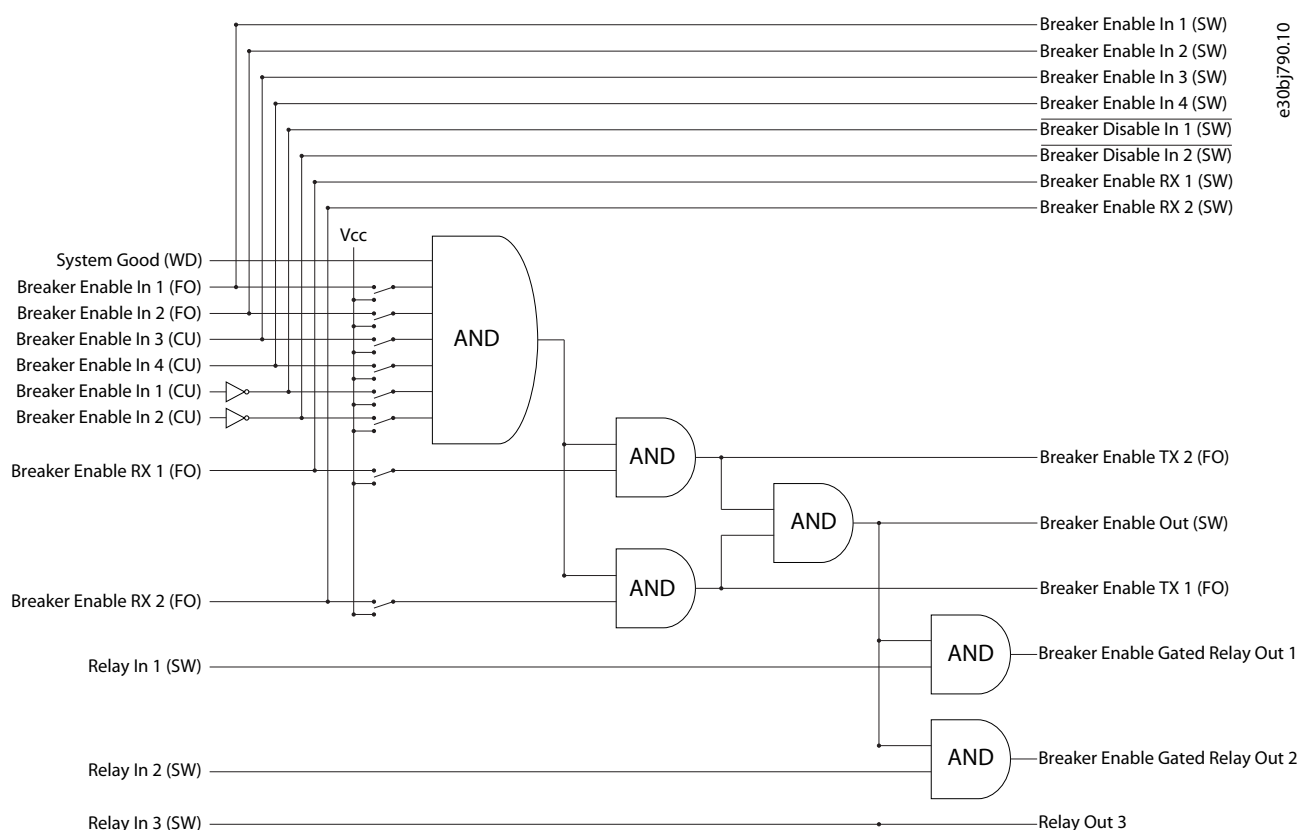
The Breaker Enable signal requires several lower level feedback signals to be OK. Only then it allows closing the MV switchgear that supplies MV input power to the drive (or conversely, opens the MV switchgear to cut the MV supply power).

See the locations of the connectors in [7.15.1 Connector Locations](#).

The Breaker Enable signal descriptions:

- Breaker Enable optical fiber signals, see [Table 30](#)
- External Breaker Enable optical fiber inputs/outputs, see [Table 31](#)
- Breaker Enable copper wire signals, see [Table 41](#)

### 7.15.5 Breaker Enable Logic



### Illustration 94: Flowchart Diagram of the Breaker Enable Function

The signals in the flowchart correspond to the following signals on the Auxiliary I/O board:

- Breaker Enable Input 1 and 2 (FO) correspond to H12 and H13 (optical fiber signals).
- Breaker Enable Input 3 and 4 (CU) correspond to J14-1 and J14-2 (copper wire).
- Breaker Disable Inputs 1 and 2 (CU) correspond to J14-3 and J14-4.
- Breaker Enable TX 1 and 2 (FO) correspond to H12 and H13.
- All signals with (SW) denote internal software.

All the input signals of the 7 input AND gate are not necessarily used. Bypass the inputs which are not used by setting their input disable switches (S1, S6, S11–S17) to disable, which forces a logical 1 to the input of the AND gate.

The positions on the input disable switches are:

- 1 = Off/Bypass
- 2 = On/Enable

Downstream of the 7 input AND gate are two 2-input AND gates that correspond to the external breaker enable function. Breaker Enable RX1 and RX2 are disabled/bypassed in any single auxiliary I/O board system setup (S1 and S6 set to bypass). Breaker Enable TX1 (H12) or TX2 (H13) is used as the final "Breaker Enable OK" signal that goes to the breaker enable FO port (either H23 or H24) on the control unit. When "healthy", the green LED to the right of the optical fiber is lit.

Notice that the breaker enable switch setting is reversed on the control unit. The ON position means that the signal is bypassed.

### 7.15.6 Breaker Enable Mapping Examples

#### 12-pulse drives

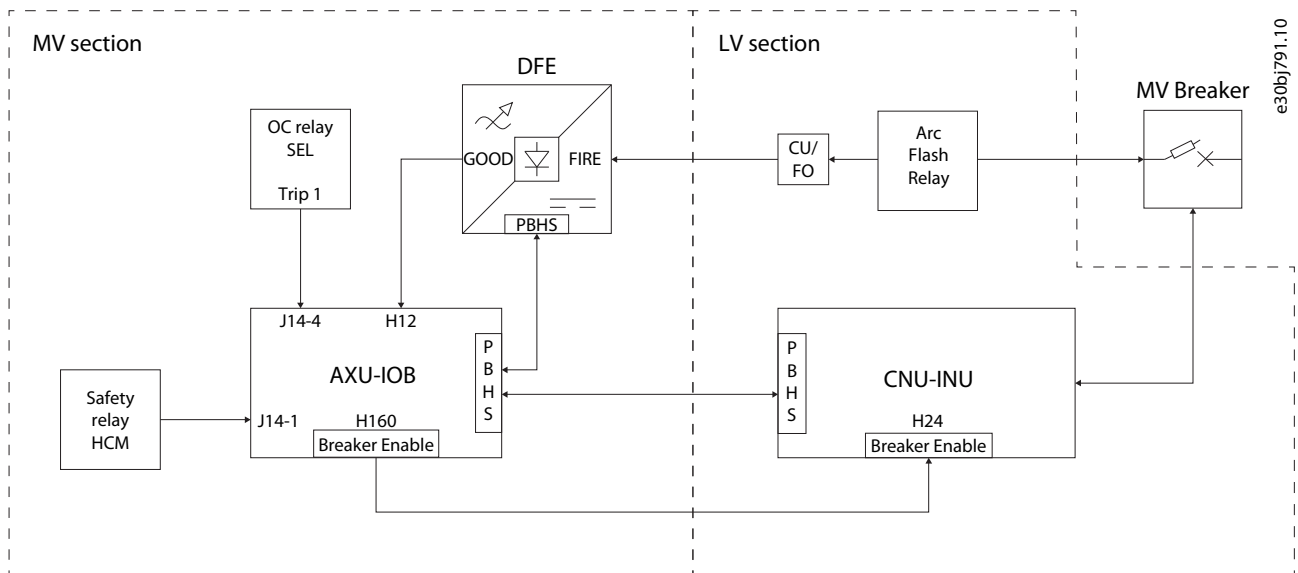


Illustration 95: Breaker Enable Mapping in 12-pulse Drives

Table 44: Breaker Enable Mapping in 12-pulse Drives

Connector	Description
J14-1	HCM feedback
J14-2	Not used (set in bypass)
J14-3	Not used (set in bypass)
J14-4	SEL trip relay
H12	CLB "Good" feedback
H13	Not used (set in bypass)
H160	Feedback to INU control unit breaker enable (H24)
H161	Not used (set in bypass)
H23	Not used (set in bypass)
H24	Set (S1 switch on) to receive breaker enable from auxiliary I/O board (H160)

In this setup 3 signals are required for Breaker Enable to achieve the ready state. These 3 signals need to be "healthy" in order to send a logical 1. Healthy conditions for the 3 signals are as follows:

- HCM board detects voltage below trip threshold (can be set between 25–48 V DC).
- SEL relay is not tripped (caused by overcurrent on motor).
- Crowbar Logic Board is "good" (not in undervoltage, overvoltage, triggered, or voltage imbalance state).

## AFE drives with UFES

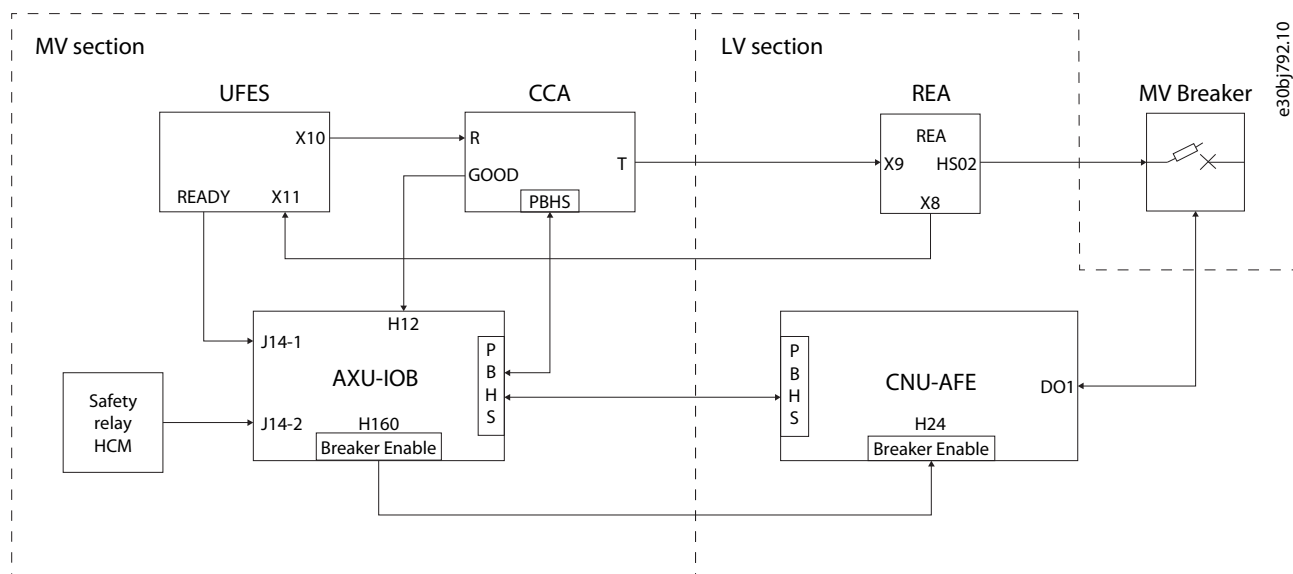


Illustration 96: Breaker Enable Mapping in AFE Drives with UFES

Table 45: Breaker Enable Mapping in AFE Drives with UFES

Connector	Description
J14-1	UFES ready
J14-2	HCM feedback
J14-3	Not used (set in bypass)
J14-4	Not used (set in bypass)
H12	CLB "Good" feedback
H13	Not used (set in bypass)
H160	Feedback to AFE control unit breaker enable (H24)
H161	Not used (set in bypass)
H23	Not used (set in bypass)
H24	Set (S1 switch on) to receive breaker enable from auxiliary I/O board (H160)

In this setup, HCM has the same function. UFES Ready depends on the OK signal from arc flash detection. CCA is healthy as long as the DC link has not experienced a major dU/dt event (sudden dip or spike in voltage) that would likely precede an arc flash.



## AFE drives without UFES

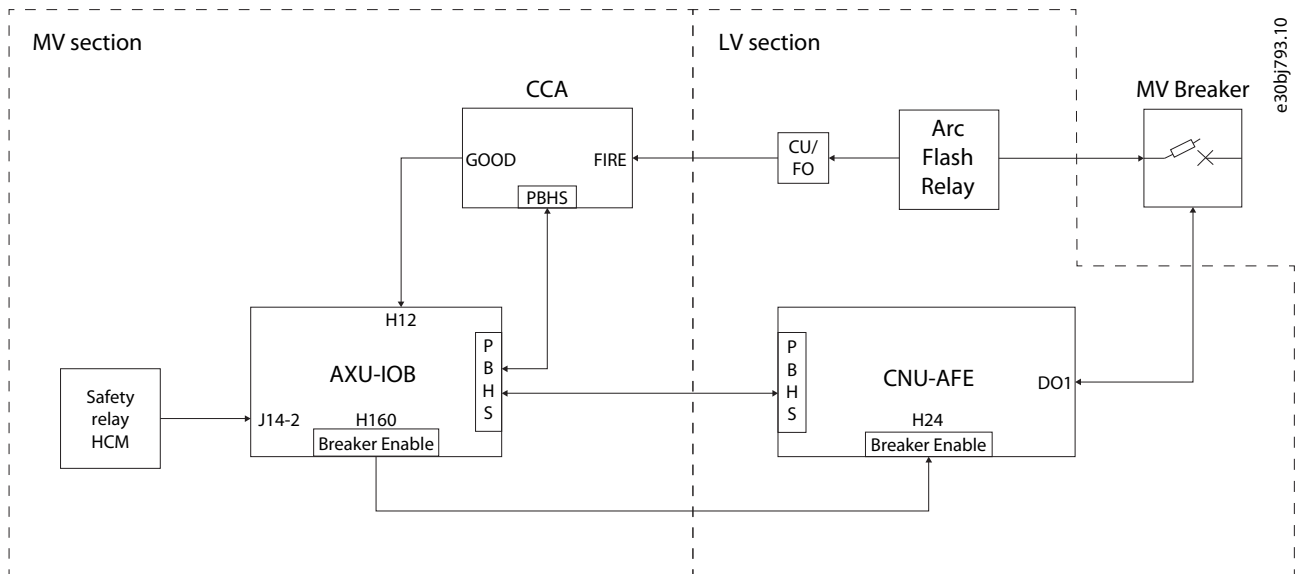


Illustration 97: Breaker Enable Mapping in AFE Drives without UFES

Table 46: Breaker Enable Mapping in AFE Drives without UFES

Connector	Description
J14-1	Not used (set in bypass)
J14-2	HCM feedback
J14-3	Not used (set in bypass)
J14-4	Not used (set in bypass)
H12	CLB "Good" feedback
H13	Not used (set in bypass)
H160	Feedback to AFE control unit breaker enable (H24)
H161	Not used (set in bypass)
H23	Not used (set in bypass)
H24	Set (S1 switch on) to receive breaker enable from auxiliary I/O board (H160)

In this setup, there is one less feedback (no UFES) to monitor.

Table 47: Device Descriptions

Device Acronym	Full Name	Function
CCA	Crowbar control assembly	Clamps DC-link voltage when potential arc flash conditions are detected (in AFE drives).
CLB	Crowbar logic board	Clamps DC-link voltage during arc flash event to mitigate damage in drive cabinet (in 12-pulse drives).

Device Acronym	Full Name	Function
HCM	Heat sink capacitance monitor	Detect voltage between INU/AFE module heat sinks and earth ground. Trips at 48 V DC.
SEL	Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories	Monitors output current and sends trip signal when overcurrent is detected.
UFES	Ultra fast earthing switch	Shorts MV supply voltage to earth ground when triggered.

## 7.16 HCM Board

### 7.16.1 Connector Locations

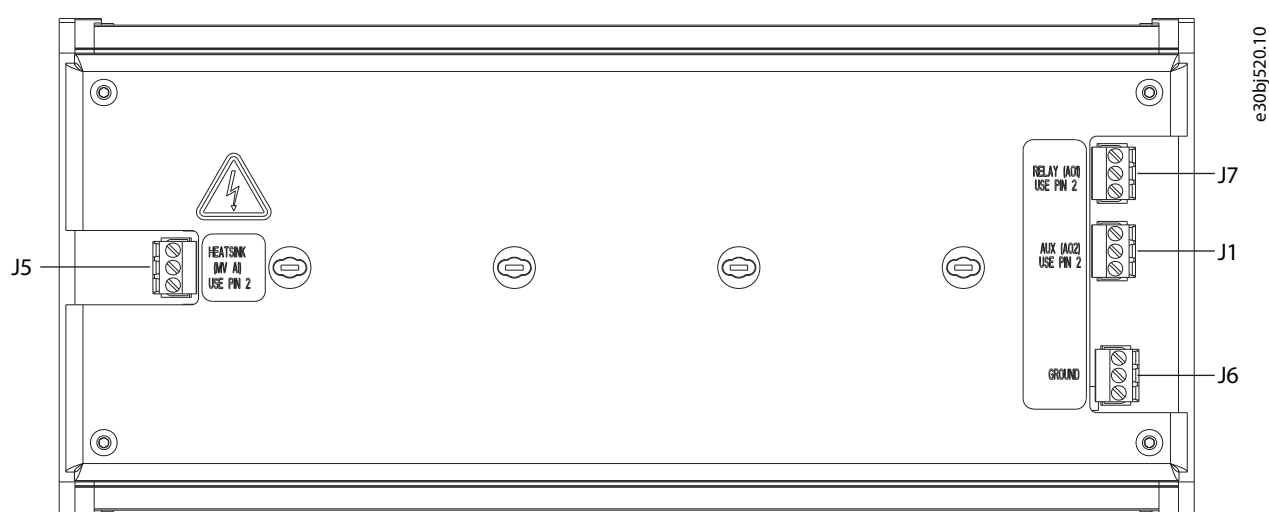


Illustration 98: Connectors on the HCM Board

J1	Aux (AO2)	J6	Ground
J5	Heat sink (MV AI)	J7	Relay (AO1)

### 7.16.2 Installation

The HCM board is only included in VACON® 3000 Drive Kits with option code +GAUL.

The HCM board can be mounted on a DIN 35 rail.

Install an external overvoltage relay with the HCM board. The recommended relay type is RM22UA33MR from Schneider Electric. Use these settings for the relay:

- Operating mode = >U, no memory
- Voltage threshold setting (U value) = 10%
- Hysteresis/Window mode (Hys/>U) = 5%
- Time delay (Tt) = 0.1

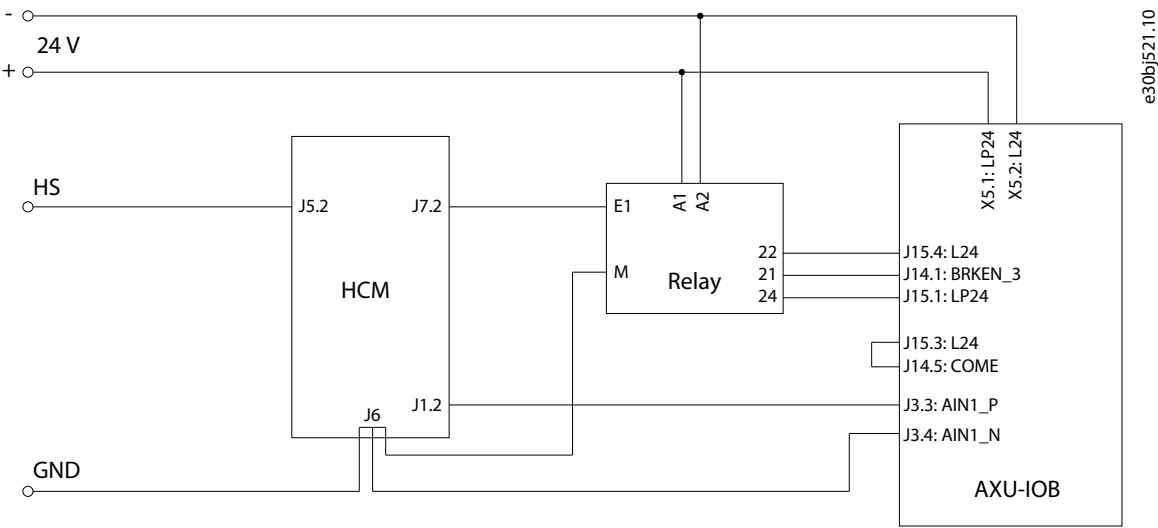


Illustration 99: HCM Board Wiring Diagram

24 V	24 V supply	HS	Phase module heat sinks
GND	Ground		

## 8 Commissioning

### 8.1 Safety Checks before Starting the Commissioning

Before starting the commissioning, read these warnings.

#### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

##### SHOCK HAZARD FROM POWER UNIT COMPONENTS

The power unit components are live when the drive is connected to mains. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Do not touch the components of the power unit when the drive is connected to mains. Before connecting the drive to mains, make sure that the covers of the drive are closed.

#### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

##### SHOCK HAZARD FROM TERMINALS

The motor terminals U, V, W, the brake resistor terminals, or the DC terminals are live when the drive is connected to mains, also when the motor does not operate. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Do not touch the motor terminals U, V, W, the brake resistor terminals, or the DC terminals when the drive is connected to mains. Before connecting the drive to mains, make sure that the covers of the drive are closed.

#### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

##### SHOCK HAZARD FROM DC LINK OR EXTERNAL SOURCE

The terminal connections and the components of the drive can be live several minutes after the drive is disconnected from the mains and the motor has stopped. The load side of the drive can also generate voltage. A contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Disconnect the drive from the mains and make sure that the motor has stopped.  
Disconnect the motor.  
Lock out and tag out the power source to the drive.  
Make sure that no external source generates unintended voltage during work.  
To ground the drive input and DC link, close the grounding switch. If there is no grounding switch, make sure that the drive input and DC link are grounded for work. Also ground the motor terminals for work.  
Wait for the DC-link capacitors to discharge fully before opening the cabinet door or the cover of the AC drive. The discharge time is <7 minutes for AFE drives and <21 minutes for 12-pulse drives.  
Use a measuring device to make sure that there is no voltage.

### 8.2 Commissioning the Drive

Before starting the commissioning, read the warnings and safety instructions in this manual.

- Fill in the basic information about the job and the motor nameplate data.
- Go through each item in the commissioning checklists.
  - Before power-up.
  - Control and auxiliary power commissioning.
  - Medium-voltage power commissioning.
- Write down any findings or measured values in the comment fields.
- Once each task is completed, mark the completion date and the name of the responsible employee.

#### 8.2.1 Basic Job Information

Table 48: Basic Job Information

Customer		Country	
Project number		Location	

Start date (mm/dd/yy)		Customer ID	
End date (mm/dd/yy)		Drive serial number	
Company personnel		Drive type code	
End customer		Application	

Table 49: Motor Nameplate Data

Motor Nominal Voltage (V AC)	
Motor Nominal Frequency (Hz)	
Motor Nominal Speed (RPM)	
Motor Nominal Current (A AC)	
Motor Power Factor (0–1)	
Motor Nominal Power (kW)	
Transformer Specifications (MVA, Secondary V RMS, %Z)	

## 8.2.2 Before Power-up Checklist

Table 50: Checklist of Commissioning Tasks to Do Before Power-up

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
Confirm that the ambient conditions are within the specification. See <a href="#">11.3.6 Cooling</a> .			
Perform system lockout/tagout and grounding of the drive according to specific customer installation procedure.			
Make sure that the mains and motor cables are selected according to the requirements. See <a href="#">6.1.4 Mains and Motor Cable Selection</a> .			
Make sure that the MV input/supply cables are connected according to the system schematic and are properly torqued.			
Make sure that the output/motor cables are connected according to the system schematic and are properly torqued.			
Confirm that a wire check of the MV input and output cables has been completed.			
Confirm the proper grounding of the MV cable shields, motor, transformer, and drive cabinet. See <a href="#">6.1.6 Grounding</a> .			
Per local electrical codes, verify that the MV drive cabinet is grounded to the earth ground of the facility.			
Confirm that the drive cabinet ground busbars are connected in all sections. See <a href="#">6.1.6 Grounding</a> .			

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
<p>Check the resistances of the grounding connections. Measure both polarities.</p> <p>Resistances to check:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Control system grounding</li> <li>System safety grounding</li> <li>Cabinet support</li> <li>External housing of the cooling fans</li> <li>Door locks/handles</li> </ul> <p>The resistances should be approximately <math>\leq 0.5 \Omega</math>.</p>			
Confirm that the MV input and output cables have been insulation tested according to local regulations.			
Confirm that there are no power factor correction capacitors connected to the motor cable.			
<p>Make sure that the optical fiber cables are selected according to the requirements.</p> <p>See <a href="#">7.8.1 Selection of Optical Fiber Cables</a>.</p>			
Check that the optical fiber cables are in good condition and the routing is done in a way that does not damage the cables. For example, make sure that the maximum bending radius of the cables (25 mm/1 in) is not exceeded.			
<p><b>AFE drive systems</b></p> <p>Make sure that the phase modules (INU/AFE) are installed correctly:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cabling/busbars are properly torqued.</li> <li>Fiber optic wires are connected in correct order.</li> <li>24 V DC plug is connected.</li> </ul>			
<p><b>12/24-pulse drive systems</b></p> <p>Make sure that the phase modules (INU) and DFE module are installed correctly:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cabling/busbars properly are torqued.</li> <li>Fiber optic wires are connected in correct order.</li> <li>24 V DC plug is connected.</li> </ul>			
<p><b>12/24-pulse drive systems</b></p> <p>Make sure that the DC-link capacitors for DFE are installed correctly:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cabling/busbars are properly torqued.</li> <li>Overpressure switch is connected to control.</li> </ul>			
Confirm that there is a minimum of 76 mm (3.0 in) from an exposed MV terminal to ground.			
Confirm that there is a minimum of 34 mm (1.35 in) from an exposed MV terminal to opposite polarity.			

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
Check that the main circuit wiring has correct clearance to ground and no insulated MV cabling (SIWO-KUL) is in contact with opposite phases or the drive enclosure.			
Verify that the INU/AFE phase modules and DFE power module are connected to the correct corresponding input/output busbar terminals (U -> U, L1 -> L1, and so on). See <a href="#">6.2 Cabling of the Power Modules</a> .			
Check that all cooling hoses are connected from the manifold to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phase modules</li> <li>• DFE module</li> <li>• Inductor heat exchangers</li> <li>• Output filter (if installed)</li> </ul> See <a href="#">5.5.4.3 Cooling System Installation</a> .			
Make sure that the MV drive cooling system has been filled and pressurized with no leaks. See the specifications in <a href="#">11.3.6 Cooling</a> . See the instructions in <a href="#">8.3.1 Filling the Liquid Cooling System</a> .			
If applicable, make sure that all cooling valves are opened.			
Make sure that the single-phase control power cables (120/240 V) are connected according to the system schematic in a separate conduit from the MV cabling.			
Make sure that the auxiliary (400–480 V AC) power cables are connected according to the system schematic in a separate conduit from the MV cabling.			
Torque all control and auxiliary input power cables after they are connected. See <a href="#">7.4 Control Unit Cabling</a> and <a href="#">6.5.10 Auxiliary Power Supply Installation</a> .			
Confirm that the pre-charge voltage selection board that is installed matches the supplied auxiliary voltage level. See <a href="#">6.5.8.2 Pre-Charge Unit Installation</a> .			
Connect the required customer communication cables and I/O including main breaker control to the MV drive. See the customer drive schematic.			
<b>AFE drive systems</b> Verify the proper setup of grid voltage feedback. See <a href="#">8.3.2 Grid Voltage Feedback Configuration</a> .			
<b>AFE drive systems</b> Verify that the PT and TVS fuses are in working condition.			

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
Confirm that the customer cooling connection is made to the drive cabinet heat exchanger.			
Make sure that the temperature of the liquid in the secondary circuit is at least 5 °C below the temperature level in the primary cooling circuit of the MV drive. The absolute maximum for the secondary circuit liquid temperature is 38 °C. See <a href="#">5.5.3.4 Temperature of the Cooling Liquid</a> .			
Make sure that the flow rate of the customer cooling is greater than or equal to the required flow of the MV Drive. See <a href="#">11.3.6 Cooling</a> .			
Confirm that the unit is clean and free from any foreign objects (such as nuts, washers, bolts, tools, metal shavings).			
Confirm that there is no condensation inside the drive. See <a href="#">5.5.3.5 Condensation</a> .			

## 8.2.3 Control and Auxiliary Power Commissioning Checklist

Table 51: Checklist of Control and Auxiliary Power Commissioning Tasks

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
Remove the control and auxiliary power lockout/tagout so that these LV supplies can be energized.			
Apply 120/240 V single-phase control power. Verify that the voltages are within specification. Record the measurement.	Control voltage: _____ V AC		
Apply 400–480 V AC three-phase power. Verify that the voltages are within specification. Record the measurement.	Auxiliary voltage: _____ V AC		
Verify that the INU/AFE (if applicable), and HX control units are powered on and communicating.			
If required, install software to the AFE/INU/BCU control units. See <a href="#">8.3.3 Installing Software on the Control Unit</a> . Record the software revision details.	System software revision: _____ Application: _____		
Verify that all the power module LED displays show the correct phase and belt information. See <a href="#">8.3.4 Verifying the Phase Module Connections</a> . Correct the fiber optic cable sequence if necessary.			
Operate the cooling system manually.	Flow rate: _____ l/min Static pressure:		



Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If needed, purge air from the system.</li> <li>Check for leaks.</li> <li>Check the liquid temperature.</li> <li>Check the flow rate.</li> </ul> See the cooling specification details in <a href="#">11.3.6 Cooling</a> .	_____ bar (psi)		
Test the customer I/O signals. Verify that the external customer interlocks operate as intended.			
Make sure that the digital input ground is connected to the digital system ground when floating, or to the control terminal ground. See <a href="#">7.5.2 Isolation of the Digital Inputs from Ground</a> .			
Perform the commissioning test. See <a href="#">8.3.5 Commissioning Test</a> .			

## 8.2.4 Medium-Voltage Power Commissioning Checklist

Table 52: Checklist of Medium-Voltage Power Commissioning Tasks

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
Remove the main power lockout/tagout, so that the main power can be applied.			
<b>AFE drive systems</b> Perform the AFE synchronization test and tuning. See <a href="#">8.3.6 AFE Synchronization Test</a> .			
<b>12/24-pulse drive systems</b> Issue the start command to the drive, therefore energizing the DC link through the 12/24-pulse input.			
Verify the charging of the DC link to the rated level in an acceptable time (below the value programmed for the DC-link timeout: ≤60 s)	Pre-charge time: _____ s Discharge time: _____ s		
Confirm that the INU control unit is giving the "Online and ready" signal.			
Check that the motor parameters have been set in the INU control unit.			
Perform the Motor ID Run (P3.1.2.8.1) with or without rotation. For details, see the VACON® 3000 Application Guide.			
If applicable, make sure that the encoder is connected and configured properly. See <a href="#">8.3.7 Encoder Setup</a> .			

Item	Comments	Date completed (mm/dd/yy)	Employee
To verify correct rotation, operate the motor (with the load uncoupled).			
Operate the motor (with the load uncoupled) and incrementally increase the output up to the maximum rated frequency.			
Operate the motor under load. Verify the operation up to full load.			
Tune the control parameters as necessary to achieve the required operational specifications of the application.			

## 8.3 Commissioning Procedures

### 8.3.1 Filling the Liquid Cooling System

Before operating a drive, the cooling system must be filled, pressurized, and purged of air. For this procedure, it is assumed that the system is empty of coolant and must be filled. Under normal situations, the system has already been tested before shipping out and typically has some fluid.

Note:

- Accessibility to certain components of the cooling system can be an issue depending on the layout of the drive and/or the heat exchanger unit.
- This guide is not intended to be used as a reference for commissioning cooling systems which are not installed in a VACON® 3000 drive.

1. To access the inlet and outlet cooling manifolds, locate the cabinet in which the cooling system is installed.

The location of the manifolds varies depending on the internal layout of the cabinet. Sometimes there might not be access to install quick disconnects to the manifolds. In these cases, it is necessary to connect straight to one of the hoses on the power module instead of the manifold.

2. Connect the cooling fluid pump assembly to the inlet and outlet manifolds with quick connects (if available). Open the valves.
3. Before filling the system with glycol, verify that all cooling hoses throughout the system are firmly connected and/or torqued. Make certain that any hoses with valves connected to a module have their valves in the open position.
4. Make sure that the automatic air purger on the main heat exchanger is uncapped and its valve is open.

The location of the air purger varies depending on the cabinet and heat exchanger design.

5. Begin running the standalone pump and fill the system. Water should be flowing into the inlet while a combination of water and air pockets/bubbles are flowing out from the outlet. If any leak is detected, immediately shut off the pump.

The power of the pump and size of the cooling system dictates the flow rate and how quickly the air can be purged from the system. Use an appropriately sized pump. A pump of at least 0.5 hp or greater is ideal.

6. When air bubbles/pockets flowing out of the outlet hose are no longer visible, stop the pump.
7. Close the inlet and outlet valves.
8. Slowly open the air bleeders on the pumps. Air bubbles out. When the bubbling starts becoming only fluid seeping out, close off the bolts to seal the pumps.
9. Open the inlet and outlet valves and start to run the standalone pump from the glycol tank again.
  - a. Run the pump for at least 5 minutes before shutting off.
  - b. Close the inlet and outlet valves.
  - c. Repeat step 8. There should be fewer air bubbles this time around.
  - d. Move to step 10.
10. Pressurize the system.
  - a. Open the inlet valve.

- b. Activate the standalone glycol pump.
  - c. Wait for the pressure to build up to approximately 1.2 bar.
  - d. Close the inlet valve and turn off the pump.
- 11. Run the heat exchanger.
  - a. Verify that the HX is in ready state.
  - b. Run the pump for about 5 minutes.
- 12. Wait ~2 minutes after stopping. Briefly open and close the outlet valve. More air bubbles should come out. Repeat this several times until the pressure is no longer enough to force out any more air pockets.



Illustration 100: Removing the Air

- 13. Run the standalone pump again.
  - a. Open the inlet valve.
  - b. Start to operate the standalone pump and open the outlet valve.
  - c. Repeat steps 10–12.
  - d. After the 2nd cycle, the number of air pockets that are purged should be reduced.
  - e. Repeat the cycle until there are only few small air bubbles remaining. It is not possible to eliminate all the air bubbles.
- 14. When the air has been purged, pressurize the system to 1.2 bar with the standalone pump again.
- 15. Check the fluid level gauge.
  - If the fluid level is above the nominal line: To release excess fluid back into the glycol tank, open the outlet valve. The pressure drops from the 1.2 bar. If the fluid level is still above the “nominal” line after the pressure drops to 0, add air to the “air filling” tank until the fluid level drops to the “nominal” marker.
  - If the fluid level is below the nominal line: Bleed air out of the tank by pressing the pin on the nozzle. The fluid level on the gauge climbs while the pressure decreases from 1.2 bar. Operate the standalone pump and repressurize. The goal is to be at or slightly above the nominal marker while having 1.2 bar of pressure.

### 8.3.2 Grid Voltage Feedback Configuration

Grid voltage feedback is a critical component of AFE drives. It must be correctly connected and configured for an AFE drive to be able to properly synchronize with the MV input supply voltage of the drive.

Grid voltage feedback is also necessary to perform the commissioning test. For the commissioning test to be done safely, it must be able to detect whether there is mains power applied to the drive (that it is not powered).

1. Locate the grid voltage feedback connector on the AFE control unit. It is located next to the FO1–FO6 fiber optic slots.

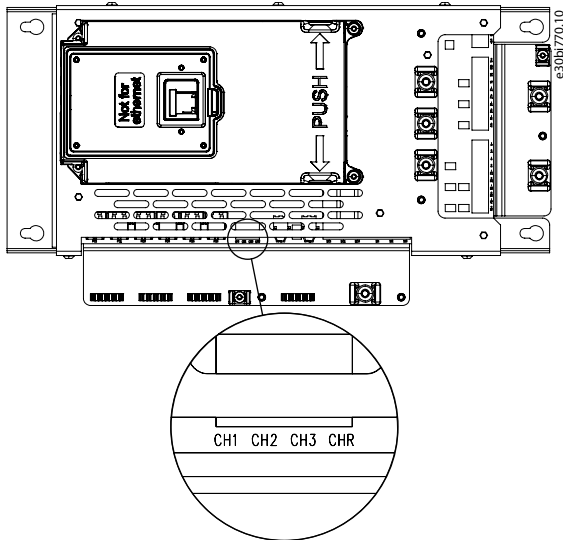


Illustration 101: Grid Voltage Feedback Connector on the AFE Control Unit

2. Identify the type of potential transformer that is connected from the MV supply to the drive. The feedback configuration is either Wye or Delta.
3. Connect the grid voltage feedback to the AFE control unit based on the PT type.

- **If the PT is WYE configured:**

Connect phase A to CH1.

Connect phase B to CH2.

Connect phase C to CH3.

Connect the reference to CHR.

Go to the 2.1.1 Line Configuration menu and do these parameter settings:

Grid Voltage FBK Ch A: AN phase voltage

Grid Voltage FBK Ch B: BN phase voltage

Grid Voltage FBK Ch C: CN phase voltage

- **If the PT is Delta configured:**

Connect phase A to CH1.

Connect phase B to CHR.

Connect phase C to CH3.

Leave CH2 empty.

Go to the 3.1.1 Line Configuration menu and do these parameter settings:

Grid Voltage FBK Ch A: AB line voltage

Grid Voltage FBK Ch B: Ground/reference

Grid Voltage FBK Ch C: CB line voltage

4. Set the other parameters in the 3.1.1 Line Configuration menu.

- a. Nominal Grid Voltage/Frequency: Set to the rated input voltage/frequency of the drive.
- b. Grid Voltage FBK Mode: Set to "Source Voltage".
-

- c. Grid Voltage FBK Scale: Set based on the expected voltage on the PT secondary. For example, a 35:1 PT ratio at 4160 V equals  $\approx 118.8$  V secondary voltage.
- d. Filter Topology: Set to "LCL".
- e. Regen Filter Select: Select based on the type of phase modules used in the drive.

For example, L20.4, where L20 is the phase module size (L20 or L30) and 4 stands for the input voltage (3=3300 V and 4=4160 V).

- f. Special Filter Index: Set to 21000.

### 8.3.3 Installing Software on the Control Unit

To install the software, each control unit must be connected to separately. After finishing one software installation, disconnect the cable and move it to the next control unit. Make sure that the correct control unit (AFE/INU/BCU) is connected to the PC.

Items required for the software installation:

- RS485 to USB cable.
- PC or laptop.
- The VACON® Live PC tool.

Download VACON® Live from .

1. Verify that the control unit is powered (the screen on the control panel is on).
2. Verify that the indicator light on the control unit is green (there are no faults).
  - If the indicator light is green, skip to step #3.
  - If the indicator light is red, check the number of the fault. If the fault code is 59 (communication fault), one or more of the power modules is likely disconnected.

Before opening the cover of the power module section to check the connections, verify that medium voltage is locked out.

Check the modules and verify that the fiber optic cables and the 24 V DC supply are properly connected.

Verify that all the indicator lights are lit on each of the modules.

When the communication fault is cleared, continue to the next step.

If there are still issues with the fault, refer to \*INU and AFE phasing\* procedure for troubleshooting.

3. To access the RS485 port, remove the control panel from the control unit.
4. Connect the RS485 end of the cable to the port on the control unit and the USB end to a PC.
5. Open the VACON® Live PC tool. When prompted for startup mode, select *Online*.
6. After VACON® Live completes searching for connected drives, select the drive, and click *Connect to Selected*.

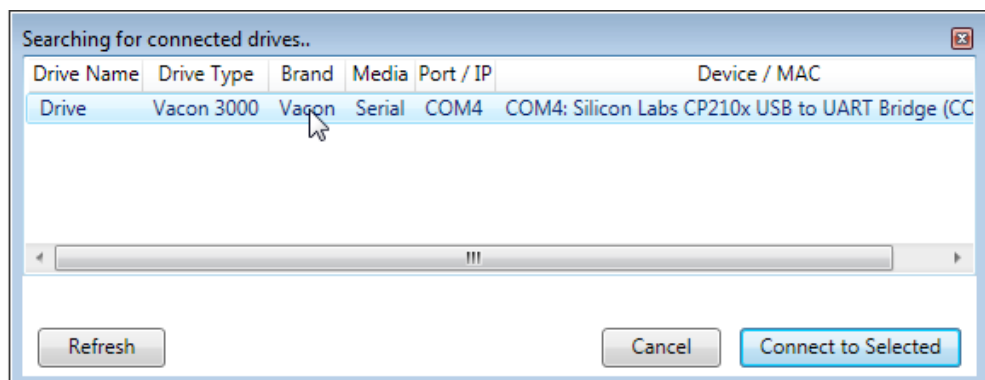


Illustration 102: Connecting to the Drive with VACON® Live

7. After VACON® Live opens, save the current parameter settings.
  - a. Open the *File* menu and select *Save file as...*
  - b. Select an appropriate file name (for example, customer name\_drive identity\_date).
  - c. Save the file into a folder/location that coincides with the contents of the file.

8. Obtain an up-to-date software build directly from the Danfoss server or request one from the Danfoss software team.

The software build is a file with a ".vcx" extension.

9. Click this file, and VACON® Loader opens automatically. If VACON® Live is still open, you are prompted to close it.
10. Click *Next* to begin.
11. The same procedure as in VACON® Live for connecting to the drive occurs (step 6). After searching for connected drives is completed, select the drive, and click *Connect to Selected*.
12. Select the appropriate modules to be installed. The modules selected vary depending on the control unit and the drive type.

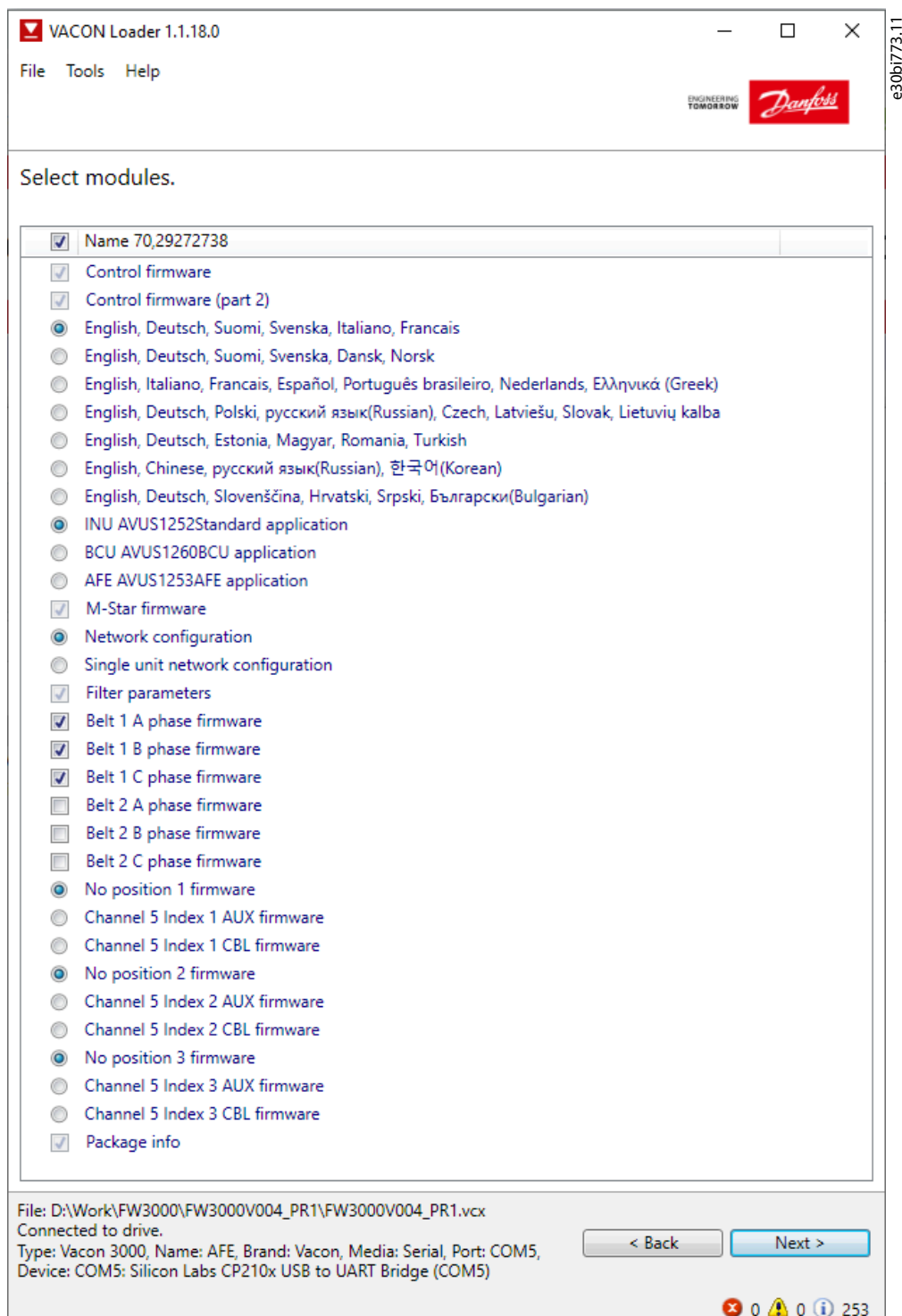


Illustration 103: Selecting the Modules to Install in VACON® Loader

**- Modules to install for AFE control unit in AFE drive**

- Control firmware
- Control firmware (part2)
- Select appropriate language
- AFE AVUS1253AFE application
- M-star firmware
- Network configuration
- Filter parameters
- Belt 1 A phase firmware
- Belt 1 B phase firmware
- Belt 1 C phase firmware

If the AFE drive has a parallel module configuration, also select the following modules:

- Belt 2 A phase firmware
- Belt 2 B phase firmware
- Belt 2 C phase firmware

If the AFE drive has an Auxiliary I/O board, select the following modules:

- Channel 5 Index 1 AUX firmware
- No position 2 firmware
- No position 3 firmware

If the AFE drive has no Auxiliary I/O board, select the following modules:

- No position 1 firmware
- No position 2 firmware
- No position 3 firmware

**- Modules to install for INU control unit in AFE drive**

- Control firmware
- Control firmware (part2)
- Select appropriate language
- INU AVUS1252INU application
- M-star firmware
- Network configuration
- Filter parameters
- Belt 1 A phase firmware
- Belt 1 B phase firmware
- Belt 1 C phase firmware

If the drive has a parallel module configuration, select the following modules:

- Belt 2 A phase firmware
- Belt 2 B phase firmware
- Belt 2 C phase firmware

For the INU control unit of an AFE drive, there are no Auxiliary I/O board settings since the Auxiliary I/O board is already connected to the AFE control unit. Select the modules:

- No position 1 firmware
- No position 2 firmware
- No position 3 firmware

**- Modules to install for INU control unit in 12-pulse drive**

- Control firmware

Control firmware (part2)  
 Select appropriate language  
 INU AVUS1252INU application  
 M-star firmware  
 Network configuration  
 Filter parameters  
 Belt 1 A phase firmware  
 Belt 1 B phase firmware  
 Belt 1 C phase firmware

If the drive has a parallel module configuration, select the following modules:

Belt 2 A phase firmware  
 Belt 2 B phase firmware  
 Belt 2 C phase firmware

If the 12-pulse drive has an Auxiliary I/O board, select the following modules:

Channel 5 Index 1 AUX firmware  
 No position 2 firmware  
 No position 3 firmware

Also select the following modules:

Channel 5 Index 1 CBL firmware  
 No position 2 firmware  
 No position 3 firmware

- **Modules to install for CBU control unit in 12-pulse drive (optional)**

Control firmware  
 Control firmware (part2)  
 Select appropriate language  
 BCU AVUS1260BCU application  
 Single unit network configuration  
 Belt 1 A phase firmware

13. When the appropriate modules are selected, click *Next* to begin the installation.

The loading time takes upwards of 30 minutes to complete depending on how many modules are loaded.

14. After the loading is completed, click *Yes* to close VACON® Loader.

15. If the loading fails to reach 100% completion and stops, try again starting from step 8. Before attempting to reinstall:

- a. Check that the core board is fully seated on the auxiliary I/O board.
- b. Check that the fiber cable from the auxiliary I/O board to the appropriate control unit is connected in the correct ports at both ends.

16. After the software loading is completed, perform a parameter compare between the new parameter set and the parameter settings saved in step 7.

See the instructions for comparing the parameters in the VACON® 3000 Application Guides.

### 8.3.4 Verifying the Phase Module Connections

Before running the drive for the first time, verify the phasing of the INU and/or AFE modules. The verification is done both physically (cabling, busbars) and electrically (identified with 24 V DC control power and fiber optic communication cables).

1. Obtain a copy of the mechanical drawings of the drive and identify the locations of the phase modules.
2. Perform a continuity check of the phase module terminal connections.

-



- a. For INU modules, check the continuity of the connections from the output on the phase module to its corresponding output busbar terminal.
  - b. For AFE modules, check the continuity of the connections from the output to the L1, L2, L3 busbars where the main input supply voltage cables are mounted.
  - c. For dual-belt drives, do the same for the other belt.
- 3. Verify, that the fiber optic cables are connected properly between the control units and phase modules.

The fiber from the FO1 slot on the control unit connects to the fiber connector A on either the INU U-phase module or the AFE L1-phase module. The control unit automatically designates the phase module connected to FO1 as a U-phase module (if INU control unit) or L1-phase module (if AFE control unit).

See [7.8 Optical Fiber Connections](#).

- 4. For the remaining module-to-module connections, connect the optical fiber from connector B of the U-phase module to connector A of the next module (which is then designated as V-phase). Then connect the optical fiber from connector B of the V-phase module to connector A of the next module (W-phase). Leave connector B of the last module (W-phase) empty.

The AFE connections are the same, except the designations for the modules are L1, L2, and L3.

- 5. If the connections are correct and control power is applied, then the phase modules show the correct belt and phase information on the 4-character LED displays.

In the operation mode, the LED display view changes at an interval of 3 s. The display changes between the belt information indicator and the module information indicator. See [6.2.7 LED Display on the Phase Module](#).

- INU, belt 1
  - Module 1: \_\_B1 and \_2\_U
  - Module 2: \_\_B1 and \_3\_V
  - Module 3: \_\_B1 and \_4\_W
- INU, belt 2 (if applicable)
  - Module 4: \_\_B2 and \_5\_U
  - Module 5: \_\_B2 and \_6\_V
  - Module 6: \_\_B2 and \_7\_W
- AFE, belt 1
  - Module 1: \_\_B1 and \_2L1
  - Module 2: \_\_B1 and \_3L2
  - Module 3: \_\_B1 and \_4L3
- AFE, belt 2 (if applicable)
  - Module 4: \_\_B2 and \_5L1
  - Module 5: \_\_B2 and \_6L2
  - Module 6: \_\_B2 and \_7L3
- 6. Confirm that the identification on the LED displays matches the correct input or output terminal that the phase module is connected to.

### 8.3.5 Commissioning Test

The commissioning test verifies that the drive can be successfully operated without applying medium voltage to the main power terminals (L1, L2, L3). The purpose of the test is to verify operation of the system interlocks and that the pre-charge circuit can close the contactor that supplies medium voltage to the drive.

- This test does not power up the drive.
- This test does not run if:
  - Medium voltage is detected on the input to the mains contactor.
  - The pre-charge unit has 480 V AC supply power and is connected to the circuit.
- If either of these two conditions is present, the control unit generates a fault.

The following procedures must be completed before performing the commissioning test:

- INU/AFE module installation.
- INU/AFE phasing (see [8.3.4 Verifying the Phase Module Connections](#)).
- Software download (see [8.3.3 Installing Software on the Control Unit](#)).
- Cooling fluid addition (see [8.3.1 Filling the Liquid Cooling System](#)).
- Insulation test of the MV input and output cables.
- Grid voltage feedback configuration (see [8.3.2 Grid Voltage Feedback Configuration](#)).

Remove power from the input to the main supply power contactor or main circuit breaker (MCB).

The drive controls switchgear external to the drive to supply utility voltage to the drive. There is no main circuit breaker internal to the drive that opens/closes the voltage on the supply terminals (L1, L2, L3). The lockout/tagout procedure must be properly performed.

1. To prevent accidental charging of the DC link, open the circuit breaker that supplies 480 V AC to the pre-charge unit.
2. Verify that there was no mistake in the control power wiring and that there is no shock hazard.
  - a. On the INU phase modules, disconnect the 24 V DC connector.
3. Verify that the "breaker enable" DIP switches are in the correct position.

See [6.2.1 Phase Module Terminals](#).

The DIP switches (S1) are on the INU/AFE control unit between fiber optic connectors FR1 and FR2. These two fiber optic inputs are used for the "breaker enable" function. If the DIP switches are in the correct position, a green LED next to the switches is on.

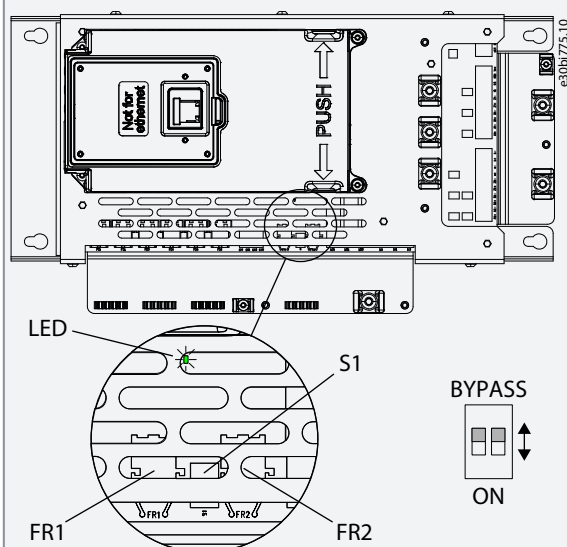


Illustration 104: "Breaker Enable" Connectors, DIP Switches, and LED

- If the "breaker enable" function is not used, the fiber optic connectors are plugged. Check that both DIP switches are in the "bypass" position.

- If one or both of the "breaker enable" inputs are used, then the corresponding DIP switches must be in the "on" position.
4. In VACON® Live, make sure that "PCC Gating Enabled" is checkmarked in the **Precharge Status Word**. If the breaker enable is not properly set, then the commissioning test fails due to failure to receive MX close feedback.

Location of **PreCharge Status Word** in the menu:

- INU application: V2.12.4
- AFE application: V2.10.4

5. Set the **Commissioning test mode** parameter to Enable.

Parameter location in the menu:

- AFE drives: P3.3.5.3
- 12-pulse drives (INU application): P3.17.5.3

6. Perform the commissioning test with the VACON® Live PC tool. See [8.3.5.1 Commissioning Test with VACON® Live](#).

### 8.3.5.1 Commissioning Test with VACON® Live

1. In VACON® Live, go to the *Precharge* monitoring menu. To see if the drive is ready to attempt a commissioning test, check the monitoring values **Precharge State** and **PowerOn State**.

AFE application:

- *Precharge* monitoring menu: M2.10
- **Precharge State** monitoring value: V2.10.1
- **PowerOn State** monitoring value: V2.10.5.1

INU application (12-pulse):

- *Precharge* monitoring menu: M2.12
- **Precharge State** monitoring value: V2.12.1
- **PowerOn State** monitoring value: V2.12.5.1

➡ If either of the two values is not in "ready" state, then an interlock is active and must be resolved before the commissioning test can be attempted. Determine what is missing (which unchecked box must be checked), and check the hardware and/or I/O settings of the device which is failing to give the required feedback.

2. Right-click the **PowerOn State** parameter, select *To Monitoring*, and then *New Monitor*. This value is then used to determine whether the commissioning test is completed successfully.

➡ If **Precharge State** and **PowerOn State** are both "ready", then **PowerOn State** has a value of "3" when viewed with the monitoring function.

3. Give the system a "power on" command.
  - a. Go to the **Internal Control** menu.
  - b. Change the value of parameter **Power Off** to "DigIN Slot0.2".
  - c. Change the value of parameter **Power On** to "DigIN Slot0.2".

AFE application:

- *Internal Control* menu: M3.3.2.2
- **Power Off** parameter: P3.3.2.2.2
- **Power On** parameter: P3.3.2.2.1

INU application (12-pulse):

- *Internal Control* menu: M3.17.2.2
- **Power Off** parameter: P3.17.2.2.2
- **Power On** parameter: P3.17.2.2.1

4. Check that the cooling system starts.
  - a. Check that the drive of the heat exchanger runs and the HX circulates the coolant.
  - b. Check that the **PowerOn State** changes to "4" when the HX starts.
5. Keep monitoring **PowerOn State**. After a while, the system starts to pre-charge the DC link. In reality, there is no voltage being generated in the DC link. The value set in parameter **DC Precharge Timeout** starts to count down. **PowerOn State** shows a value of "5" during the countdown.

The location of the **DC Precharge Timeout** parameter:

- AFE application: P3.3.4.9
- INU application (12-pulse): P3.17.4.9

6. Keep monitoring **PowerOn State**. After the time programmed into **DC Precharge Timeout** elapses, the mains contactor closes, and **PowerOn State** changes states to 6, 7, and 8 in succession.

- State 6 indicates completion of precharge and closing of the mains contactor.
- State 7 indicates opening of the precharge contactor.
- State 8 indicates that the drive is now ready to be issued a start command to operate the motor and that the commissioning test was successful.

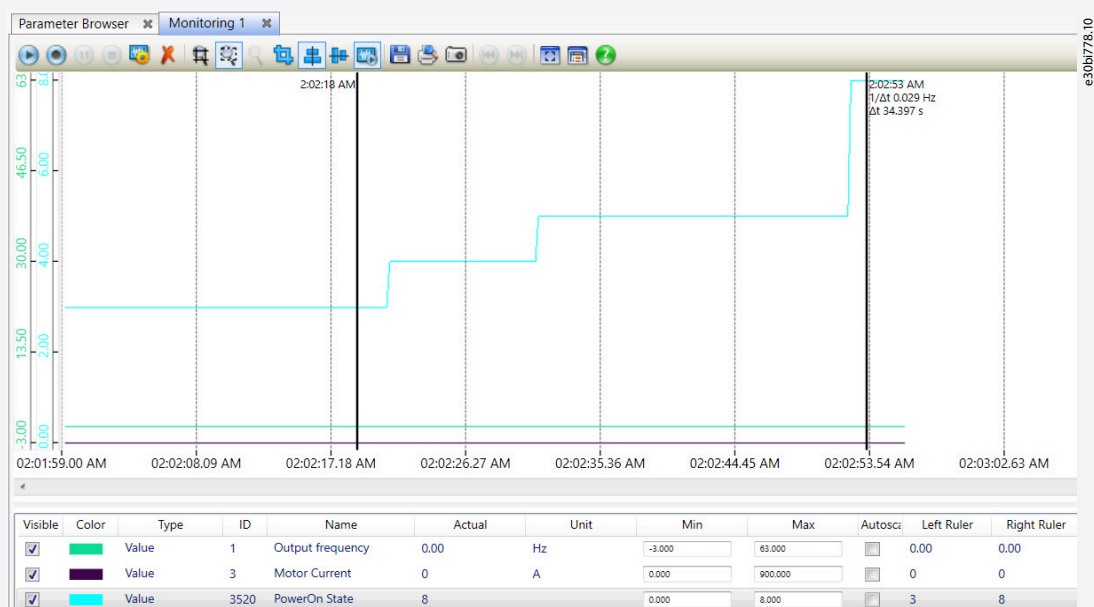


Illustration 105: Monitoring the PowerOn State Parameter

7. After the mains contact has been closed, give the system a "power off" command by changing **Power On** and **Power Off** in the *Internal Control* menu back to "DigIN Slot0.1".
8. Test that the interlocks function correctly and the circuit breaker opens as expected.
  - a. Check that the main circuit breaker cannot be closed manually.
  - b. Give the system a *Power On* command.
  - c. Turn off the cooling, and check that the breaker opens.
  - d. Check that PCC interlock opens the breaker.

- e. Check that other customer interlocks open the breaker.

### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

#### INTERLOCK BYPASS

Bypassed interlocks can lead to safety functions not working properly. This causes a risk of electric shock and damage to the equipment.

- If any interlock is bypassed at some point during installation or commissioning, make sure that it is reconnected afterwards.

9. Set the **Commissioning Test Mode** parameter to Disabled.

## 8.3.6 AFE Synchronization Test

### ⚠ D A N G E R ⚠

#### SHOCK HAZARD DURING TEST

It is necessary to keep the cabinet doors open for this test. Measuring instruments are attached on cabling or busbars which have live medium voltage during the test. Contact with this voltage can lead to death or serious injury.

- Perform proper lock-out and tag-out procedure before the test setup. Stay away from the drive while the test is being performed.

The purpose of this test is to verify that the AFE can properly synchronize to the voltage and phase of the main voltage supply. This test does not apply to 12-pulse (DFE) drives.

Important notes about this test:

- The mains contactor does not close during this test.
- The control unit pre-charges the DC link during this test.
- The performing of this test can conflict with safety regulations. Special allowances to perform this procedure must be discussed before the beginning of commissioning.

Perform the commissioning test before this test. See [8.3.5 Commissioning Test](#).

An oscilloscope is required to record the voltage waveforms on each side of the mains contactor.

1. The main contactor is not housed inside the drive cabinet. Instrumentation must be done in the switchgear cabinet of the end user, which can conflict with the electrical safety regulations of the facility, and access may not be permitted.
- If it is possible to make the instrumentation in the switchgear cabinet, connect the oscilloscope on each side of the mains contactor.

MV supply voltage L1-L2: Connect red probe to L1 and black probe to L2 on the input side of the contactor.

MV supply voltage L2-L3: Connect red probe to L2 and black probe to L3 on the input side of the contactor.

AFE voltage L1-L2: Connect red probe to L1 and black probe to L2 on the output side of the contactor.

AFE voltage L2-L3: Connect red probe to L2 and black probe to L3 on the output side of the contactor.

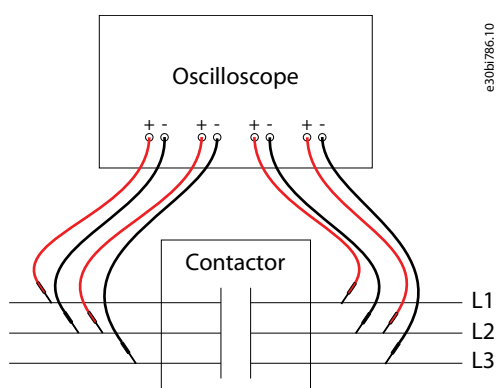


Illustration 106: Oscilloscope Connections for the Voltage Measurements

- If access to the switchgear cabinet is not permitted, the 120 V AC signal from the grid voltage feedback must be compared with the voltage captured on L1/L2/L3. Thus, all scope testing points are local to the drive. Instrument the scope to L1/L2, L2/L3, and the corresponding phases coming from the stepped down LV side of the PT. The stepped down voltages connect to the grid voltage feedback connector on the AFE control unit.

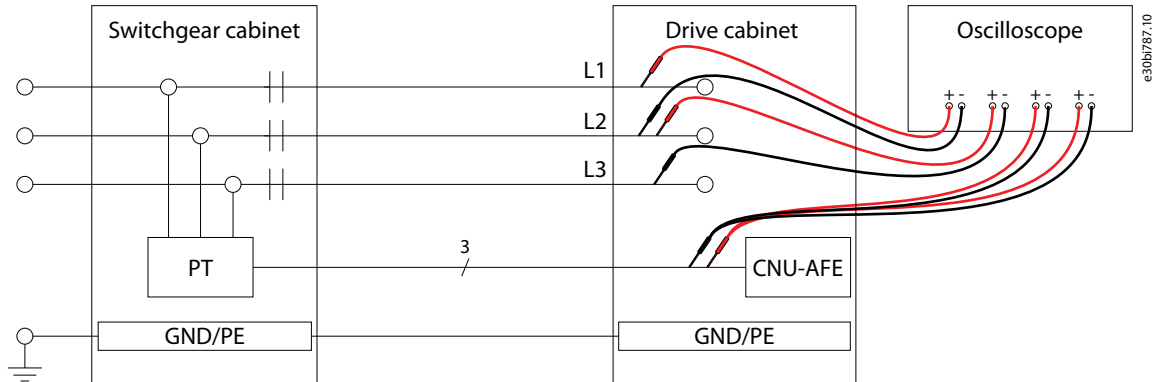


Illustration 107: Alternative Oscilloscope Connections for the Voltage Measurements

2. Configure the oscilloscope.
  - a. Set 5 kV per division (Y-axis) on the channels measuring L1/L2 and L2/L3 voltages (output side of MV feeder cabinet).
  - b. Set 200 V per division on the channels measuring the MV supply voltage through PT secondaries (corresponding to input side of contactor in MV feeder cabinet).
  - c. Set the time base to 10 ms per division (X-axis).
  - d. Set the trigger to the rising edge on either channel of the output (AFE side). 1500 V is enough.
3. Open the grounding switch.
4. To prevent the drive from closing the main contactor that links the AFE output to the MV supply, set the parameter P3.3.5.4 **Synchronization Test Mode** on the AFE control unit to "Enable".
5. Apply power to the auxiliary voltage input of the drive. Verify that the necessary circuit breaker to activate the pre-charge unit is closed. If applicable, do the same for the cooling system (HX).

Auxiliary voltage required for the pre-charge:

- 3300 V drives: 380–440 V  $\pm 10\%$
- 4160 V drives: 460–480 V  $\pm 10\%$

In the example diagram, the circuit breakers FC11 and FC12 must be closed.

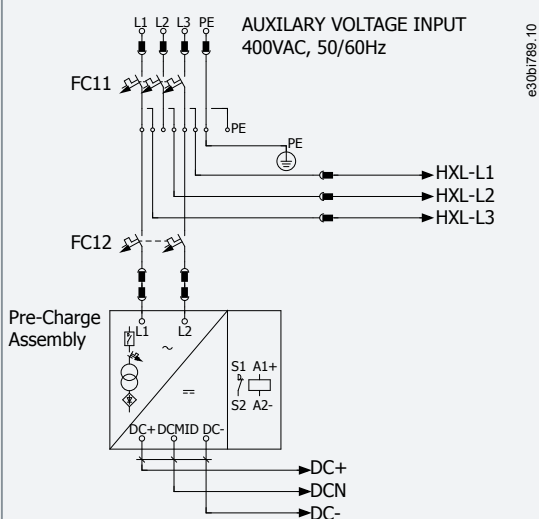


Illustration 108: Circuit Breakers for the Auxiliary Supply

6. Apply MV supply power to the input of the contactor.

7. Verify that this voltage is visible in VACON® Live. Go to the M2.3 **AFE Monitor** menu and M2.3.2 **Line PLL**.

➡ The line voltage and line frequency must correspond to the rated input of the drive. If it does not, the grid voltage feedback is not properly set up and the power on command does not become available.  
The MV supply voltages are the yellow and pink waveforms in the screen capture. The AFE outputs are flat, since the drive is not operating. When operating properly, the AFE waveforms almost perfectly superimpose on top of the mains waveforms.

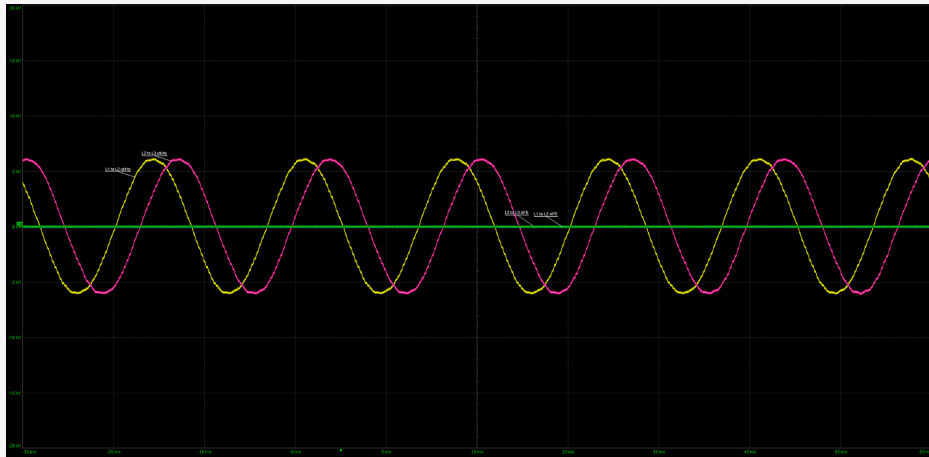


Illustration 109: MV Supply Voltage Waveforms

8. Start any other auxiliary systems needed for operation.  
9. Make sure that there are no interlocks preventing the drive from being able to start.

The drive does not actually start in synchronization test mode.

10. Give the system a "Power Up" command.

➡ After the "Power Up" command is received:  
If all the interlocks are made, the power-up sequence starts.  
The cooling system starts.  
The pre-charge circuit charges the DC-link.  
The AFE activates to generate voltage on the downstream side of the mains contactor.  
After approximately a second of operating the AFE, the system trips on "pre-charge supervision" because the pre-charge sequence was interrupted (no contactor feedback).

11. Compare the mains voltage to the AFE generated voltage. The AFE generated voltage must complete the synchronization by its 4th cycle from start up.

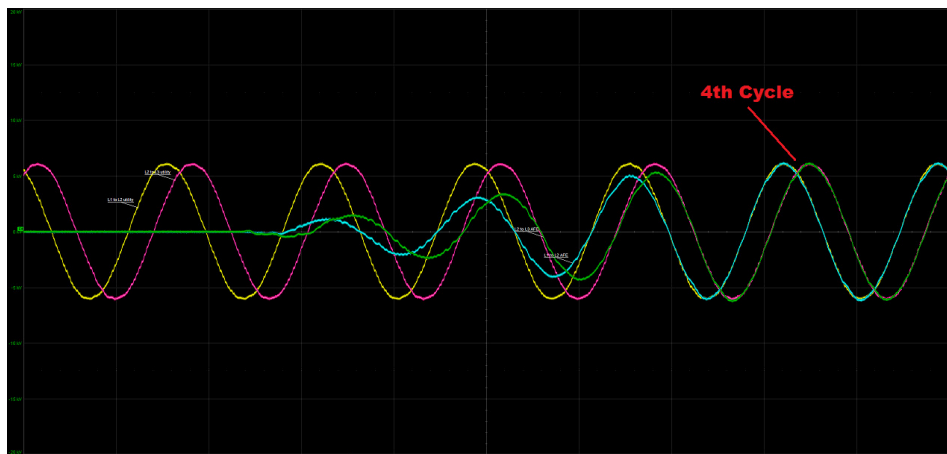


Illustration 110: Synchronization Test Screen Capture

12. Use the zoom function of the scope and look at the 0 V crossing. Measure the approximate time delay using the cursor function.

➡ The waveforms must match with a delay of less than 100  $\mu\text{s}$ . In the example, the delay is  $\sim 52 \mu\text{s}$  on the L2-L3 phase and even less on L1-L2 phase. This result is good and no further tuning is required.

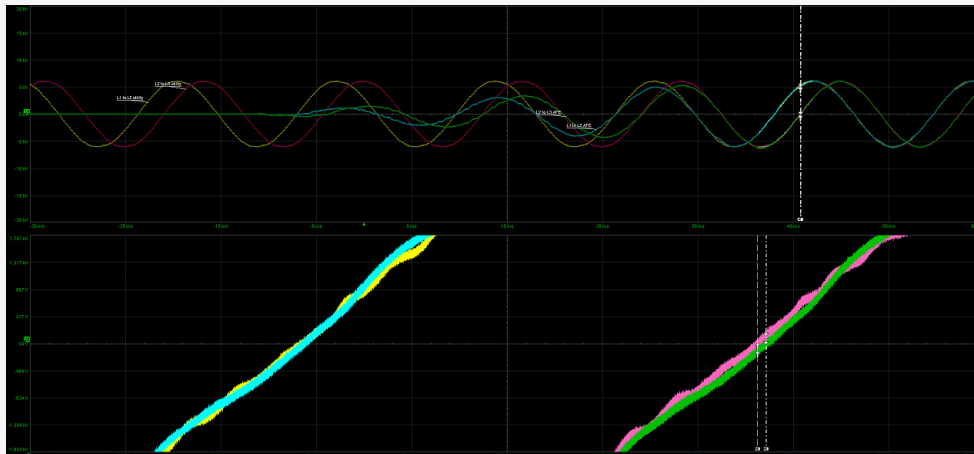


Illustration 111: Acceptable Time Delay

If the delay is more than 100  $\mu\text{s}$ , adjust the **Ref Frame Adapt Angle** parameter P3.2.5.5 on the AFE control unit. Perform the test again until an acceptable result is reached. The typical adjustment range is between -5 and +5.

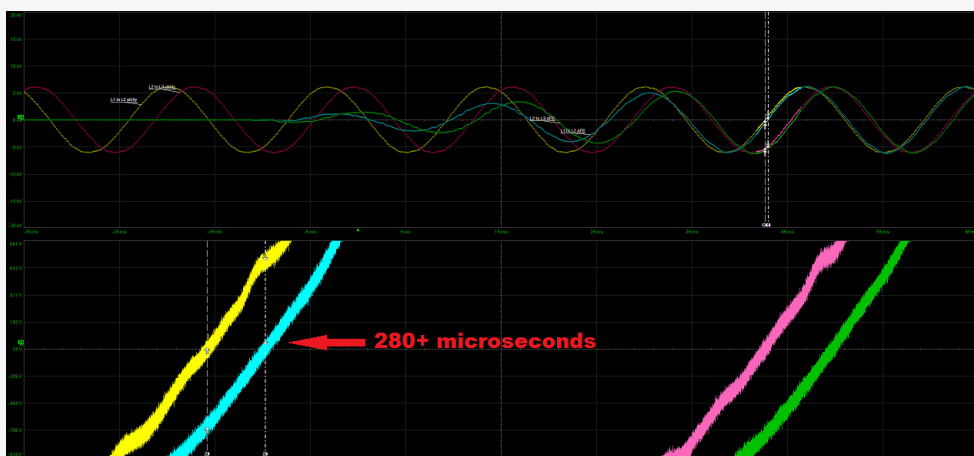


Illustration 112: Unacceptable Time Delay

13. After successfully matching the waveforms, set parameter P3.3.5.4 **Synchronization Test Mode** on the AFE control unit to "Disable".
14. The AFE now requires tuning to optimize the power factor of the drive. The same parameter that was adjusted in the synchronization test is used for this procedure.
  - a. Confirm that the drive is ready to be fully energized.
  - b. Close the mains contactor.
  - c. Energize the drive, but the drive does not need to output voltage to the motor.
15. In VACON® Live, monitor the V2.3.3.3 **Grid Active Current** while adjusting the **Ref Frame Adapt Angle** parameter P3.2.5.5.



16. While adjusting the **Ref Frame Adapt Angle**, take note of which direction the current goes. Adjust the angle so that the **Grid Active Current** is close to zero.

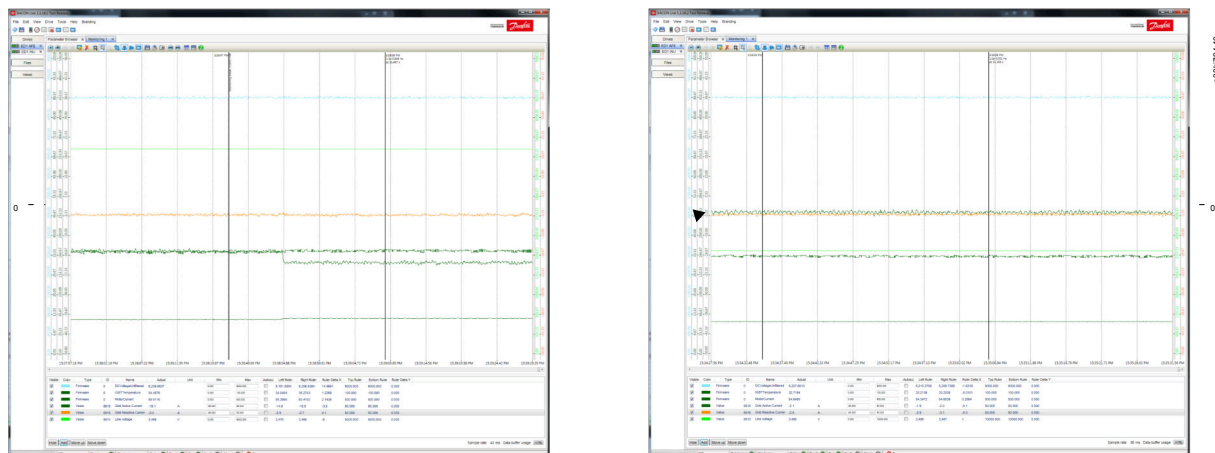


Illustration 113: Monitoring Grid Active Current while adjusting Ref Frame Adapt Angle

17. To measure the synchronization delay again, reperform the synchronization test.



If the delay is over 100  $\mu$ s, it is acceptable as long as the drive does not trip at energization. For operation purposes, the tuning to minimize **Grid Active Current** takes higher priority because it affects power factor.

### 8.3.7 Encoder Setup

Closed loop Vector Control requires an encoder installed on the motor. The encoder wiring is connected to channel A on the INU control unit. The objective of this procedure is to verify that the encoder wiring is connected to the proper terminals and to set the encoder parameters in the INU control unit.

1. Locate the encoder terminal blocks on the INU control unit. The encoder wiring is connected to channel A (unless a 2nd control unit is set up as a follower).

See [7.10 Encoder Interface](#).

2. Obtain the pinout diagram for the encoder connector.
3. Connect the encoder wiring to the corresponding position on the control unit terminal block.

See [7.10.1 Encoder Terminals and Signals](#).

4. Set the encoder jumpers on the control unit according to the specifications.

See [7.10.2 Encoder Jumper Configurations](#).

5. Use the VACON® Live PC tool to connect to the INU control unit.
6. Open menu M3.15 **Encoders** and set the encoder parameters.
  - a. Set parameter P3.15.4.9 **Encoder Resolution**.
  - b. Set parameter P3.15.4.10 **Motor Pole Pairs**.
  - c. Set parameter P3.15.4.13 **Filter Time Constant**.
  - d. The rest of the parameters can most likely remain at default settings.
7. Test the encoder in open loop configuration.
  - a. Open the menu M3.1.2 **Motor Control** and set the parameter P3.1.2.1 **Control Mode** to "OL Speed Ctrl".
  - b. Open the menu M3.1.5 **Flux Vector Control** and set the parameter P3.1.5.1 **Sensorless Ctrl** to "Disabled".
8. Use the VACON® Live monitoring to verify that the encoder feedback (V2.10.3.6 **Encoder Elec. Freq.**) matches the output frequency of the drive (V2.3.1 **Output Frequency**) while the drive is in operation. Confirm the matching values up to 100% speed through monitoring.
9. When the encoder operation is confirmed, stop operation of the drive.
10. Set the drive to closed-loop operation.
  - a. Open the menu M3.1.5 **Flux Vector Control** and set the parameter P3.1.5.1 **Sensorless Ctrl** to "Enabled".

- b. Set the **Sensorless Ctrl Options** with parameter P3.1.5.3.

Make sure that these options are selected:

- "Ena Flux Controller"
- "Use Curr Ref. in Model"
- "Ena Ramp AntiWindup"
- "Ena CL Control"
- "CL Flying Start"

## 8.4 Insulation Resistance Measurements

### 8.4.1 Measuring the Switchgear Insulation Resistance

The measurement of the switchgear insulation resistance is a standard procedure.

Measure the insulation resistance and refer to the test voltages in [Table 53](#). Use Megger test equipment or an equivalent instrument for the measurement. Make sure that the test device can supply a 1 mA current at the measurement voltages.

Before the measurement:

- Disconnect the N/PE (PEN) connection (TN-C-S systems only).
- Open the grounding switch (GSW).
- If the circuit contains AC drives, only do the measurement from L1-L2-L3-(N) to frame.
- Measure the insulation resistance between all connected phases (also N) and the frame.

During measurement, make sure that the switches are in the off position and that there are fuses installed. Make sure that the switchgear is in normal operation condition but with all operated equipment (for example, motors) disconnected.

**Table 53: Insulation Resistance Measurement Voltages and the Minimum Permitted Insulation**

Circuit $U_n$	Test voltage	Insulation resistance <sup>(1)</sup>
$\leq 500$ V	500 V DC	$\geq 0.5$ M $\Omega$
$> 500$ V	1000 V DC	$\geq 1.0$ M $\Omega$

<sup>1</sup> The number of devices connected can lower the values. If the results are much lower than the values in the table, speak to the manufacturer.

### 8.4.2 Measuring the Cable and Motor Insulation

Do these checks if necessary.

NOTE! AC drive is already measured at the factory.

- The insulation checks of the motor cable, see [8.4.2.1 Insulation Checks of the Motor Cable](#)
- The insulation checks of the mains cable, see [8.4.2.2 Insulation Checks of the Mains Cable](#)
- The insulation checks of the motor, see [8.4.2.3 Insulation Checks of the Motor](#)

#### 8.4.2.1 Insulation Checks of the Motor Cable

Use these instructions to check the insulation of the motor cable.

##### Procedure

1. Disconnect the motor cable from the terminals U, V, and W and from the motor.
2. Measure the insulation resistance of the motor cable between phase conductors 1 and 2, between phase conductors 1 and 3, and between phase conductors 2 and 3.
3. Measure the insulation resistance between each phase conductor and the grounding conductor.
4. The insulation resistance must be  $>1$  M $\Omega$  at the ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F).

### 8.4.2.2 Insulation Checks of the Mains Cable

Use these instructions to check the insulation of the mains cable.

#### Procedure

1. Disconnect the mains cable from the terminals L1, L2, and L3 and from mains.
2. Measure the insulation resistance of the mains cable between phase conductors 1 and 2, between phase conductors 1 and 3, and between phase conductors 2 and 3.
3. Measure the insulation resistance between each phase conductor and the grounding conductor.
4. The insulation resistance must be  $>1\text{ M}\Omega$  at the ambient temperature of  $20\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $68\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

### 8.4.2.3 Insulation Checks of the Motor

Use these instructions to check the insulation of the motor.

#### NOTICE

Obey the instructions of the motor manufacturer.

#### Procedure

1. Disconnect the motor cable from the motor.
2. Open the bridging connections in the motor connection box.
3. Measure the insulation resistance of each motor winding. The voltage must be the same or higher than the motor nominal voltage, but at least  $1000\text{ V}$ .
4. The insulation resistance must be  $>1\text{ M}\Omega$  at the ambient temperature of  $20\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $68\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).
5. Connect the motor cables to the motor.
6. Do the final insulation check on the drive side. Put all phases together and measure to the ground.
7. Connect the motor cables to the drive.

## 9 Maintenance

### 9.1 Preventive Maintenance Recommendations

Generally, all technical equipment, including Danfoss AC Drives, need a minimum level of preventive maintenance. Regular maintenance is recommended to ensure trouble-free operation and long life of the drive. It is also recommended, as a good service practice, to record a maintenance log with counter values, date, and time describing the maintenance and service actions.

Danfoss recommends the following inspections and service intervals for liquid-cooled drive/system.

NOTE: The service schedule for part replacements can vary depending on operation conditions. Under specific conditions, the combination of stressful operating and environment conditions work together to significantly reduce the lifetime of the components. These conditions can include, for example, extreme temperature, dust, high humidity, hours of use, corrosive environment, and loading.

For operation in stressful conditions, Danfoss offers the DrivePro® Preventive Maintenance service. DrivePro® services extend the lifetime and increase the performance of the product with scheduled maintenance including customized part replacements. DrivePro® services are tailored to your application and operating conditions.

Table 54: Maintenance Schedule for Liquid-cooled Drives

Component	Inspection interval <sup>(1)</sup>	Service schedule <sup>(2)</sup>	Preventive maintenance actions
<b>Installation</b>			
Visual drive inspection	1 year	–	Check for the unusual, for example, for signs of overheating, aging, corrosion, and for dusty and damaged components.
Auxiliary equipment	1 year	According to manufacturer recommendations	Inspect equipment, switchgear, relays, disconnects, or fuses/circuit breakers. Examine the operation and condition for possible causes of operational faults or defects. The continuity check on fuses is performed by trained service personnel.
EMC consideration	1 year	–	Inspect the installation wiring regarding the electromagnetic capability and the separation distance between control wiring and power cables.
Cable routing	1 year	According to manufacturer recommendations	Check for parallel routing of motor cables, mains wiring, and signal wiring. Parallel routing must be avoided. Avoid routing cables through free air without support. Check for aging and wearing of the cable insulation.
Control wiring	1 year	–	Check for tightness, damaged or crimped wires or ribbon wires. The connections should be terminated correctly with solid crimped ends. The use of shielded cables and grounded EMC plate, or a twisted pair is recommended.
Proper clearances	1 year	–	Check that the required external clearances for proper airflow for cooling are followed according to the frame designation and drive type of the drive. For clearances, refer to the local design regulations.
Seals condition	1 year	–	Check that the seals of the enclosure, the covers, and the cabinet doors are in good condition.
Corrosive environments	1 year	–	Aggressive gases, such as sulphide, chloride, and salt mist can damage the electrical and mechanical components. Air filters do not remove airborne corrosive chemicals. Act based on findings.
<b>Drive</b>			
Programming	1 year	–	Check that the AC drive parameter settings are correct according to the motor, drive application, and I/O configuration. Only trained service personnel may perform this action.
Control panel	1 year	–	Check that the display pixels are intact. Check the event log for warnings, alarms, and faults. Repetitive events are a sign of potential issues. Contact your local service center.

Component	Inspection interval <sup>(1)</sup>	Service schedule <sup>(2)</sup>	Preventive maintenance actions
Drive cooling capacity	1 year	–	Check for blockages or constrictions in the air passages of the cooling channel. The channels must be free of dust and condensation.
Cleaning and filters	1 year	–	The interior of the enclosure must be cleaned annually, and more frequently if necessary. The level of dust in the filter, inside the enclosure, or in the internal fans between cabinets is an indicator for when the next cleaning or filter replacement is required.
Fans	1 year	5 years	Inspect the condition and operational status of all cooling fans. With the power off, the fan axis should feel tight, and spinning the fan with a finger, the rotation should be smooth and almost silent. When in RUN mode, fan vibration, excessive or strange noise is a sign of the bearings wearing, and the fan must be replaced.
Grounding	1 year	–	The drive system requires a dedicated ground wire connecting the drive, the output filter, and the motor to the building ground. Check that the ground connections are tight and free of paint or oxidation. Daisy-chain connections are not allowed. Braided straps are recommended if applicable.
PCB	1 year	10–12 years	Visually inspect the PCBs for signs of damage or degrading due to aging, corrosive environments, or environments with high temperatures. Only trained service personnel may perform the inspection and service action.
Power cables and wiring	1 year	According to manufacturer recommendations	Check for loose connections, aging, insulation condition, and proper torque to the drive connections. Check for proper rating of fuses and continuity check. Observe if there are any signs of operation in a demanding environment. For example, discoloration of the fuse housing can be a sign of condensation or high temperatures.
Vibration	1 year	–	Check for abnormal vibration or noise coming from the drive to ensure that the environment is stable for electronic components.
Insulator gas-kets	1 year	10–15 years	Inspect the insulators for signs of degradation due to high temperature and aging. Replacement is based on findings. Only trained service personnel may perform this action.
Batteries	1 year	7–10 years	Replace the batteries according to manufacturer recommendations. Replace the RTC battery in the control unit every 7–10 years.
<b>Spare Parts</b>			
Spare parts	1 year	2 years	Stock spares in their original boxes in a dry and clean environment. Avoid hot storage areas.
Exchange units	1 year	2 years	Visually inspect for signs of damage, water, high humidity, corrosion, and dust within the visual field of view without disassembly. The exchange units with mounted electrolytic capacitors require reforming as stated in the service schedule. The reforming is performed by trained service personnel.
<b>Coolant</b>			
Log	Commissioning/start-up, or at time of replacing liquid coolant	–	Record the water quality specification values to create a baseline for future reference before and after adding inhibitor and glycol. Also record the system pressure, coolant flow rate, temperature range, and create a baseline for future reference.
Glycols	1 year	Based on findings	Measure and record the level of glycol in the cooling system. The minimum concentration level is always 75/25% demineralized water/glycol.

Component	Inspection interval <sup>(1)</sup>	Service schedule <sup>(2)</sup>	Preventive maintenance actions
Corrosive inhibitors	1 year	Based on findings	Measure and record the level of Danfoss recommended corrosive inhibitor (Cortec-VpCI-649) in the liquid coolant (see specification). The level of inhibitor must be measured every year. If inhibitor is below the 1% recommended level, practice caution before adding more inhibitor to not exceed the level of electrical conductivity.
Pre-mixed glycol and inhibitor coolant	1 year	Based on findings	The pre-mixed coolants contain specific percentages of glycol and inhibitor for antifreeze and corrosion protection. The advantage of using a pre-mixed coolant is that the chemical composition is within Danfoss specifications, and there is no need for analyzing the coolant.
Demineralized water	1 year	Based on findings	Only use demineralized or deionized water in the coolant solution. Record and compare the chemical composition values when replacing or adding coolant.
<b>Liquid Cooling System</b>			
Pipes, hoses, and connections	1 year	1 year	Check for external signs of moisture, corrosion, and coolant leaks. Check the tightness of the cooling pipe connections. Check the heat sinks and host pipes in the cooling system.
Leak detector	1 year	10 years	Test the functioning of the leak detector.
Power unit heat sinks	1 year	6 years	Under normal conditions, the heat sinks must be cleaned or acid-washed every 6 years with Danfoss recommended cleaning products. Refill the coolant system and log the new coolant specification values.
Auxiliary equipment	1 year	According to manufacturer recommendations	Check that the sensors, gauges, and indicators are functioning correctly. Act based on findings.
System cooling capacity	1 year	Based on findings	Test the cooling capacity and the thermal transfer of the system. Record the coolant system flow, pressure, and input and output temperature, and compare to the previous measurements. Act based on findings.

<sup>1</sup> Defined as the time after the commissioning/start-up or the time from the previous inspection.

<sup>2</sup> Defined as the time after the commissioning/start-up or the time from the previous service schedule actions.

### 9.1.1 Maintenance Log for Cooling System

During the commissioning phase of the product and during each inspection refer to the maintenance schedule. Record values such as the ambient air temperature, system pressure, flow, and input/output cooling liquid temperature during run condition. Record the water chemical analysis values and the type and percentages of glycol and inhibitor or pre-mixed solutions of the liquid coolant. The initial values create a base-line value to compare versus future values measured during preventive maintenance intervals. Record the chemical analysis values each time the liquid coolant is replaced. Record all the maintenance tasks and service tasks with counter values, date, and time.

## 10 Fault Tracing

### 10.1 Fault Types

When the control diagnostics of the AC drive find an unusual condition in the operation of the drive, the drive shows a notification about it. The notification can be seen on the display of the control panel. The display shows the code, the name, and a short description of the fault or alarm.

The source info tells the source of the fault, what caused it, where it occurred, and other data.

There are 3 different types of notification.

- An **info** does not affect the operation of the drive. The info must be reset.
- An **alarm** informs of unusual operation on the drive. It does not stop the drive. The alarm must be reset.
- A **fault** stops the drive. The drive must be reset and find a solution to the problem.

It is possible to program different responses for some faults in the application.

Reset the fault with the [BACK/RESET] button on the keypad, or through the I/O terminal, fieldbus, or PC tool. The faults stay in the Fault history where they can be examined. See the different fault codes in [10.2 Faults and Alarms](#).

Before contacting the distributor or the factory because of unusual operation, prepare some data. Write down all the texts on the display, the fault code, the fault ID, the source info, the *Active Faults* list, and the *Fault History*.

### 10.2 Faults and Alarms

#### 10.2.1 Fault Code 1 - Overcurrent

##### 10.2.1.1 Fault Code 1, ID 1 - Overcurrent (Hardware Fault)

###### Cause

There is too high a current ( $> 4 \times I_H$ ) in the motor cable.

- a sudden heavy load increase
- a short circuit in the motor cables
- the motor is not the correct type
- the parameter settings are not properly made

###### Troubleshooting

- Check the loading.
- Check the motor.
- Check the cables and connections.
- Make an identification run.
- Set the acceleration time longer (P3.4.1.2 and P3.4.2.2).

##### 10.2.1.2 Fault Code 1, ID 2 - Overcurrent (Software Fault)

###### Cause

If the current limit controller draws the output frequency down to zero and the current is still over the current limit, this fault is generated after 1 s.

###### Troubleshooting

- Check the loading.
- Check the motor.
- Check the cables and connections.
- Make an identification run.
- Set the acceleration time longer (P3.4.1.2 and P3.4.2.2).

##### 10.2.1.3 Fault Code 1, ID 4 - Phase Overcurrent

###### Cause

The phase current is too high.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the loading.
- Check the motor.
- Check the cables and connections.
- Make an identification run.
- Set the acceleration time longer (P3.4.1.2 and P3.4.2.2).

**10.2.2 Fault Code 2 - Overvoltage****10.2.2.1 Fault Code 2, ID 10 - Overvoltage (Hardware Fault)****Cause**

The DC link voltage is higher than the limits.

- too short a deceleration time
- high overvoltage spikes in the supply

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the deceleration time longer (P3.4.1.3 and P3.4.2.3).
- Use a brake chopper. It is available as an option.
- Activate the overvoltage controller.
- Check the input voltage.

**10.2.2.2 Fault Code 2, ID 11 - Overvoltage (Software Fault)****Cause**

The DC link voltage is higher than the limits.

- too short a deceleration time
- high overvoltage spikes in the supply

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the deceleration time longer (P3.4.1.3 and P3.4.2.3).
- Use a brake chopper. It is available as an option.
- Activate the overvoltage controller.
- Check the input voltage.

**10.2.2.3 Fault Code 2, ID 13 - DC+ Overvoltage****Cause**

The positive DC-link voltage is higher than the limits.

- too short a deceleration time
- high overvoltage spikes in the supply

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the deceleration time longer (P3.4.1.3 and P3.4.2.3).
- Use a brake chopper. It is available as an option.
- Activate the overvoltage controller.
- Check the input voltage.

**10.2.2.4 Fault Code 2, ID 14 - DC- Overvoltage****Cause**

The negative DC-link voltage is higher than the limits.

- too short a deceleration time
- high overvoltage spikes in the supply



### Troubleshooting

- Set the deceleration time longer (P3.4.1.3 and P3.4.2.3).
- Use a brake chopper. It is available as an option.
- Activate the overvoltage controller.
- Check the input voltage.

### 10.2.2.5 Fault Code 2, ID 16 - DC-Link Overvoltage

#### Cause

The DC-link voltage is too high for the motor.

#### Troubleshooting

- Set the deceleration time longer (P3.4.1.3 and P3.4.2.3).
- Use a brake chopper. It is available as an option.
- Activate the overvoltage controller.
- Check the input voltage.

### 10.2.3 Fault Code 3 - Earth Fault

#### 10.2.3.1 Fault Code 3, ID 20 - Earth Fault (Hardware Fault)

##### Cause

The ground current sensor has detected a too high current flowing to the ground or the current measurement has detected that the sum of output phase currents is not zero (0 A).

- an insulation malfunction in the cables or the motor
- a filter (dU/dt, sine) malfunction

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cables and the motor.
- Check the filters.

#### 10.2.3.2 Fault Code 3, ID 21 - Earth fault (Software Fault)

##### Cause

The ground current sensor has detected a too high current flowing to the ground or the current measurement has detected that the sum of output phase currents is not zero (0 A).

- an insulation malfunction in the cables or the motor
- a filter (dU/dt, sine) malfunction

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cables and the motor.
- Check the filters.

#### 10.2.3.3 Fault Code 3, ID 22 - Ground Fault

##### Cause

The DC link neutral to ground voltage is higher than the fault level.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cables and the motor.
- Check the filters.

### 10.2.4 Fault Code 5 - Charging Switch

#### 10.2.4.1 Fault Code 5, ID 40 - Charging Switch

##### Cause

The charging switch is closed and the feedback information is OPEN.

The fault is hardware triggered. The feedback signal is compared to the control signal.

- operation malfunction
- defective component

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Check the feedback signal and the cable connection between the control unit and the power unit.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.5 Fault Code 7 - Saturation

#### 10.2.5.1 Fault Code 7, ID 60 - Saturation

##### Cause

The fault is hardware triggered. The fault is detected by measuring the collector to emitter voltage on the IGBT module. Excessive voltage when the IGBT is on indicates excess current flow.

- Defective IGBT.
- An IGBT does not execute its operation.
- De-saturation short circuit in the IGBT.
- A short circuit or an overload in the brake resistor.
- Noise issues can cause saturation faults.
- Extreme temperatures can cause saturation faults

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the source information for the fault. It indicates which module to check.
- This fault cannot be reset from the control panel.
- Switch off the power.
- After switching off the power from the drive, including the control supply, switch on the control supply and try to reset the fault.
  - If the fault cannot be reset, there is probably an issue on a circuit board inside the phase module. The entire phase module must be replaced.
- If the fault is on an INU module, check the motor cables and the motor for short circuits with a Megger tester.
- **Do not connect the main power to the phase modules until all the tests are done to the modules!**
- Ask for instructions from the factory.

### 10.2.6 Fault Code 8 - System Fault

#### 10.2.6.1 Fault Code 8, ID 600 - System Fault

##### Cause

- Communication between the control unit and power unit has failed when the drive is in RUN state.
- Component failure.
- Faulty operation.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Check the fiber optic connections between the control unit and phase modules.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.2 Fault Code 8, ID 601 - System Fault

#### Cause

- There is no communication between the control board and the power.
- Failure in communication between the control unit and power unit when the control updated the initial values to the power unit.
- Component failure.
- Faulty operation.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Check the fiber optic connections between the control unit and phase modules.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.3 Fault Code 8, ID 602 - System Fault

#### Cause

- The watchdog has reset the CPU.
- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.4 Fault Code 8, ID 603 - System Fault

#### Cause

The fault is hardware triggered.

- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.
- The voltage of auxiliary power in the power unit is too low.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.5 Fault Code 8, ID 604 - System Fault

#### Cause

The fault is hardware triggered.

- Phase fault.
- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.
- Output phase voltage does not agree to the reference.
- Feedback fault.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

#### 10.2.6.6 Fault Code 8, ID 605 - System Fault

##### Cause

Unknown fault in the power unit.

- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

#### 10.2.6.7 Fault Code 8, ID 606 - System Fault

##### Cause

- The software of the control unit is not compatible with the software of the power unit.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

#### 10.2.6.8 Fault Code 8, ID 607 - System Fault

##### Cause

- The software version cannot be read. There is no software in the power unit.
- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

#### 10.2.6.9 Fault Code 8, ID 608 - System Fault

##### Cause

- A CPU overload. Software or application causes the overload.
- Too heavy application.
- Faulty operation.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

#### 10.2.6.10 Fault Code 8, ID 609 - System Fault

##### Cause

- Access to the memory has failed.
- SPI EEPROM failure. Cannot be restored.
- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and make a power down of the drive twice.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.

### 10.2.6.11 Fault Code 8, ID 610 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Device Properties is not readable.
- Unreadable memory on the control board.
- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.12 Fault Code 8, ID 614 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Configuration error.
- Software error.
- Defective component (a defective control board).
- Operation malfunction.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.13 Fault Code 8, ID 615 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Powerbus high-speed process data failure.
- Error in the communication between two power units.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.14 Fault Code 8, ID 616 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Powerbus high-speed socket communication failure.
- Error in the communication between two power units.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.15 Fault Code 8, ID 618 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Powerbus high-speed link error.
- Error in the communication between two power units.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.16 Fault Code 8, ID 620 - System Fault****Cause**

- Gate driver board error A.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.17 Fault Code 8, ID 621 - System Fault****Cause**

- Gate driver board error B.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.18 Fault Code 8, ID 622 - System Fault****Cause**

- The connection between the gate driver board and the measurement board is broken.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.19 Fault Code 8, ID 623 - System Fault****Cause**

- The negative voltage of the 24 V supply is below the limit.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.20 Fault Code 8, ID 624 - System Fault****Cause**

- The positive voltage of the 24 V supply is below the limit.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the 24 V power supply.

**10.2.6.21 Fault Code 8, ID 625 - System Fault****Cause**

- The positive voltage of the 24 V supply is below the limit in a follower unit.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the 24 V power supply.

### 10.2.6.22 Fault Code 8, ID 647 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Cannot start the software/application, or software/application error.
- Defective component.
- Operation malfunction.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.23 Fault Code 8, ID 648 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Invalid function block used in the application.
- Operation malfunction.
- The system software is not compatible with the application.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.24 Fault Code 8, ID 649 - System Fault

Check the Source 1, Source 2, and Source 3 information of the fault.

Source 1 = Control; Source 2 = 12; Source 3 = 0

#### Cause

- A resource overload.
- Component failure.
- Faulty operation.
- Internal resources of the software have run out.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

Source 1 = Control; Source 2 = 12; Source 3 = 1000

#### Cause

- Parameter initial value loading error.
- Parameter problem.

#### Troubleshooting

- Load factory default settings.
- Update the latest software.

Source 1 = Control; Source 2 = 12; Source 3 = 2000

#### Cause

- Parameter initial value loading error.
- Parameter restoring error.

#### Troubleshooting

- Load factory default settings.
- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

Source 1 = Control; Source 2 = 12; Source 3 = 3001–3007, 10000–15000

#### Cause

- Parameter saving error.
- Parameter restoring error.

#### Troubleshooting

- Load factory default settings.
- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

Source 1 = Control; Source 2 = Number (module); Source 3 = Number (depends on module)

#### Cause

- A resource overload.
- Internal resources of the software have run out.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

Source 1 = Control; Source 2 = Motor control; Source 3 =

#### Cause

- A resource overload.
- More than 10% of the motor control cycles consume more time than budgeted during a 10 s supervision period.
- Internal software resources have run out.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart.
- Download the latest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.25 Fault Code 8, ID 667 - System Fault

#### Cause

- Ethernet configuration problem.
- Problem on the physical interface transceiver.
- Ethernet PHY is not recognized or it is in the wrong state.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the AC drive.
- Download the newest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.6.26 Fault Code 8, ID 670 - System Fault

#### Cause

- The current of the 24 V auxiliary output is higher than the maximum limit (>250 mA).



**Troubleshooting**

- Check the loading of the auxiliary output.
- Reset the fault and restart the AC drive.
- Download the newest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.27 Fault Code 8, ID 681 - System Fault****Cause**

- The maximum amount of datatables has been reserved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset faults and alarms that are waiting to be reset. Active faults cannot be reset.
- Return to previous working software version.
- If the fault occurs again, ask instructions from your nearest service center or distributor.

**10.2.6.28 Fault Code 8, ID 827 - System Fault****Cause**

- Invalid/incorrect license key provided (via keypad or VCX).
- The license key check fails, either by hash not matching with the drive, or a crc-check failure.
- The license key is incorrect or not for this drive.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault and restart the AC drive.
- Make sure that the license key is correct and enter the license key to the AC drive again.
- Download the newest software from the Danfoss Drives website. Update the drive with it.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.6.29 Fault Code 8, ID 828 - System Fault****Cause**

- The entered license key was accepted and stored to the drive.

**Troubleshooting**

- No actions required. Notification only.

**10.2.6.30 Fault Code 8, ID 829 - System Fault****Cause**

- A license vcx-file has been loaded to the drive.
- New licenses have been taken into use since the previous start-up.

**Troubleshooting**

- No actions required. Notification only.

**10.2.6.31 Fault Code 8, ID 830 - System Fault****Cause**

- Licenses have been removed from the drive.

**Troubleshooting**

- No actions required. Notification only.

## 10.2.7 Fault Code 9 - Undervoltage

### 10.2.7.1 Fault Code 9, ID 80 - Undervoltage (Fault)

#### Cause

The DC link voltage is lower than the limits.

- too low a supply voltage
- defective component
- a defective input fuse
- the external charge switch is not closed

NOTE! This fault becomes active only if the drive is in Run state.

#### Troubleshooting

- If there is a temporary supply voltage break, reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Do a check of the supply voltage. If the supply voltage is sufficient, there is an internal fault.
- Examine the electrical network for fault.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

## 10.2.8 Fault Code 10 - Input Phase

### 10.2.8.1 Fault Code 10, ID 91 - Input Phase

#### Cause

- supply voltage malfunction
- a defective fuse or malfunction in the supply cables

The load must be a minimum of 10–20% for the supervision to work.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.
- Check the rectifying bridge.

### 10.2.8.2 Fault Code 10, ID 92 - Input Phase

#### Cause

- Software-based input phase supervision.
- Bridge 0 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

### 10.2.8.3 Fault Code 10, ID 93 - Input Phase

#### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision
- Bridge 1 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

#### 10.2.8.4 Fault Code 10, ID 94 - Input Phase

##### Cause

- Software-based input phase supervision.
- An input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.
- Check the rectifying bridge.

#### 10.2.8.5 Fault Code 10, ID 95 - Input Phase

##### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision.
- Bridge 2 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

#### 10.2.8.6 Fault Code 10, ID 96 - Input Phase

##### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision
- Bridge 3 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

#### 10.2.8.7 Fault Code 10, ID 192 - Input Phase (Alarm)

##### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision
- Bridge 0 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

#### 10.2.8.8 Fault Code 10, ID 193 - Input Phase (Alarm)

##### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision
- Bridge 1 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

### 10.2.8.9 Fault Code 10, ID 195 - Input Phase (Alarm)

#### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision
- Bridge 2 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

### 10.2.8.10 Fault Code 10, ID 196 - Input Phase (Alarm)

#### Cause

- Software based input phase supervision
- Bridge 3 input phase is detected missing based on phase voltage measurements.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage.
- Check the fuses.
- Check the supply cable.

## 10.2.9 Fault Code 11 - Output Phase Supervision

### 10.2.9.1 Fault Code 11, ID 100 - Output Phase Supervision

#### Cause

The current measurement tells that there is no current in 1 motor phase.

- A motor or motor cables malfunction.
- Filter (dU/dt, sine wave) malfunction.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cable and the motor.
- Check the dU/dt or sine wave filter.

### 10.2.9.2 Fault Code 11, ID 101 - Output Phase Supervision

#### Cause

- Output phase current di/dt is above the threshold level.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cable and the motor.

## 10.2.10 Fault Code 12 - Brake Chopper Supervision

### 10.2.10.1 Fault Code 12, ID 110 - Brake Chopper Supervision (Hardware Fault)

#### Cause

- The fault is hardware triggered.
- There is no brake resistor.
- The brake resistor is broken.
- A defective brake chopper.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the brake resistor and the cabling. If they are in good condition, there is a fault in the resistor or the brake chopper. Ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.10.2 Fault Code 12, ID 111 - Brake Chopper Saturation Alarm

#### Cause

- The fault is hardware triggered.
- There is no brake resistor.
- The brake resistor is broken.
- A defective brake chopper.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the brake resistor and the cabling. If they are in good condition, there is a fault in the resistor or the brake chopper. Ask instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.11 Fault Code 13 - AC Drive Undertemperature

#### 10.2.11.1 Fault Code 13, ID 120 - AC Drive Undertemperature (Fault)

##### Cause

- Too low a temperature in the heat sink of the power unit or in the power board.

##### Troubleshooting

- The ambient temperature is too low for the drive. Move the drive in a warmer position.

#### 10.2.11.2 Fault Code 13, ID 121 - AC Drive Undertemperature (Alarm)

##### Cause

- Too low a temperature in the heat sink of the power unit or in the power board.

##### Troubleshooting

- The ambient temperature is too low for the drive. Move the drive in a warmer position.

### 10.2.12 Fault Code 14 - AC Drive Overtemperature

#### 10.2.12.1 Fault Code 14, ID 130 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Fault, Heat Sink)

##### Cause

- Too high a temperature in the heat sink of the power unit or in the power board.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the actual amount and flow of cooling air.
- Examine the heat sink for dust.
- Check the ambient temperature.
- Make sure that the switching frequency is not too high in relation to the ambient temperature and the motor load.
- Check the cooling fan.

#### 10.2.12.2 Fault Code 14, ID 131 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Alarm, Heat Sink)

##### Cause

- Too high a temperature in the heat sink of the power unit or in the power board.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the actual amount and flow of cooling air.
- Examine the heat sink for dust.
- Check the ambient temperature.
- Make sure that the switching frequency is not too high in relation to the ambient temperature and the motor load.
- Check the cooling fan.

#### 10.2.12.3 Fault Code 14, ID 132 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Fault, Board)

##### Cause

- Too high a temperature in the heat sink of the power unit or in the power board.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the actual amount and flow of cooling air.
- Examine the heat sink for dust.
- Check the ambient temperature.
- Make sure that the switching frequency is not too high in relation to the ambient temperature and the motor load.
- Check the cooling fan.

**10.2.12.4 Fault Code 14, ID 133 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Alarm, Board)****Cause**

- Too high a temperature in the heat sink of the power unit or in the power board.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the actual amount and flow of cooling air.
- Examine the heat sink for dust.
- Check the ambient temperature.
- Make sure that the switching frequency is not too high in relation to the ambient temperature and the motor load.
- Check the cooling fan.

**10.2.12.5 Fault Code 14, ID 134 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Fault)****Cause**

- Power unit auxiliary temperature is too high.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the actual amount and flow of cooling air.
- Examine the heat sink for dust.
- Check the ambient temperature.
- Make sure that the switching frequency is not too high in relation to the ambient temperature and the motor load.
- Check the cooling fan.

**10.2.12.6 Fault Code 14, ID 136 - Overvoltage Protection Circuit Temperature (Alarm)****Cause**

- An internal circuit overtemperature caused by a ground fault in the output.
- Too high an output capacitance or a ground fault in the floating network.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the cables and the motor.

**10.2.12.7 Fault Code 14, ID 137 - Overvoltage Protection Circuit Temperature (Fault)****Cause**

- Too high an output capacitance or a ground fault in the floating network.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the cables and the motor.

**10.2.12.8 Fault Code 14, ID 138 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Fault)****Cause**

- Output filter temperature is too high.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the motor cables and the motor.
- Check the correct amount and flow of cooling air.
- Check the ambient temperature.

### 10.2.12.9 Fault Code 14, ID 139 - AC Drive Overtemperature (Fault)

#### Cause

- Brake chopper temperature is too high.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the correct amount and flow of cooling air.
- Check the heat sink of the brake chopper for dust.
- Check the ambient temperature.

### 10.2.13 Fault Code 15 - Motor Stall

#### 10.2.13.1 Fault Code 15, ID 140 - Motor Stall

#### Cause

- The motor stalled.
- Motor stall protection has tripped. The motor is stuck for some reason.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor and the load.
- Check the parameters.

### 10.2.14 Fault Code 16 - Motor Overtemperature

#### 10.2.14.1 Fault Code 16, ID 150 - Motor Overtemperature

#### Cause

- Motor over heating has been detected by the AC drive motor temperature model.
- There is too heavy a load on the motor.

#### Troubleshooting

- Decrease the motor load. If there is no motor overload, check the motor thermal protection parameters (parameter group 3.8 Protections).
- Check the motor.

### 10.2.15 Fault Code 17 - Motor Underload

#### 10.2.15.1 Fault Code 17, ID 160 - Motor Underload

#### Cause

- There is not a sufficient load on the motor.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the load.
- Check the parameters.
- Check the dU/dt and sine wave filters.

### 10.2.16 Fault Code 19 - Power Overload

#### 10.2.16.1 Fault Code 19, ID 180 - Power Overload (Short-time Supervision)

#### Cause

- The motor overload protection has tripped.
- The power of the drive is too high.

#### Troubleshooting

- Decrease the load.
- Examine the dimensions of drive. Examine if it is too small for the load.

### 10.2.16.2 Fault Code 19, ID 181 - Power Overload (Long-time Supervision)

#### Cause

- The motor overload protection has tripped.
- The power of the drive is too high.

#### Troubleshooting

- Decrease the load.
- Examine the dimensions of drive. Examine if it is too small for the load.

### 10.2.17 Fault Code 25 - Motor Control Fault

#### 10.2.17.1 Fault Code 25, ID 240 - Motor Control Fault

##### Cause

This fault is available only if you use a customer-specific application. A malfunction in the start angle identification.

- The rotor moves during identification.
- The new angle does not agree with the old value.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Increase the identification current.
- See the fault history source for more information.

#### 10.2.17.2 Fault Code 25, ID 241 - Motor Control Fault

##### Cause

This fault is available only if you use a customer-specific application. A malfunction in the start angle identification.

- The rotor moves during identification.
- The new angle does not agree with the old value.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Increase the identification current.
- See the fault history source for more information.

### 10.2.18 Fault Code 26 - Start-up Prevented

#### 10.2.18.1 Fault Code 26, ID 250 - Start-up Prevented

##### Cause

- It is not possible to do a start-up of the drive. When the Run request is ON, a new software (a firmware or an application), a parameter setting, or other file that affects the operation of the drive, is loaded to drive.

##### Troubleshooting

- Proceed with caution! Acknowledge the prevention of unexpected start-up by removing the Run request.
- Reset the fault and stop the drive.
- Load the software and start the drive.

### 10.2.19 Fault Code 29 - ATEX Thermistor

#### 10.2.19.1 Fault Code 29, ID 280 - ATEX Thermistor

##### Cause

- The ATEX thermistor tells that there is an overtemperature.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault. Check the thermistor and its connections.



## 10.2.20 Fault Code 30 - Safety

### 10.2.20.1 Fault Code 30, ID 290 - Safe Off

#### Cause

- The safe Off signal A does not let you set the drive to the READY state.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Check the signals from the control board to the power unit and the D connector.

### 10.2.20.2 Fault Code 30, ID 291 - Safe Off

#### Cause

- The safe Off signal B does not let you set the drive to the READY state.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Check the signals from the control board to the power unit and the D connector.

### 10.2.20.3 Fault Code 30, ID 500 - Safety Configuration

#### Cause

- The safety configuration switch was installed.

#### Troubleshooting

- Remove the safety configuration switch from the control board.

### 10.2.20.4 Fault Code 30, ID 501 - Safety Configuration

#### Cause

- There are too many STO option boards. It is possible to have only 1.

#### Troubleshooting

- Keep 1 of the STO option boards. Remove the others. See the safety manual.

### 10.2.20.5 Fault Code 30, ID 502 - Safety Configuration

#### Cause

- The STO option board was installed in an incorrect slot.

#### Troubleshooting

- Put the STO option board into the correct slot. See the OPTBJ STO Safety manual.

### 10.2.20.6 Fault Code 30, ID 503 - Safety configuration

#### Cause

- There is no safety configuration switch on the control board.

#### Troubleshooting

- Install the safety configuration switch on the control board. See the safety manual.

### 10.2.20.7 Fault Code 30, ID 504 - Safety configuration

#### Cause

- The safety configuration switch was installed incorrectly on the control board.

#### Troubleshooting

- Install the safety configuration switch into the correct position on the control board. See the safety manual.

### 10.2.20.8 Fault Code 30, ID 505 - Safety configuration

#### Cause

- The safety configuration switch was installed incorrectly on the STO option board.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the installation of the safety configuration switch on the STO option board. See the safety manual.

**10.2.20.9 Fault Code 30, ID 506 - Safety configuration****Cause**

- There is no communication with the STO option board.
- Communication has failed between the control board and STO option board.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the installation of the STO option board. See the safety manual.

**10.2.20.10 Fault Code 30, ID 507 - Safety configuration****Cause**

- The STO option board is not compatible with the hardware.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the drive and restart it. If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.20.11 Fault Code 30, ID 520 - Safety diagnostics****Cause**

- The STO inputs have a different status.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the external safety switch. Check the input connection and cable of the safety switch.
- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.20.12 Fault Code 30, ID 521 - Safety diagnostics****Cause**

- A malfunction in the ATEX thermistor diagnostic. There is no connection in the ATEX thermistor input.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, change the option board.

**10.2.20.13 Fault Code 30, ID 522 - Safety diagnostics****Cause**

- A short circuit in the connection of the ATEX thermistor input.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the ATEX thermistor input connection.
- Check the external ATEX connection.
- Check the external ATEX thermistor.

**10.2.20.14 Fault Code 30, ID 523 - Safety diagnostics****Cause**

- A problem occurred in the internal safety circuit.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the test pulses from the safety lines.
- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.20.15 Fault Code 30, ID 524 - Safety diagnostics

#### Cause

- An overvoltage in the safety option board.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.20.16 Fault Code 30, ID 525 - Safety Diagnostics

#### Cause

- An undervoltage in the safety option board.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.20.17 Fault Code 30, ID 526 - Safety Diagnostics

#### Cause

- An internal malfunction in the safety option board CPU or in the memory handling.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.20.18 Fault Code 30, ID 527 - Safety Diagnostics

#### Cause

- An internal malfunction in the safety function.
- More than one STO board installed.
- Communication to the STO board does not work.
- Old hardware does not support the STO board.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check that the STO board is installed correctly.
- Reset the drive and restart.
- If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.20.19 Fault Code 30, ID 530 - Safe Torque Off

#### Cause

- An emergency stop was connected or some other STO operation was activated.

#### Troubleshooting

- When the STO function is activated, the drive is in safe state.

### 10.2.21 Fault Code 32 - Fan Cooling

#### 10.2.21.1 Fault Code 32, ID 311 - Fan Cooling

##### Cause

- The fan speed does not agree to the speed reference accurately, but the drive operates correctly.

##### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- Clean or replace the fan.

### 10.2.21.2 Fault Code 32, ID 312 - Fan Cooling

#### Cause

- The fan life time (that is, 50 000 h) is complete.

#### Troubleshooting

- Replace the fan and reset the life time counter of the fan.

### 10.2.22 Fault Code 33 - Fire Mode Enabled

#### 10.2.22.1 Fault Code 33, ID 320 - Fire Mode Enabled

#### Cause

- The fire mode of the drive is enabled. The protections of the drive are disabled or autoreset.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the parameter settings and the signals.
- This alarm is reset automatically when fire mode is disabled.

### 10.2.23 Fault Code 37 - Device Changed (Same Type)

#### 10.2.23.1 Fault Code 37, ID 361 - Device Changed (Same Type)

#### Cause

- The power unit was replaced by a new one that has the same size. The device is ready to be used. The parameters are available in the drive.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault. The drive reboots after you reset the fault.

#### 10.2.23.2 Fault Code 37, ID 362 - Device Changed (Same Type)

#### Cause

- The option board in slot B was replaced by a new one that you have used before in the same slot. The device is ready to be used.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

#### 10.2.23.3 Fault Code 37, ID 363 - Device Changed (Same Type)

#### Cause

- The option board in slot C was replaced by a new one that you have used before in the same slot. The device is ready to be used.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

#### 10.2.23.4 Fault Code 37, ID 364 - Device Changed (Same Type)

#### Cause

- The option board in slot D was replaced by a new one that you have used before in the same slot. The device is ready to be used.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

#### 10.2.23.5 Fault Code 37, ID 365 - Device Changed (Same Type)

#### Cause

- The option board in slot E was replaced by a new one that you have used before in the same slot. The device is ready to be used.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the fault. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

## 10.2.24 Fault Code 38 - Device Added (Same Type)

### 10.2.24.1 Fault Code 38, ID 372 - Device Added (Same Type)

#### Cause

- An option board was put into slot B. You have used the option board before in the same slot.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is ready for use. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

### 10.2.24.2 Fault Code 38, ID 373 - Device Added (Same Type)

#### Cause

- An option board was put into slot C. You have used the option board before in the same slot.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is ready for use. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

### 10.2.24.3 Fault Code 38, ID 374 - Device Added (Same Type)

#### Cause

- An option board was put into slot D. You have used the option board before in the same slot.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is ready for use. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

### 10.2.24.4 Fault Code 38, ID 375 - Device Added (Same Type)

#### Cause

- An option board was put into slot E. You have used the option board before in the same slot.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is ready for use. The drive starts to use the old parameter settings.

## 10.2.25 Fault Code 39 - Device Removed

### 10.2.25.1 Fault Code 39, ID 382 - Device Removed

#### Cause

- An option board was removed from slot A or B.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is not available. Reset the fault.

### 10.2.25.2 Fault Code 39, ID 383 - Device Removed

#### Cause

- An option board was removed from slot C.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is not available. Reset the fault.

### 10.2.25.3 Fault Code 39, ID 384 - Device Removed

#### Cause

- An option board was removed from slot D.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is not available. Reset the fault.

### 10.2.25.4 Fault Code 39, ID 385 - Device Removed

#### Cause

- An option board was removed from slot E.

### Troubleshooting

- The device is not available. Reset the fault.

## 10.2.26 Fault Code 40 - Device Unknown

### 10.2.26.1 Fault Code 40, ID 390 - Device Unknown

#### Cause

- An unknown device was connected (the power unit/option board).
- The device can be unknown because of, for example, missing configuration values.

#### Troubleshooting

- The device is not available. If the fault occurs again, ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

## 10.2.27 Fault Code 41 - IGBT Temperature

### 10.2.27.1 Fault Code 41, ID 400 - IGBT Temperature

#### Cause

The calculated IGBT temperature is too high.

- too high a motor load
- too high an ambient temperature
- hardware malfunction

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the parameter settings.
- Examine the actual amount and flow of cooling air.
- Check the ambient temperature.
- Examine the heatsink for dust.
- Make sure that the switching frequency is not too high in relation to the ambient temperature and the motor load.
- Check the cooling fan.
- Make an identification run.

## 10.2.28 Fault Code 43 - Encoder Fault

### 10.2.28.1 Fault Code 43, ID 420 - Encoder Fault

#### Cause

- Problem detected in the encoder signals.
- Encoder 1 channel A is missing.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the encoder connections.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.

### 10.2.28.2 Fault Code 43, ID 421 - Encoder Fault

#### Cause

- Problem detected in the encoder signals.
- Encoder 1 channel B is missing.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder connections.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.

**10.2.28.3 Fault Code 43, ID 422 - Encoder Fault****Cause**

- Problem detected in the encoder signals.
- Encoder 1 channels A and B are both missing.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder connections.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.

**10.2.28.4 Fault Code 43, ID 423 - Encoder Fault****Cause**

The encoder is reversed.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder connections.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.

**10.2.28.5 Fault Code 43, ID 424 - Encoder Fault****Cause**

The encoder board is missing.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder connections.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.

**10.2.28.6 Fault Code 43, ID 425 - Encoder Fault****Cause**

Encoder speed deviation supervision.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder connections.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.
- Check the basic motor parameters.

**10.2.28.7 Fault Code 43, ID 426 - Encoder Fault****Cause**

- Encoder pulse count supervision.
- The estimated encoder pulse count/revolution is different from the value set by the parameter.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder pulse count/revolution value.
- Check the encoder coupling (gear ratio, friction wheel).
- Check the basic motor parameters.

**10.2.28.8 Fault Code 43, ID 427 - Encoder Fault****Cause**

- The maximum acceleration rate is exceeded.
- The motor acceleration calculated from the encoder speed is higher than the actual maximum of the application.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the encoder channel connections.
- Check the encoder board.
- Check the encoder and the encoder cable.
- Check the mechanical mounting of the encoder.
- Check the encoder frequency in open-loop mode.

**10.2.29 Fault Code 44 - Device Changed (Different Type)****10.2.29.1 Fault Code 44, ID 431 - Device Changed (Different Type)****Cause**

- There is a new power unit of a different type. Parameters are not available in the settings.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault. The drive reboots after you reset the fault.
- Set the power unit parameters again.

**10.2.29.2 Fault Code 44, ID 432 - Device Changed (Different Type)****Cause**

- The option board in slot B was replaced by a new one that you have not used before in the same slot. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault. Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.29.3 Fault Code 44, ID 433 - Device Changed (Different Type)****Cause**

- The option board in slot C was replaced by a new one that you have not used before in the same slot. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault. Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.29.4 Fault Code 44, ID 434 - Device Changed (Different Type)****Cause**

- The option board in slot D was replaced by a new one that you have not used before in the same slot. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault. Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.29.5 Fault Code 44, ID 435 - Device Changed (Different Type)****Cause**

- The option board in slot E was replaced by a new one that you have not used before in the same slot. No parameter settings are saved.



**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault. Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.29.6 Fault Code 44, ID 436 - Device Changed (Different Type)****Cause**

- The power configuration has changed. The power unit resets and initializes to a different configuration.

**Troubleshooting**

- Wait until the power unit is reset.

**10.2.30 Fault Code 45 - Device Added (Different Type)****10.2.30.1 Fault Code 45, ID 441 - Device Added (Different Type)****Cause**

- The control unit has connected to a power unit for the first time.
- There is a new power unit of a different type. Parameters are not available in the settings.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the fault. The drive reboots after you reset the fault.
- Set the power unit parameters again.

**10.2.30.2 Fault Code 45, ID 442 - Device Added (Different Type)****Cause**

- A new option board, that you have not used before in the same slot, was put in slot B. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.30.3 Fault Code 45, ID 443 - Device Added (Different Type)****Cause**

- A new option board, that you have not used before in the same slot, was put in slot C. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.30.4 Fault Code 45, ID 444 - Device Added (Different Type)****Cause**

- A new option board, that you have not used before in the same slot, was put in slot D. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.30.5 Fault Code 45, ID 445 - Device Added (Different Type)****Cause**

- A new option board, that you have not used before in the same slot, was put in slot E. No parameter settings are saved.

**Troubleshooting**

- Set the option board parameters again.

**10.2.31 Fault Code 46 - Real Time Clock****10.2.31.1 Fault Code 46, ID 662 - Real Time Clock****Cause**

- The voltage of the RTC battery is low.

## Troubleshooting

- Replace the battery.

## 10.2.32 Fault Code 47 - Software Update

## 10.2.32.1 Fault Code 47, ID 661 - Software Update

## Cause

- A software update is in progress.
- The software is updating from the control unit to the power unit.

## Troubleshooting

- No steps are necessary.

## 10.2.32.2 Fault Code 47, ID 663 - Software Updated

## Cause

- The software of the drive was updated, the full software package or an application.

## Troubleshooting

- No steps are necessary.

## 10.2.33 Fault Code 49 - Precharge

## 10.2.33.1 Fault Code 49, ID 901 - Pre-charge

## Cause

- Main contactor pilot relay open timeout.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the main contactor pilot relay wires.

## 10.2.33.2 Fault Code 49, ID 902 - Pre-charge

## Cause

- Main contactor open timeout.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the main contactor auxiliary contact wires.

## 10.2.33.3 Fault Code 49, ID 903 - Pre-charge

## Cause

- Pre-charge transformer contactor open timeout.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the pre-charge contactor auxiliary contact wires.

## 10.2.33.4 Fault Code 49, ID 904 - Pre-charge

## Cause

- DC link discharge timeout.
- DC link discharge time exceeded the expected discharge time.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the mains contactor state and pre-charge wires.

## 10.2.33.5 Fault Code 49, ID 905 - Pre-charge

## Cause

- Front-end fault clear timeout.

**Troubleshooting**

- If the INU controls the pre-charge, make sure that the AFE does not have a fault. If there is a fault, the pre-charge cannot continue.

**10.2.33.6 Fault Code 49, ID 906 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- DC-link overvoltage. The pre-charge control sensed an overvoltage.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the AFE control signal wires and that the fieldbus connection is active.

**10.2.33.7 Fault Code 49, ID 907 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- Front-end PLL phase lock lost. The PLL lost the synchronization during the operation.

**Troubleshooting**

- Make sure that there is no input phase or voltage missing during operation.

**10.2.33.8 Fault Code 49, ID 908 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The front end had a fault after it reached the ready state. This fault applies only when the INU controls the pre-charge.

**Troubleshooting**

- –

**10.2.33.9 Fault Code 49, ID 909 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The main contactor closes before the pre-charge control command.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the main contactor actuation circuit wires and the feedback wires.

**10.2.33.10 Fault Code 49, ID 910 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The main contactor pilot relay closes before the pre-charge control command.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the main contactor pilot relay wires.

**10.2.33.11 Fault Code 49, ID 911 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The pre-charge sequence was stopped before it was completed.
- The circuit breaker on the pre-charge circuit opened due to:
  - Overheating of the pre-charge unit transformer.
  - A short circuit in the DC link.

**Troubleshooting**

- If the sequence was not stopped manually, check the pre-charge circuit and protections (pre-charge transformer overcurrent or overtemperature).

**10.2.33.12 Fault Code 49, ID 912 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The DC-link charge rate is above the maximum value.
- The DC-link voltage time rate of change exceeded the expected maximum for the given power stage configuration.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the pre-charge transformer primary voltage.
- Check the cabling of the phase modules.
- Make sure that the drive configuration has not changed.

**10.2.33.13 Fault Code 49, ID 913 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The DC link charge rate is below the minimum value during the pre-charge.
- The DC-link voltage time rate of change is below the expected minimum for the given drive configuration.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the pre-charge transformer primary voltage.
- If the system has parallel power circuits, and therefore two pre-charge units, make sure that both pre-charge circuits have input power.
- Make sure that the drive configuration has not changed.

**10.2.33.14 Fault Code 49, ID 914 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- Pre-charge timeout during DC-link charging. The DC-link voltage rise time to the target voltage was too long.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the pre-charge transformer primary voltage and the tap configuration.
- If the system has parallel power circuits, and therefore two pre-charge units, make sure that both pre-charge circuits have input power.

**10.2.33.15 Fault Code 49, ID 915 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The DC-link voltage is too low to complete the synchronization.

**Troubleshooting**

- Make sure that the synchronization threshold voltage is sufficient.
- Make sure that the LC filter capacitance is not too large.

**10.2.33.16 Fault Code 49, ID 916 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- AFE cannot synchronize with the grid voltage in the approved time limit.

**Troubleshooting**

- Make sure that the grid voltage is stable or that the imbalance is not too high.

**10.2.33.17 Fault Code 49, ID 917 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- Main contactor pilot relay close timeout.
- The main contactor pilot relay did not close within the expected time.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the relay wiring.

**10.2.33.18 Fault Code 49, ID 918 - Pre-charge****Cause**

- The AFE lost synchronization with the grid while it waited for the mains contactor to close.

**Troubleshooting**

- –

### 10.2.33.19 Fault Code 49, ID 919 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- Main contactor close timeout.
- The main contactor did not close within the expected time.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the main contactor wiring and main contactor pilot wiring.

### 10.2.33.20 Fault Code 49, ID 920 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- The main contactor opened during the DC stabilization phase.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the main contactor wiring and main contactor pilot wiring.

### 10.2.33.21 Fault Code 49, ID 921 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- The front end could not make the DC-link voltage stable in the necessary time.
- The AFE was unable to commit to DC voltage control mode within the allotted time.

#### Troubleshooting

- Make sure that the grid voltage feedback configuration is correct (line or phase voltage measurement).
- Make sure that the feedback agrees with the AFE phase order.
- Make sure that the phase shift of the potential transformer is accounted for in the PLL adaptation angle parameter.

### 10.2.33.22 Fault Code 49, ID 922 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- The AFE was stopped while the INU was in operation.

#### Troubleshooting

- Always stop the INU before shutting down the AFE.

### 10.2.33.23 Fault Code 49, ID 923 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- The front end could not keep up the DC-link voltage stabilization.
- AFE or DFE voltage regulation could not be maintained.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the DC voltage control parameters and the synchronous current controller parameters.

### 10.2.33.24 Fault Code 49, ID 924 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- Parameter settings changed after the pre-charge sequence was activated.

#### Troubleshooting

- Do not change the pre-charge configuration after starting the pre-charge sequence.

### 10.2.33.25 Fault Code 49, ID 925 - Pre-charge

#### Cause

- The parameter settings are not valid.

#### Troubleshooting

- Do not select the test modes "disable mains contactor" and "dry run" at the same time.

#### 10.2.33.26 Fault Code 49, ID 926 - Pre-charge

##### Cause

- Test mode activated while grid voltage is connected.

##### Troubleshooting

- Do not select the "dry run" test mode while grid voltage is connected.

#### 10.2.33.27 Fault Code 49, ID 927 - Pre-charge

##### Cause

- The INU had a fault during the pre-charge sequence.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the INU status.

#### 10.2.33.28 Fault Code 49, ID 928 - Pre-charge

##### Cause

- The pre-charge transformer contactor closed unexpectedly after the pre-charge sequence was completed.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the pre-charge contactor wiring.

#### 10.2.33.29 Fault Code 49, ID 930 - Pre-charge

##### Cause

- Breaker enable was lost while the precharge output was active.

##### Troubleshooting

- –

#### 10.2.34 Fault Code 50 - AI Low Fault

##### 10.2.34.1 Fault Code 50, ID 1050 - AI Low Fault

##### Cause

- The used analog input signal has gone below 50% of the minimum signal range.
- A control cable is broken or loose.
- A signal source has failed.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the control cable connection.
- Check the analog input circuit and signals.
- Replace the defective parts.
- Make sure that parameter AI1 Signal Range is set correctly.

#### 10.2.35 Fault Code 51 - Device External Fault

##### 10.2.35.1 Fault Code 51, ID 1051 - Device External Fault

##### Cause

- Digital input fault.
- The digital input signal that is set with parameter **Ext Fault Close** (ID 405) or **Ext Fault Open** (ID 406) was activated.

##### Troubleshooting

- This is a user-defined fault.
- Check the digital inputs and schematics.
- Remove the fault situation on external device.

## 10.2.36 Fault Code 52 - Keypad Communication Fault

### 10.2.36.1 Fault Code 52, ID 1052 - Keypad Communication Fault

#### Cause

- The connection between the control panel and the drive is defective.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the control panel connection and the control panel cable if you have it.

### 10.2.36.2 Fault Code 52, ID 1352 - Keypad Communication Fault

#### Cause

- The connection between the control panel and the drive is defective.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the control panel connection and the control panel cable if you have it.

## 10.2.37 Fault Code 53 - Fieldbus Communication Fault

### 10.2.37.1 Fault Code 53, ID 1053 - Fieldbus Communication Fault

#### Cause

- The data connection between the fieldbus master and the fieldbus board is defective.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the installation and fieldbus master.

### 10.2.37.2 Fault Code 53, ID 1054 - Redundant Switchover

#### Cause

- The data connection between controlling fieldbus and the drive has timed out. Redundant control has changed the controlling fieldbus connection.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the installation and the communication cables.

### 10.2.37.3 Fault Code 53, ID 1055 - Redundant Timeout

#### Cause

- The data connection between controlling fieldbus protocols and the drive has timed out.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the installation and the communication cables.

## 10.2.38 Fault Code 54 - Slot Fault

### 10.2.38.1 Fault Code 54, ID 1354 - Slot A fault

#### Cause

- A defective option board or slot.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the board and the slot.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.38.2 Fault Code 54, ID 1454 - Slot B fault

#### Cause

- A defective option board or slot.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the board and the slot.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.38.3 Fault Code 54, ID 1554 - Slot C fault****Cause**

- A defective option board or slot.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the board and the slot.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.38.4 Fault Code 54, ID 1654 - Slot D fault****Cause**

- A defective option board or slot.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the board and the slot.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.38.5 Fault Code 54, ID 1754 - Slot E fault****Cause**

- A defective option board or slot.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the board and the slot.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

**10.2.39 Fault Code 57 - Identification****10.2.39.1 Fault Code 57, ID 1057 - Identification****Cause**

- There was a failure in the identification run.

**Troubleshooting**

- Make sure that the motor is connected to the drive.
- Make sure that there is no load on the motor shaft.
- Make sure that the start command is not removed before the identification run is complete.

**10.2.39.2 Fault Code 57, ID 1157 - Identification****Cause**

- During the identification run, drive was not able to reach required frequency reference.

**Troubleshooting**

- Make sure that minimum and maximum frequency references are set correctly. Too low maximum frequency can prevent drive from reaching required frequency.

**10.2.39.3 Fault Code 57, ID 1257 - Identification****Cause**

- During the identification run, drive was not able to reach required frequency reference.

**Troubleshooting**

- Make sure that acceleration time is set correctly. Too long acceleration time can prevent drive from reaching required frequency in 40 seconds.



#### 10.2.39.4 Fault Code 57, ID 1357 - Identification

##### Cause

- During the identification run, drive was not able to reach required frequency reference.

##### Troubleshooting

- Make sure that current, torque, and power limits of the drive are set correctly. Too low limit settings can prevent drive from reaching required frequency.

#### 10.2.40 Fault Code 58 - Mechanical Brake

##### 10.2.40.1 Fault Code 58, ID 1058 - Mechanical Brake

##### Cause

- The actual status of the mechanical brake is different from the control signal for longer than the value of *Brake Fault Delay* (ID 352).

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the status and connections of the mechanical brake.
- See parameter *Mech. Brake Feedback* (ID1210) and Mechanical brake parameter group.

#### 10.2.41 Fault Code 59 - Communication

##### 10.2.41.1 Fault Code 59, ID 590 - Communication

##### Cause

- The Source2 unit cannot connect to the Source3 unit.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the power unit connections.

#### 10.2.42 Fault Code 61 - Speed Error Fault

##### 10.2.42.1 Fault Code 61, ID 1061 - Speed Error Fault

##### Cause

- The difference between encoder frequency and output frequency exceeds the fault limit.

##### Troubleshooting

- Check the encoder and encoder connections.

#### 10.2.43 Fault Code 63 - Quick Stop

##### 10.2.43.1 Fault Code 63, ID 1063 - Quick Stop Fault

##### Cause

- The quick stop function is activated by digital input signal or from fieldbus.

##### Troubleshooting

- Find the cause for the quick stop activation. After you find it, correct it. Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- See parameter *Quick Stop Activation* (ID 1213) and the quick stop parameters.

##### 10.2.43.2 Fault Code 63, ID 1363 - Quick Stop Alarm

##### Cause

- The quick stop function is activated by digital input signal or from fieldbus.

##### Troubleshooting

- Find the cause for the quick stop activation. After you find it, correct it. Reset the fault and restart the drive.
- See parameter *Quick Stop Activation* (ID 1213) and the quick stop parameters.

## 10.2.44 Fault Code 65 - PC Communication Fault

### 10.2.44.1 Fault Code 65, ID 1065 - PC Communication Fault

#### Cause

- The data connection between the PC and the drive is defective.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the installation, cable, and terminals between the PC and the drive.

## 10.2.45 Fault Code 66 - Thermistor Input Fault

### 10.2.45.1 Fault Code 66, ID 1366 - Thermistor Input 1 Fault

#### Cause

- The motor temperature increased.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cooling and the load.
- Check the thermistor connection.
- If the thermistor input is not used, you have to short-circuit it.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.45.2 Fault Code 66, ID 1466 - Thermistor Input 2 Fault

#### Cause

- The motor temperature increased.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cooling and the load.
- Check the thermistor connection.
- If the thermistor input is not used, you have to short-circuit it.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

### 10.2.45.3 Fault Code 66, ID 1566 - Thermistor Input 3 Fault

#### Cause

- The motor temperature increased.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the motor cooling and the load.
- Check the thermistor connection.
- If the thermistor input is not used, you have to short-circuit it.
- Ask for instructions from your nearest distributor.

## 10.2.46 Fault Code 67 - Module Test Stand

### 10.2.46.1 Fault Code 67, ID 672 - Module Test Stand

#### Cause

- Fault ID and code reservation for internal production module test stand. Specific fault information is passed in Source2 and is readable via MtsErrorWord\_fi.
- Not for external/customer use!

#### Troubleshooting

-

## 10.2.47 Fault Code 68 - Maintenance Counter

### 10.2.47.1 Fault Code 68, ID 1301 - Maintenance Counter 1 Alarm

#### Cause

- The value of the maintenance counter is higher than the alarm limit.

#### Troubleshooting

- Do the necessary maintenance.
- Reset the counter. See parameter *Maintenance Counter 1 Reset* (ID 490).

### 10.2.47.2 Fault Code 68, ID 1302 - Maintenance Counter 1 Fault

#### Cause

- The value of the maintenance counter is higher than the fault limit.

#### Troubleshooting

- Do the necessary maintenance.
- Reset the counter. See parameter *Maintenance Counter 1 Reset* (ID 490).

## 10.2.48 Fault Code 69 - Fieldbus Mapping Error

### 10.2.48.1 Fault Code 69, ID 1310 - Fieldbus Mapping Error

#### Cause

- The ID number that is used to map the values to Fieldbus Process Data Out is not valid.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the parameters in the Fieldbus Data menu.

### 10.2.48.2 Fault Code 69, ID 1311 - Fieldbus Mapping Error

#### Cause

- It is not possible to convert 1 or more values for Fieldbus Process Data Out.
- The type of the value is undefined.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the parameters in the Fieldbus Data menu.

### 10.2.48.3 Fault Code 69, ID 1312 - Fieldbus Mapping Error

#### Cause

- There is an overflow when the values for Fieldbus Process Data Out (16-bit) are mapped and converted.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the parameters in the Fieldbus Data menu.

## 10.2.49 Fault Code 76 - Start Prevented

### 10.2.49.1 Fault Code 76, ID 1076 - Start Prevented

#### Cause

- The start command is blocked to prevent the accidental rotation of the motor during the first power-up.

#### Troubleshooting

- Reset the drive to start the correct operation. The parameter settings tell if it is necessary to restart the drive.

## 10.2.50 Fault Code 77 - >5 Connections

### 10.2.50.1 Fault Code 77, ID 1077 - > 5 Connections

#### Cause

- There are more than 5 active fieldbus or PC tool connections. You can use only 5 connections at the same time.

#### Troubleshooting

- Leave 5 active connections. Remove the other connections.

## 10.2.51 Fault Code 78 - Identification Ongoing

### 10.2.51.1 Fault Code 78, ID 1078 - Identification Ongoing

#### Cause

- The drive is running the identification for the motor.

#### Troubleshooting

- You can stop the identification run at any time by removing the start command. When the identification run is completed, a new start command is needed to start the drive.

## 10.2.52 Fault Code 80 - Fieldbus Watchdog Fault

### 10.2.52.1 Fault Code 80, ID 1080 - FB Watchdog Fault

#### Cause

- There is no communication between the fieldbus master and the fieldbus follower.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the installation and the fieldbus master.

## 10.2.53 Fault Code 84 - Overspeed Error

### 10.2.53.1 Fault Code 84, ID 1084 - Overspeed Error

#### Cause

- The motor speed is over the speed limit.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

## 10.2.54 Fault Code 111 - Temperature Input Fault 1

### 10.2.54.1 Fault Code 111, ID 1315 - Temperature Fault 1

#### Cause

- 1 or more of the temperature input signals (set in parameter ID 739) is higher than the alarm limit (parameter ID 741).

#### Troubleshooting

- Find the cause of the temperature rise.
- Check the parameters in the *Temperature Input Fault 1* menu.
- Check the temperature sensor and connections.
- If no sensor is connected, make sure that the temperature input is hardwired.
- See the option board manual for more data.

### 10.2.54.2 Fault Code 111, ID 1316 - Temperature Fault 1

#### Cause

- 1 or more of the temperature input signals (set in parameter ID 739) is higher than the fault limit (parameter ID 742).

## Troubleshooting

- Find the cause of the temperature rise.
- Check the parameters in the *Temperature Input Fault 1* menu.
- Check the temperature sensor and connections.
- If no sensor is connected, make sure that the temperature input is hardwired.
- See the option board manual for more data.

## 10.2.55 Fault Code 112 - Temperature Input Fault 2

## 10.2.55.1 Fault Code 112, ID 1317 - Temperature Fault 2

## Cause

- 1 or more of the temperature input signals (set in parameter ID 763) is higher than the alarm limit (parameter ID 764).

## Troubleshooting

- Find the cause of the temperature rise.
- Check the parameters in the *Temperature Input Fault 2* menu.
- Check the temperature sensor and connections.
- If no sensor is connected, make sure that the temperature input is hardwired.
- See the option board manual for more data.

## 10.2.55.2 Fault Code 112, ID 1318 - Temperature Fault 2

## Cause

- 1 or more of the temperature input signals (set in parameter ID 763) is higher than the fault limit (parameter ID 765).

## Troubleshooting

- Find the cause of the temperature rise.
- Check the parameters in the *Temperature Input Fault 2* menu.
- Check the temperature sensor and connections.
- If no sensor is connected, make sure that the temperature input is hardwired.
- See the option board manual for more data.

## 10.2.56 Fault Code 114 - User Defined Fault 1

## 10.2.56.1 Fault Code 114, ID 1114 - User Defined Fault 1

## Cause

- This user-defined fault was activated either from a digital input, fieldbus, the drive customizer, or a time channel.

## Troubleshooting

- See parameter menu *User Defined Fault 1* to find out the source of the fault activation.

## 10.2.57 Fault Code 115 - User Defined Fault 2

## 10.2.57.1 Fault Code 115, ID 1115 - User Defined Fault 2

## Cause

- This user-defined fault was activated either from a digital input, fieldbus, the drive customizer, or a time channel.

## Troubleshooting

- See parameter menu *User Defined Fault 2* to find out the source of the fault activation.

## 10.2.58 Fault Code 200 - Precharge

### 10.2.58.1 Fault Code 200, ID 1721 - MCB/Interlock Fault

#### Cause

- MCB is lost or interlock is required for power-on.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.2 Fault Code 200, ID 1722 - Leak Detector Fault

#### Cause

- Leak detection issue.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.3 Fault Code 200, ID 1723 - Overtemp in LCL

#### Cause

- Overtemperature detected in LCL component.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.4 Fault Code 200, ID 1724 - Cooling Fault

#### Cause

- Loss of "Cooling OK" from heat exchanger, or loss of cabinet cooling.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.5 Fault Code 200, ID 1725 - Cooling Ok Timeout

#### Cause

- The cooling system did not reach OK status in time.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.6 Fault Code 200, ID 1726 - Precharge Contactor Close Timeout

#### Cause

- Precharge contactor did not close within the timeout period after the close command.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.7 Fault Code 200, ID 1727 - Loss of Precharge Permissive

#### Cause

- Unexpected loss of "Precharge permissive".

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.8 Fault Code 200, ID 1728 - Loss of MX Permissive

#### Cause

- Loss of breaker (MX) permissive.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.9 Fault Code 200, ID 1729 - GSW/UFES Fault

#### Cause

- GSW or UFES is in the wrong position.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.58.10 Fault Code 200, ID 1731 - DC Cap Overpressure

#### Cause

- Overpressure detected in the DC-link capacitors.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.59 Fault Code 201 - High Humidity/Temperature

#### 10.2.59.1 Fault Code 201, ID 1730 - High Humidity/Temperature

##### Cause

- The humidity or temperature switches indicate a high condition.

##### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.60 Fault Code 202 - Encoder

#### 10.2.60.1 Fault Code 202, ID 1740 - Encoder Difference

##### Cause

- Encoder measurement difference exceeds 2x limit during operation.

##### Troubleshooting

- –

#### 10.2.60.2 Fault Code 202, ID 1741 - Encoder Difference

##### Cause

- Encoder measurement difference exceeds the limit at overcurrent/overvoltage fault.

##### Troubleshooting

- –

#### 10.2.60.3 Fault Code 202, ID 1742 - Fall Back to OL

##### Cause

- Overcurrent or overvoltage fault occurred during transition from closed loop to open loop.

##### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.61 Fault Code 203 - STO Fault

#### 10.2.61.1 Fault Code 203, ID 1735 - STO Fault

##### Cause

- The STO input is active.

##### Troubleshooting

- –

## 10.2.62 Fault Code 204 - Output Filter

### 10.2.62.1 Fault Code 204, ID 1744 - Output Filter

#### Cause

- A component in the output filter has overtemperature or overpressure.

#### Troubleshooting

- –

## 10.2.63 Fault Code 205 - Coolant Temperature

### 10.2.63.1 Fault Code 205, ID 1745 - Coolant Temperature

#### Cause

- Coolant temperature  $\geq 70.0\text{ °C}$  (158 °F).

#### Troubleshooting

- –

### 10.2.63.2 Fault Code 205, ID 1745 - Coolant Temperature

#### Cause

- Coolant temperature  $\leq -10.0\text{ °C}$  (14 °F).

#### Troubleshooting

- –

## 10.2.64 Fault Code 300 - Unsupported

### 10.2.64.1 Fault Code 300, ID 700 - Unsupported

#### Cause

- The application is not compatible (it is unsupported).

#### Troubleshooting

- Replace the application.

### 10.2.64.2 Fault Code 300, ID 701 - Unsupported

#### Cause

- The option board or the slot is not compatible (it is unsupported).

#### Troubleshooting

- Remove the option board.



## 11 Specifications

### 11.1 Dimensions

The main dimensions of the VACON® 3000 Drive Kit components are given in this chapter. For more dimensions, see the 3D-models of the components, which are available for members of the Danfoss MVP Program®.

#### 11.1.1 Dimensions, Phase Module

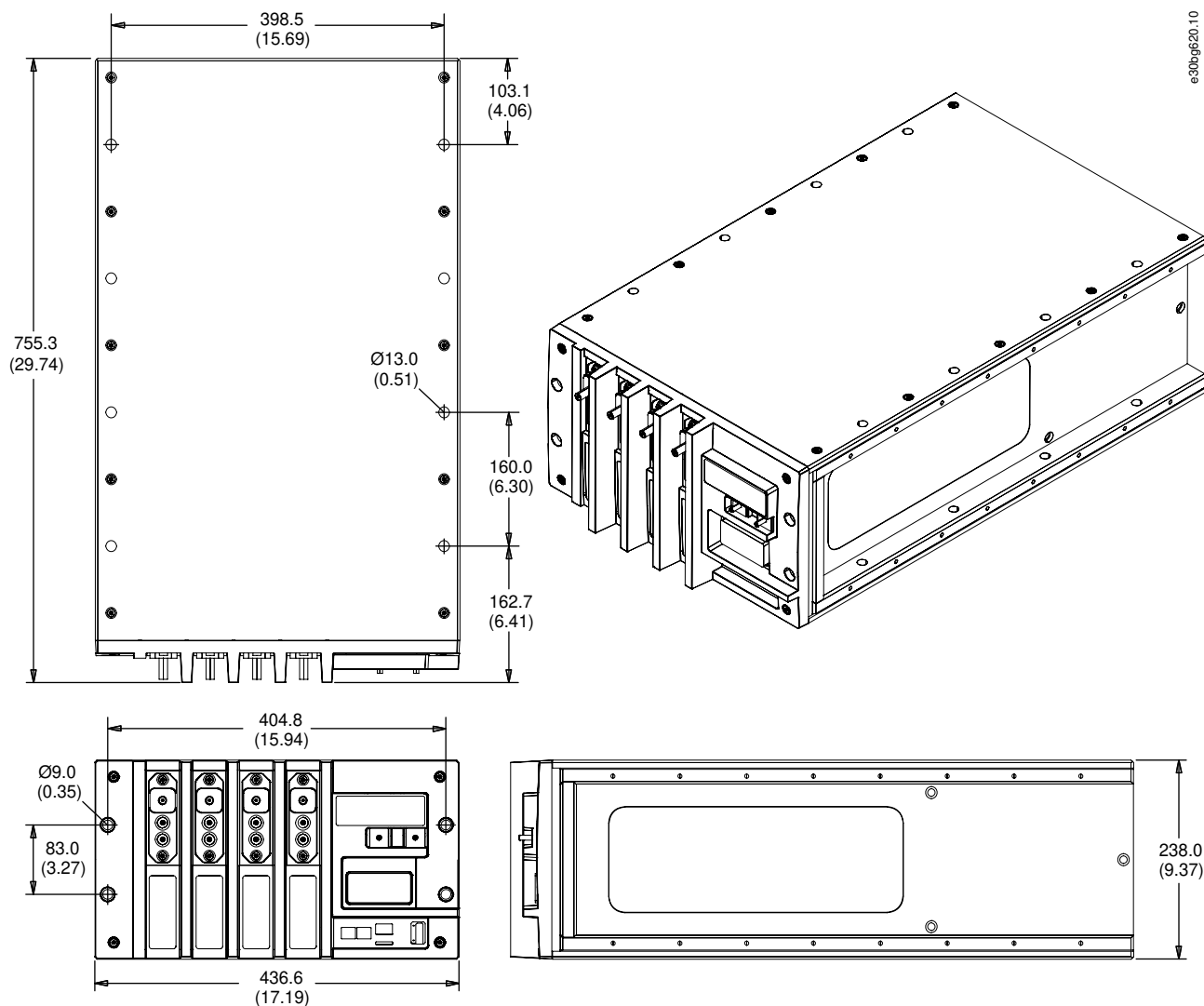


Illustration 114: VACON® 3000 Phase Module L20 Dimensions in mm (in)

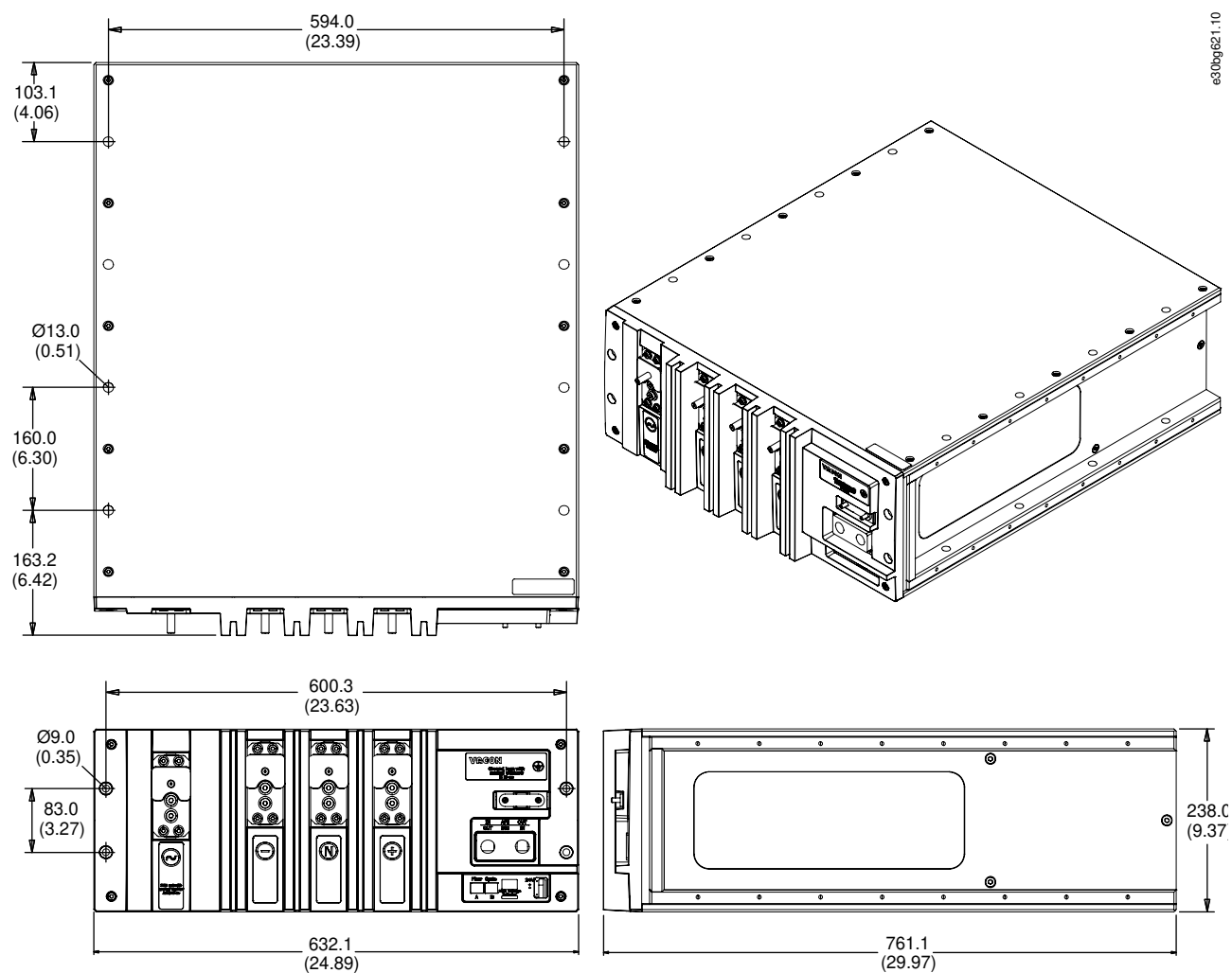


Illustration 115: VACON® 3000 Phase Module L30/H30 Dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.2 Dimensions, DFE Power Module

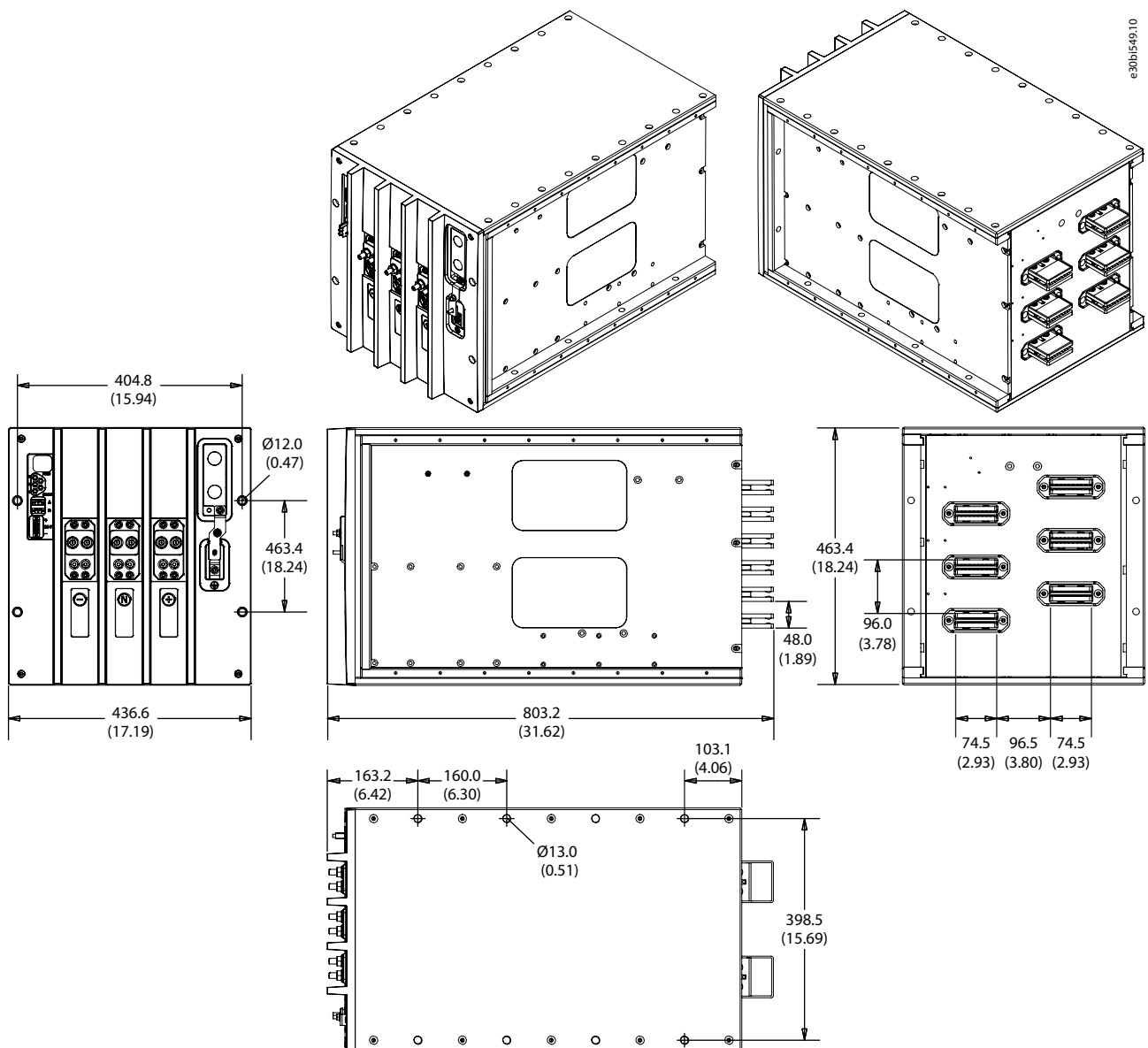


Illustration 116: VACON® 3000 DFE power module dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.3 Dimensions, Brake Chopper Unit

See the phase module dimensions in [11.1.1 Dimensions, Phase Module](#).

### 11.1.4 Dimensions, Control Unit

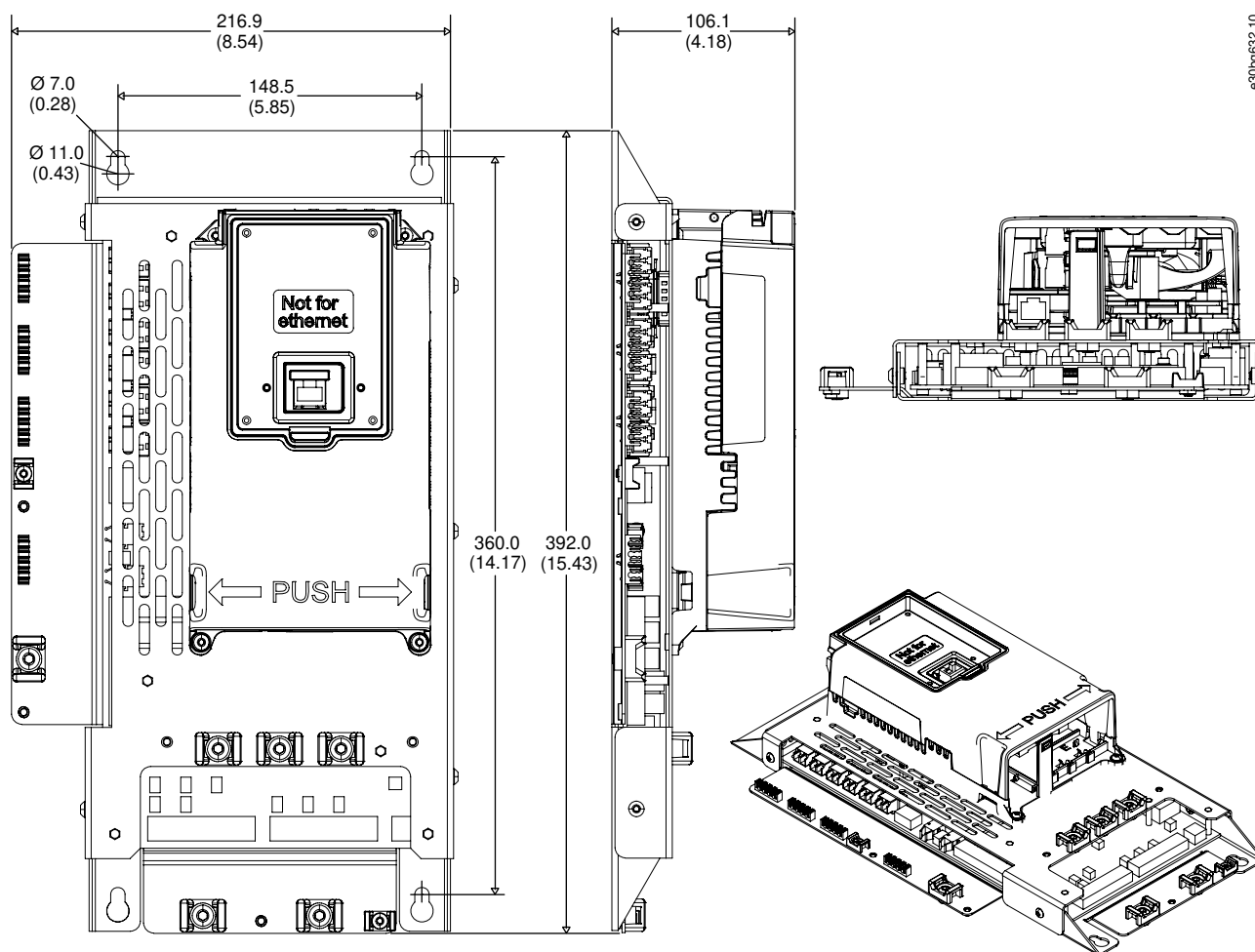


Illustration 117: VACON® 3000 Control Unit Dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.5 Dimensions, Auxiliary I/O Board

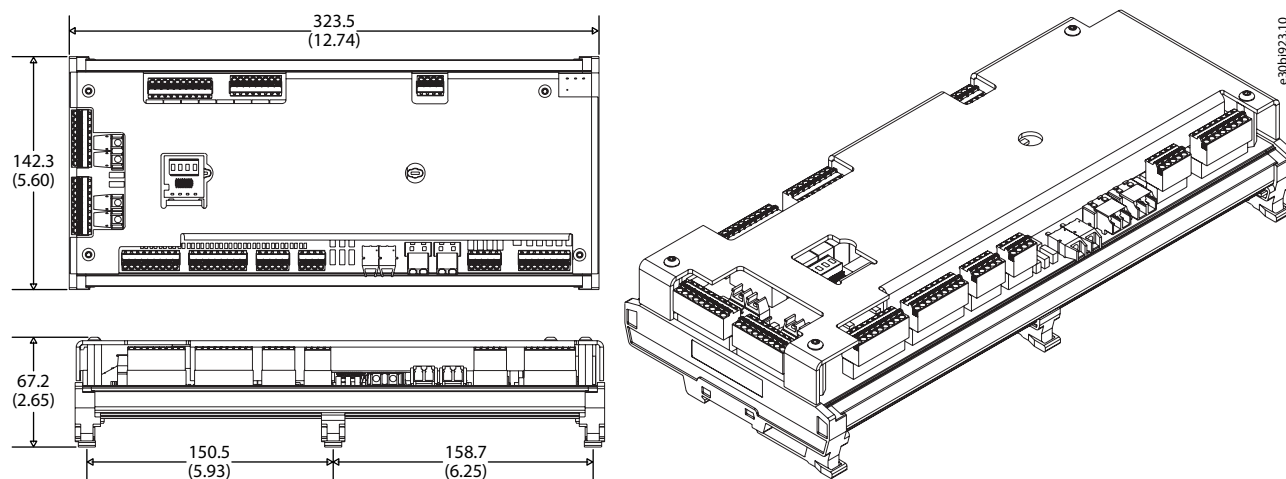


Illustration 118: VACON® 3000 Auxiliary I/O Board Dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.6 Dimensions, HCM Board

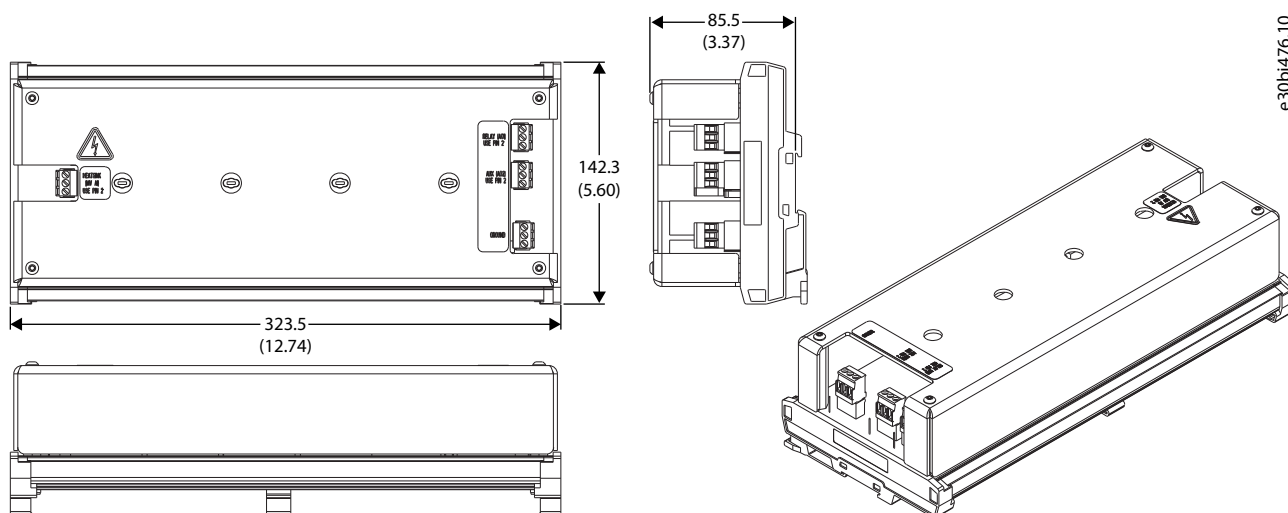


Illustration 119: VACON® 3000 HCM Board Dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.7 Dimensions, Pre-Charge Unit

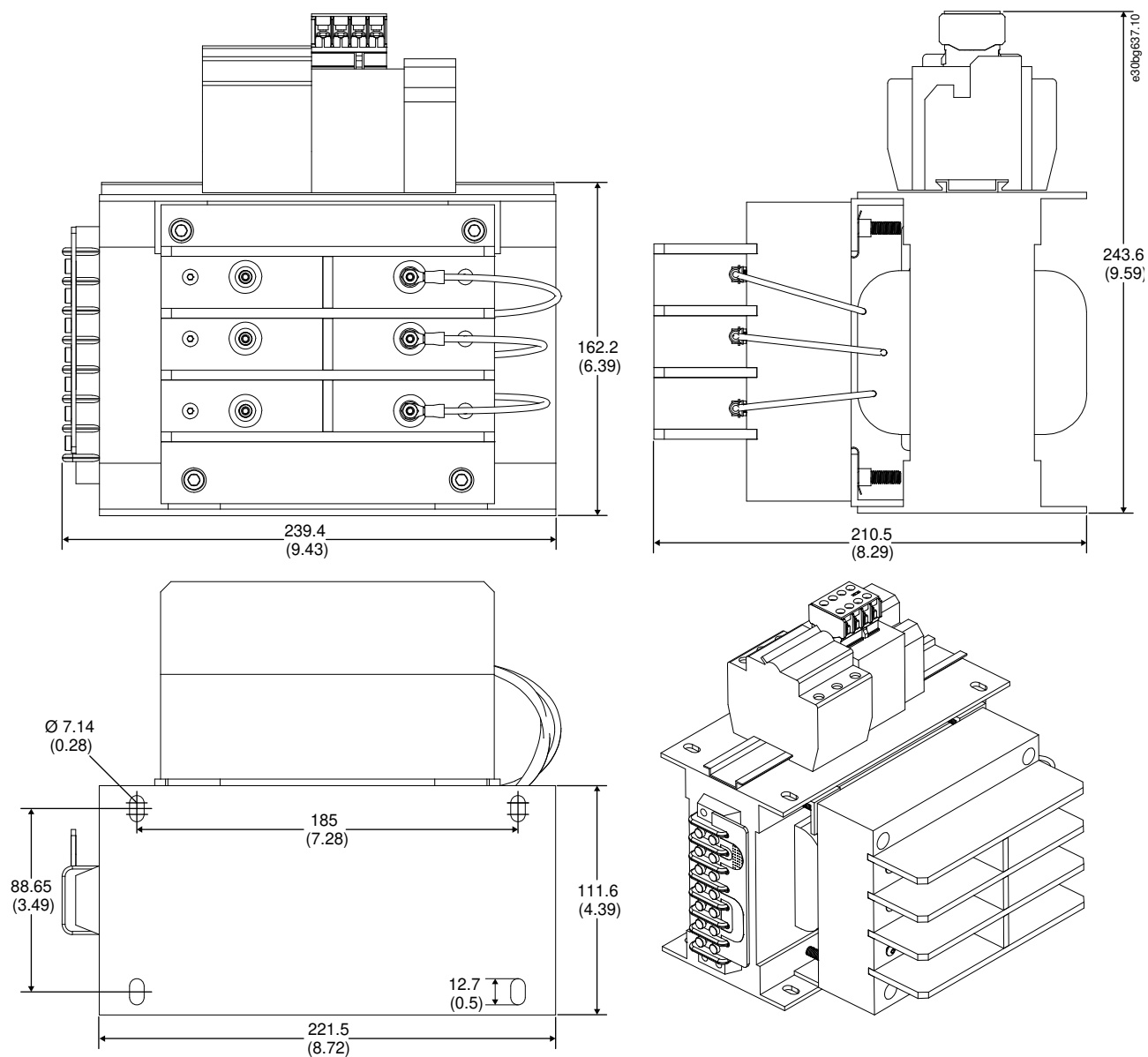


Illustration 120: VACON® 3000 Pre-Charge Unit Dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.8 Dimensions, LC Filter

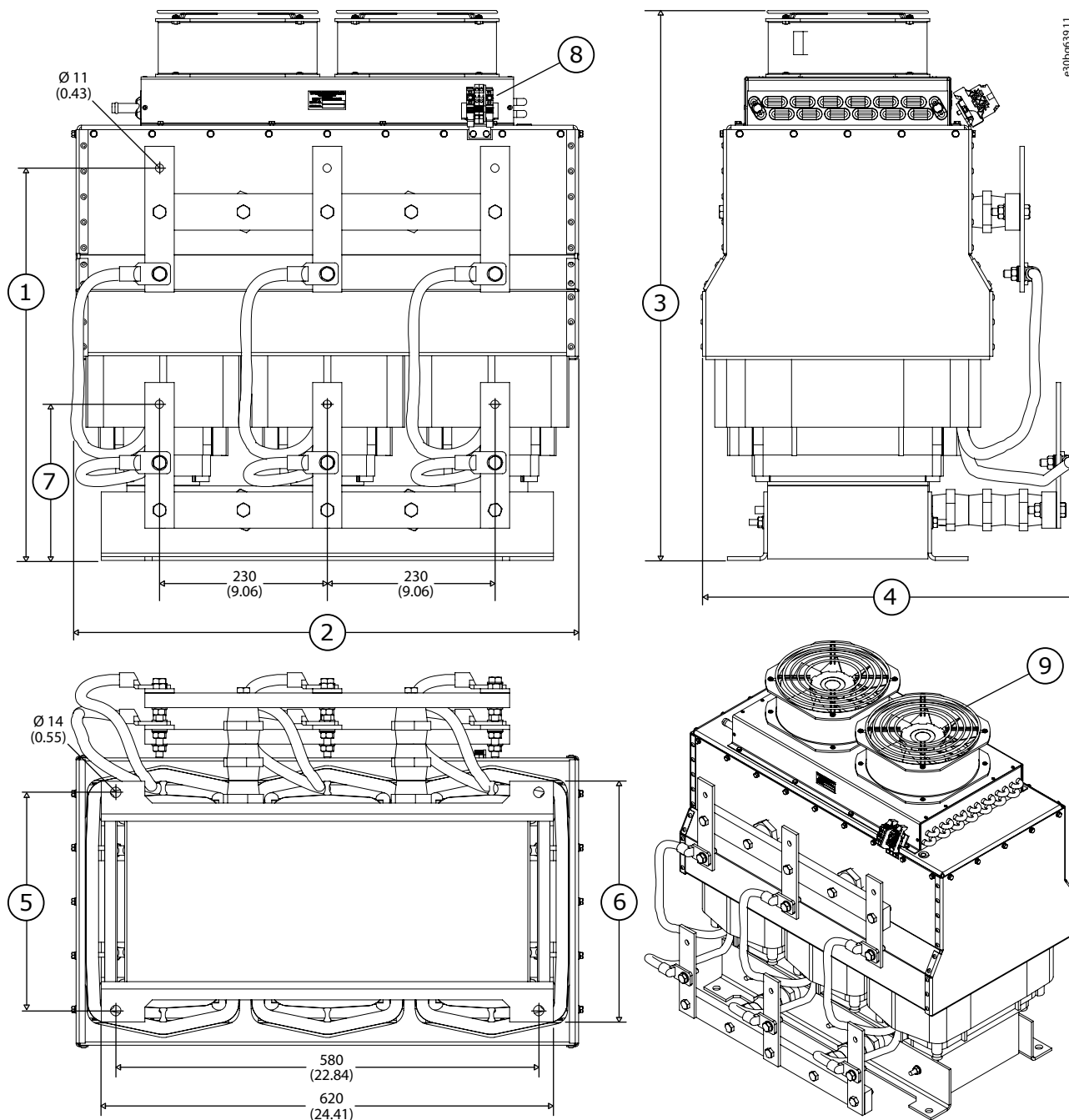


Illustration 121: VACON® 3000 AFE Side Input Inductor (LCV) Dimensions in mm (in)

1–7	Dimensions, see <a href="#">Table 55</a>	9	Fan grille (09418-2-4039, ebm papst)
8	Terminal block for thermal switch		

Table 55: VACON® 3000 AFE Side Input Inductor Dimensions 1–7

Type Code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4	Dim. 5	Dim. 6	Dim. 7
FLU-LCV-SSI- 425-3-HAF0	642 mm (25.3 in)	700 mm (27.6 in)	679 mm (26.7 in)	503 mm (19.8 in)	260 mm (10.2 in)	290 mm (11.4 in)	214 mm (8.4 in)
FLU-LCV-SSI- 425-3-HAF1 FLU-LCV-SSI- 425-3-HAF2			838 mm (33.0 in)				

Type Code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4	Dim. 5	Dim. 6	Dim. 7
FLU-LCV-HSI- 425-3- HAF0	658 mm (25.9 in)	700 mm (27.6 in)	697 mm (27.4 in)	503 mm (19.8 in)	260 mm (10.2 in)	290 mm (11.4 in)	230 mm (9.1 in)
FLU-LCV-HSI- 425-3- HAF1			854 mm (33.6 in)				
FLU-LCV-HSI- 425-3- HAF2							
FLU-LCV-SSI- 640-3- HAF0	594 mm (23.4 in)	701 mm (27.6 in)	829 mm (32.6 in)	499 mm (19.6 in)	300 mm (11.8 in)	330 mm (13.0 in)	169 mm (6.7 in)
FLU-LCV-SSI- 640-3- HAF1			960 mm (37.8 in)				
FLU-LCV-SSI- 640-3- HAF2							
FLU-LCV-HSI- 640-3- HAF0							
FLU-LCV-HSI- 640-3- HAF1							
FLU-LCV-HSI- 640-3- HAF2							
FLU-LCV-340-4- HAF0	388 mm (15.3 in)	701 mm (27.6 in)	614 mm (24.2 in)	505 mm (19.9 in)	300 mm (11.8 in)	330 mm (13.0 in)	167 mm (6.6 in)
FLU-LCV-340-4- HAF1			754 mm (29.7 in)				
FLU-LCV-340-4- HAF2							
FLU-LCV-SSI- 510-4- HAF0	559 mm (22.0 in)	689 mm (27.1 in)	616 mm (24.3 in)	513 mm (20.2 in)	298 mm (11.7 in)	328 mm (12.9 in)	235 mm (9.3 in)
FLU-LCV-SSI- 510-4- HAF1			775 mm (30.5 in)				
FLU-LCV-SSI- 510-4- HAF2							
FLU-LCV-HSI- 510-4- HAF0							
FLU-LCV-HSI- 510-4- HAF1							
FLU-LCV-HSI- 510-4- HAF2							



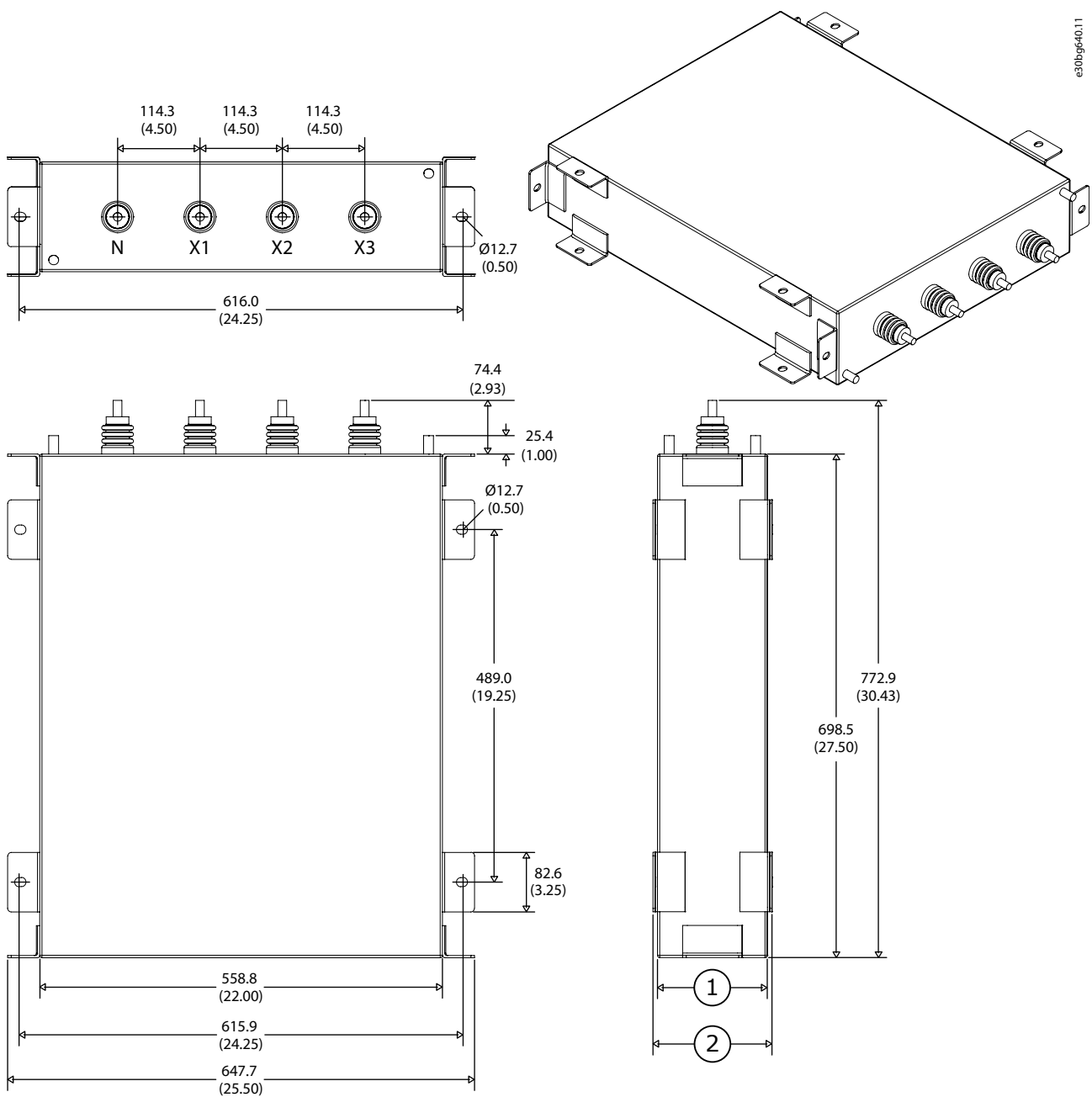


Illustration 122: VACON® 3000 Shunt Capacitor Dimensions in mm (in)

1, 2 See [Table 56](#)

Table 56: VACON® 3000 Shunt Capacitor Dimensions A and B

Type Code	Dimension 1	Dimension 2
FLU-CSH-43-4-HANA	92.2 mm (3.63 in)	104.9 mm (4.13 in)
FLU-CSH-100-4-HANA	152.4 mm (6.00 in)	165.1 mm (6.50 in)
FLU-CSH-125-4-HANA	174.8 mm (6.88 in)	187.5 mm (7.38 in)

### 11.1.9 Dimensions, Input Common-mode Filter

See the common-mode capacitor (CCM) dimensions in [11.1.10 Dimensions, Common-Mode Capacitor](#).

The inductors FLU-LCV-SSI-425-3-HAFX and FLU-LCV-SSI-510-4-HAFX are used as grid side input inductors in HSI type drives. See their dimensions in [11.1.8 Dimensions, LC Filter](#).

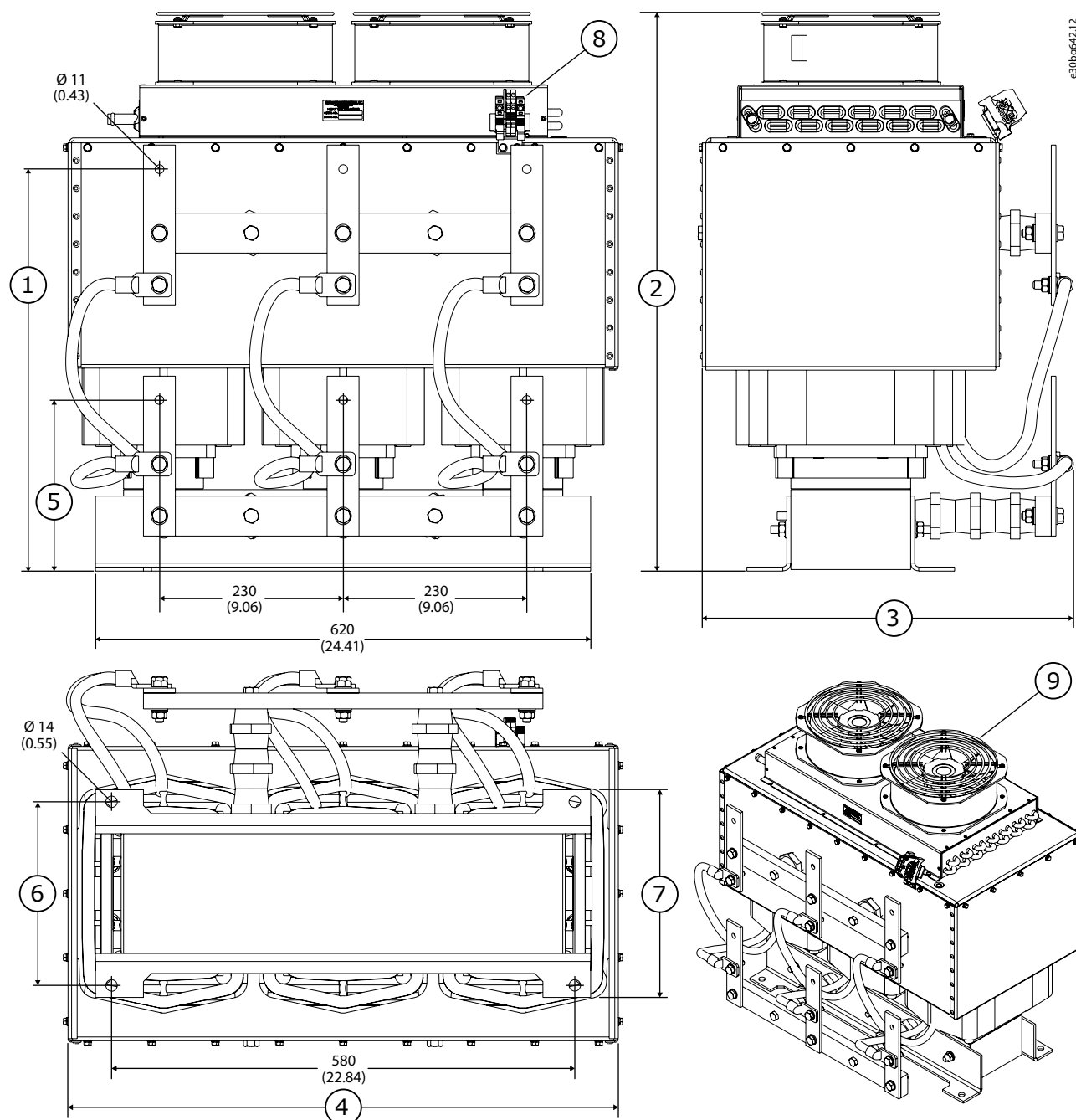


Illustration 123: VACON® 3000 Grid Side Input Inductor (LGI) Dimensions in mm (in)

1–7	Dimensions, see <a href="#">Table 57</a>	9	Fan grille (09418-2-4039, ebm papst)
8	Terminal block for thermal switch		

Table 57: VACON® 3000 Grid Side Input Inductor Dimensions 1–7

Type Code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4	Dim. 5	Dim. 6	Dim. 7
FLU-LGI-SSI-425-3-HAF0	561 mm (22.1 in)	596 mm (23.5 in)	420 mm (16.5 in)	650 mm (25.6 in)	214 mm (8.4 in)	230 mm (9.1 in)	260 mm (10.2 in)
FLU-LGI-SSI-425-3-HAF1 FLU-LGI-SSI-425-3-HAF2		757 mm (29.8 in)	470 mm (18.5 in)	700 mm (27.6 in)			

Type Code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4	Dim. 5	Dim. 6	Dim. 7
FLU-LCV-SSI-425-3-HAFX	See <a href="#">11.1.8 Dimensions, LC Filter</a> .						
FLU-LGI-SSI- 640-3- HAF0	410 mm (16.1 in)	636 mm (25.0 in)	518 mm (20.4 in)	700 mm (27.6 in)	169 mm (6.7 in)	300 mm (11.8 in)	330 mm (13.0 in)
FLU-LGI-SSI- 640-3- HAF1		860 mm (33.9 in)					
FLU-LGI-SSI- 640-3- HAF2							
FLU-LGI-HSI- 640-3- HAF0							
FLU-LGI-HSI- 640-3- HAF1							
FLU-LGI-HSI- 640-3- HAF2							
FLU-LGI-340-4-HAF0	363 mm (14.3 in)	589 mm (23.2 in)	388 mm (15.3 in)	718 mm (28.3 in)	167 mm (6.6 in)	229 mm (9.0 in)	257 mm (10.1 in)
FLU-LGI-340-4-HAF1		699 mm (27.5 in)					
FLU-LGI-340-4-HAF2							
FLU-LGI-SSI- 510-4- HAF0							
FLU-LGI-SSI- 510-4- HAF1							
FLU-LGI-SSI- 510-4- HAF2							
FLU-LCV-SSI- 510-4- HAF2	See <a href="#">11.1.8 Dimensions, LC Filter</a> .						

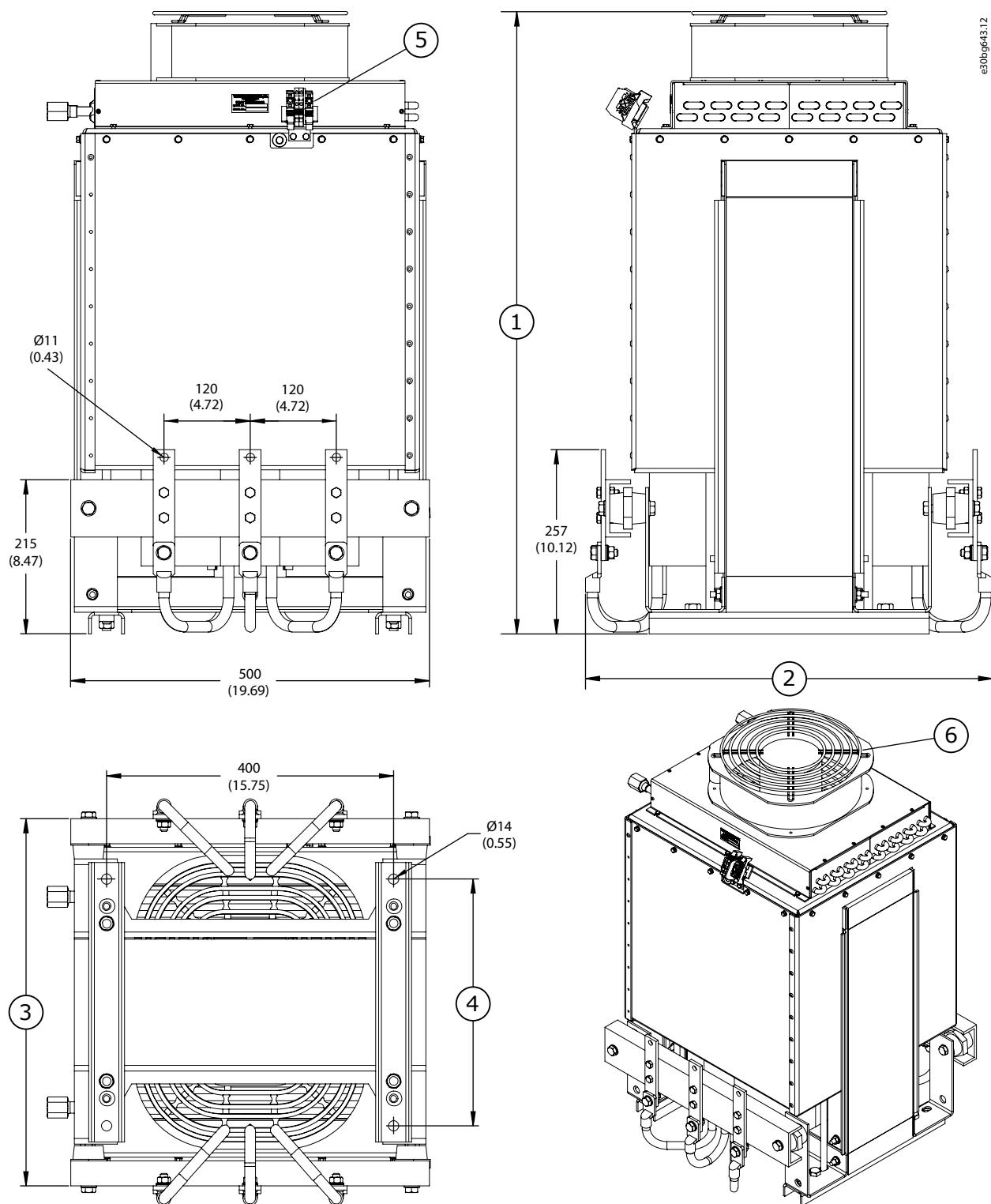


Illustration 124: VACON® 3000 Common-mode Inductor (LCM) Dimensions in mm (in)

- 1–4 Dimension, see [Table 58](#)
- 5 Terminal block for thermal switch

- 6 Fan grille (09418-2-4039, ebm papst)

Table 58: VACON® 3000 Common-mode Inductor Dimensions 1–4

Type Code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4
FLU-LCM-425-3-HAF0	812 mm (32.0 in)	568 mm (22.4 in)	512 mm (20.2 in)	344 mm (13.5 in)
FLU-LCM-425-3-HAF1 FLU-LCM-425-3-HAF2	978 mm (38.5 in)			
FLU-LCM-640-3-HAF0	822 mm (32.4 in)	608 mm (23.9 in)	552 mm (21.7 in)	384 mm (15.1 in)
FLU-LCM-640-3-HAF1 FLU-LCM-640-3-HAF2	1040 mm (40.9 in)			
FLU-LCM-340-4-HAF0	745 mm (29.3 in)	568 mm (22.4 in)	512 mm (20.2 in)	344 mm (13.5 in)
FLU-LCM-340-4-HAF1 FLU-LCM-340-4-HAF2	868 mm (34.2 in)			
FLU-LCM-510-4-HAF0	765 mm (30.1 in)	536 mm (21.1 in)	512 mm (20.2 in)	344 mm (13.5 in)
FLU-LCM-510-4-HAF1 FLU-LCM-510-4-HAF2	928 mm (36.5 in)			

#### 11.1.10 Dimensions, Common-Mode Capacitor

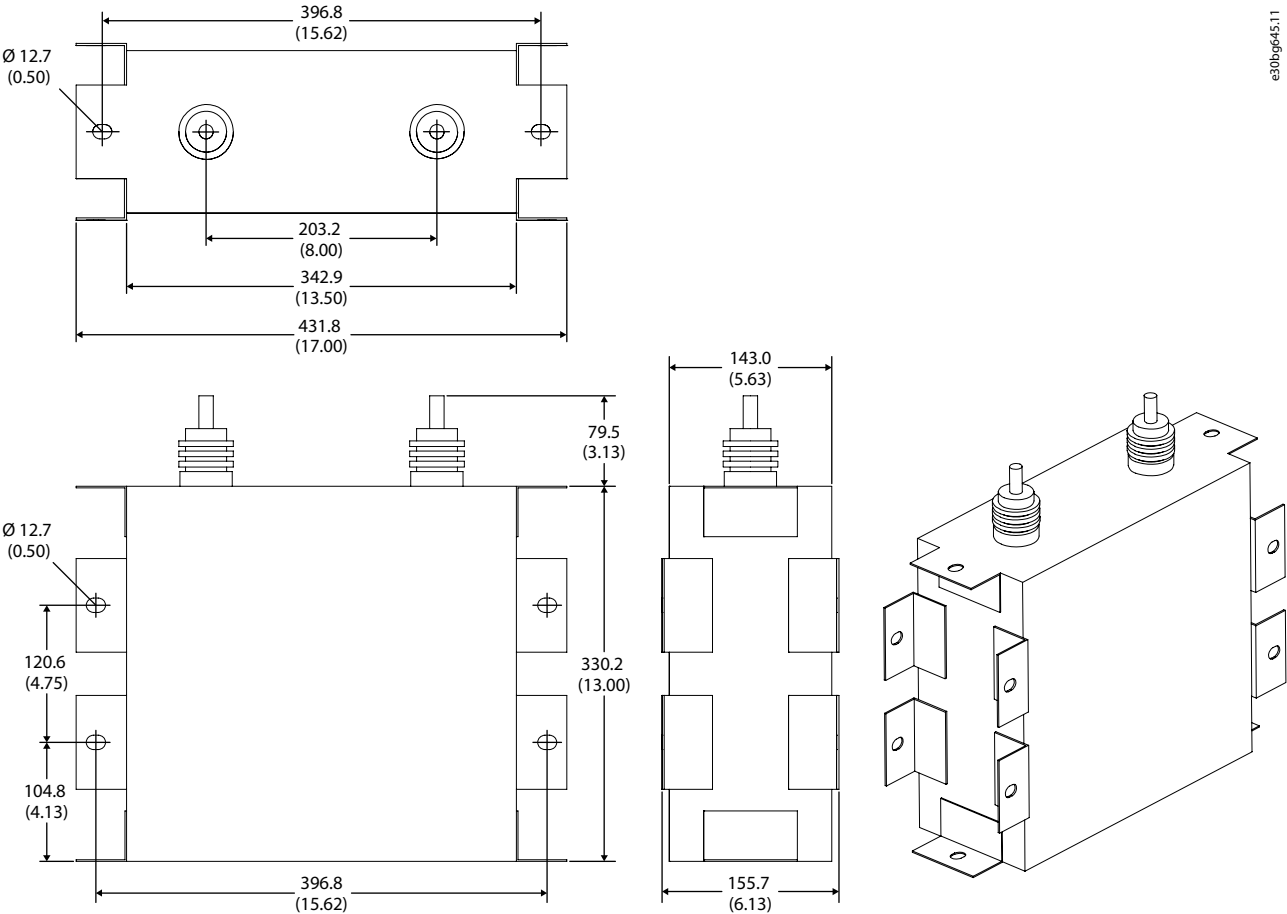


Illustration 125: VACON® 3000 Common-Mode Capacitor Dimensions in mm (in)

### 11.1.11 Dimensions, DC Capacitor for DFE

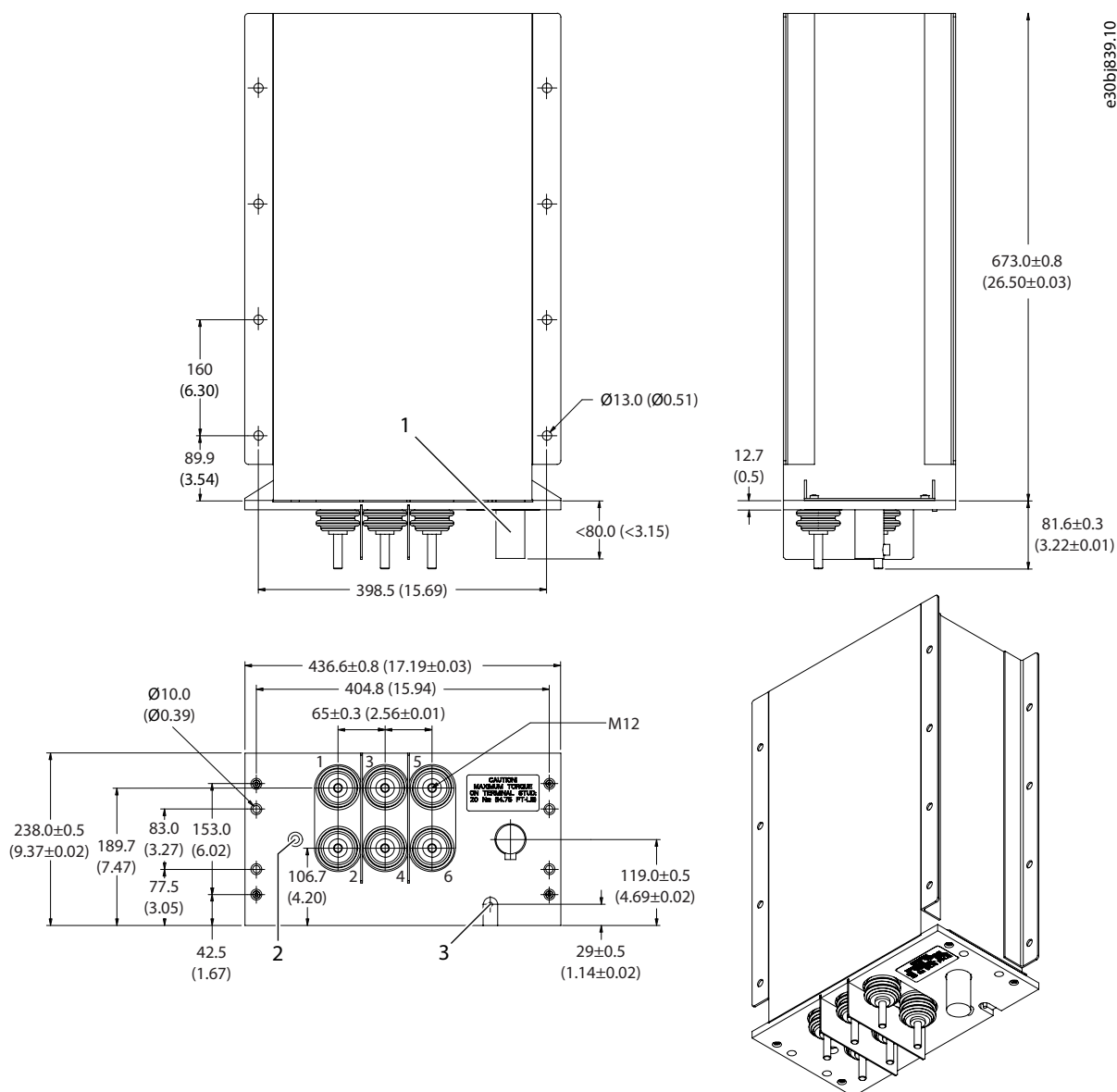
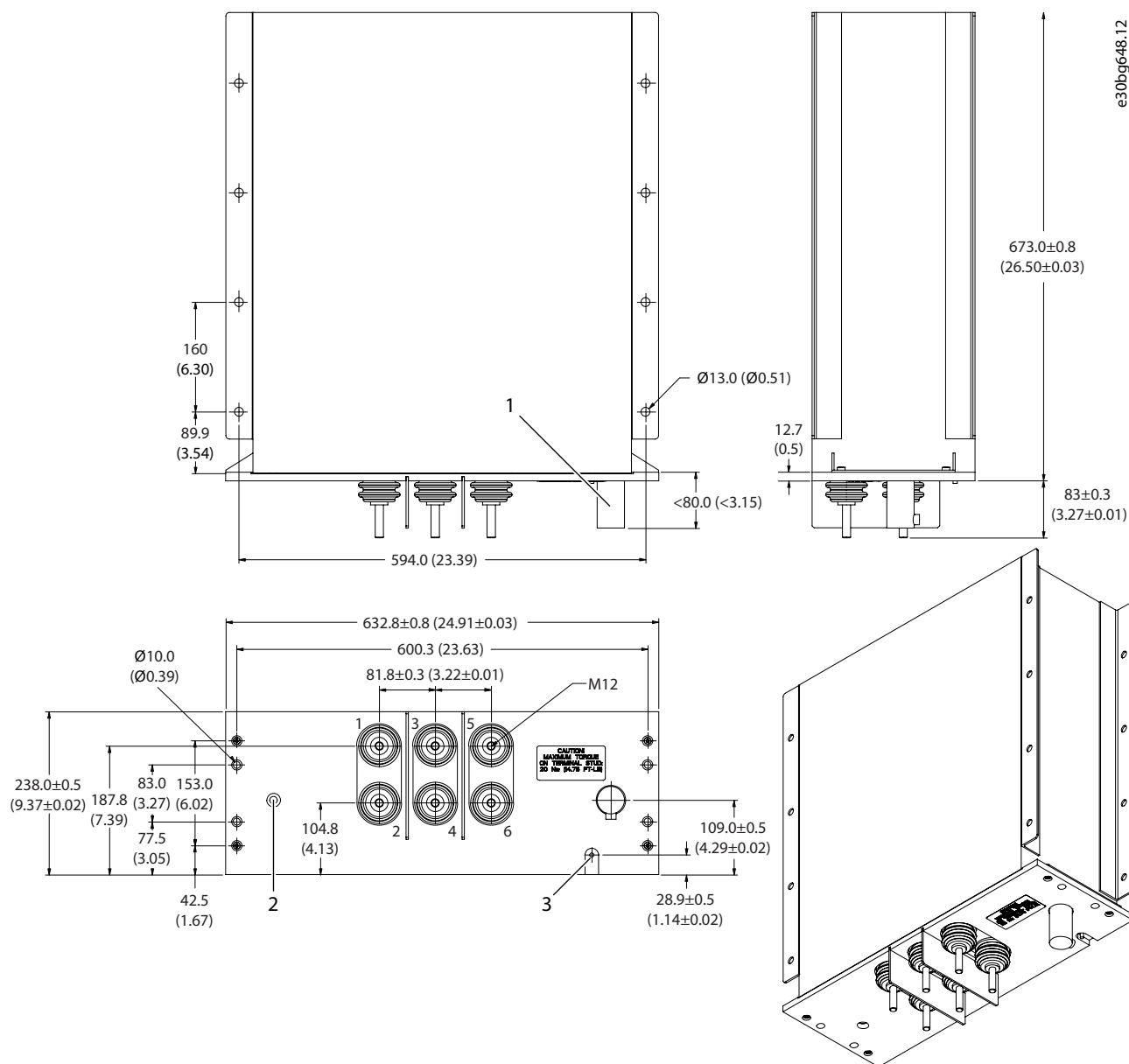


Illustration 126: 6-terminal DC Capacitor for DFE Dimensions in mm (in), Enclosure Size L20

1	Overpressure switch	3	Grounding terminal, size M6
2	Oil fill hole, Ø = 11 mm (0.43 in)		



**Illustration 127: 6-terminal DC Capacitor for DFE Dimensions in mm (in), Enclosure Size H30/L30**

1	Overpressure switch	3	Grounding terminal, size M6
2	Oil fill hole, Ø = 11 mm (0.43 in)		



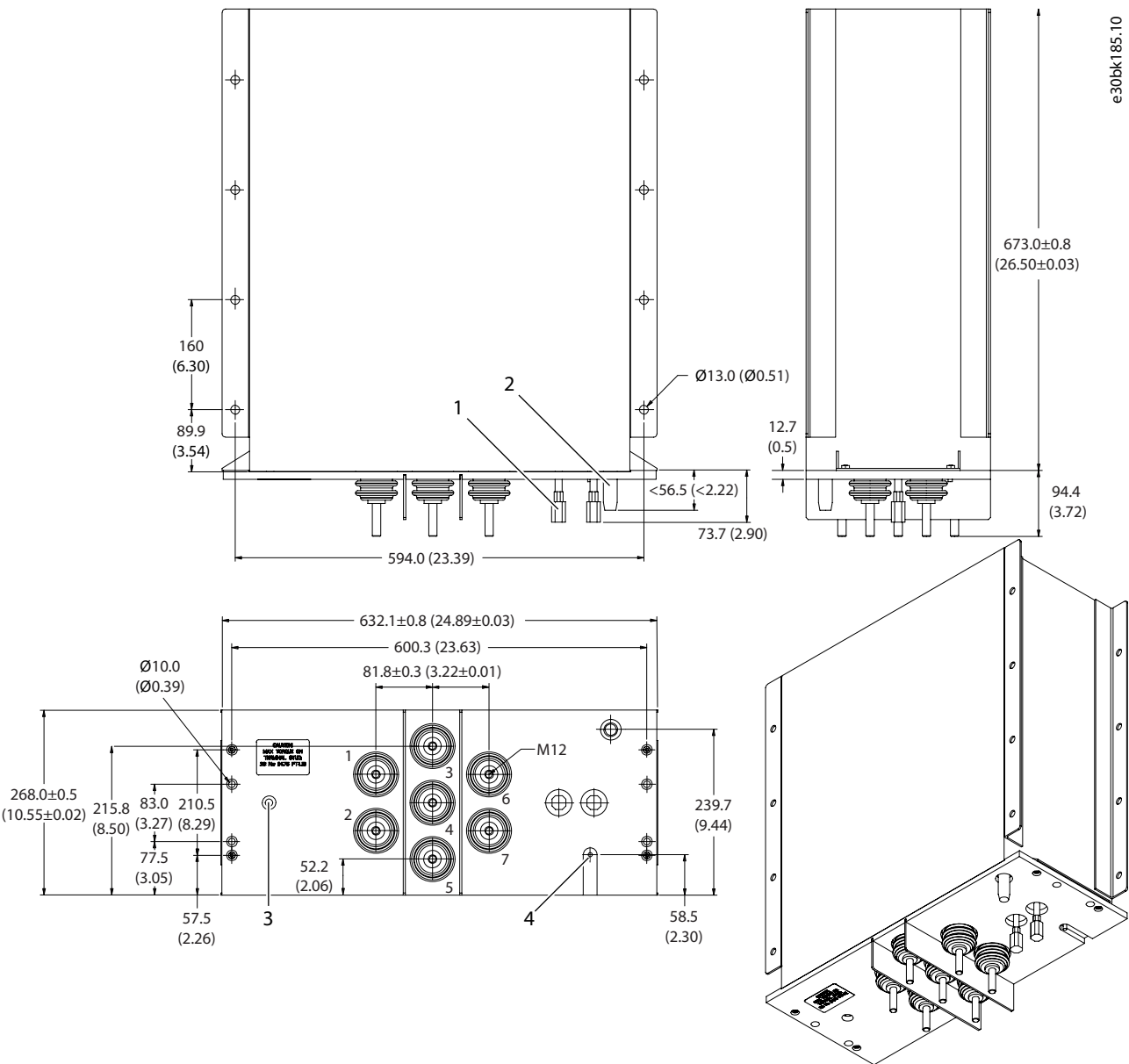


Illustration 128: 7-terminal DC Capacitor for DFE Dimensions in mm (in), Enclosure Size H30/L30

1	2 coolant connectors 1/2 in BSPP	3	Oil fill hole, $\varnothing = 11$ mm (0.43 in)
2	Capacitor health monitoring sensor	4	Grounding terminal, size M6

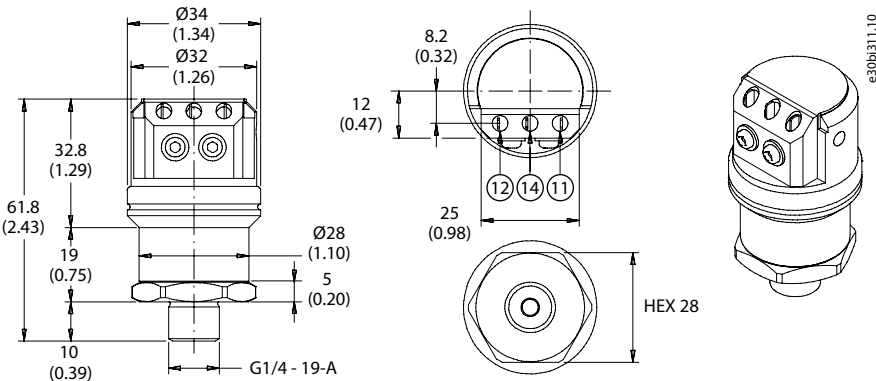


Illustration 129: Overpressure Switch Dimensions in mm (in)

## 11.1.12 Dimensions, Potential Transformer

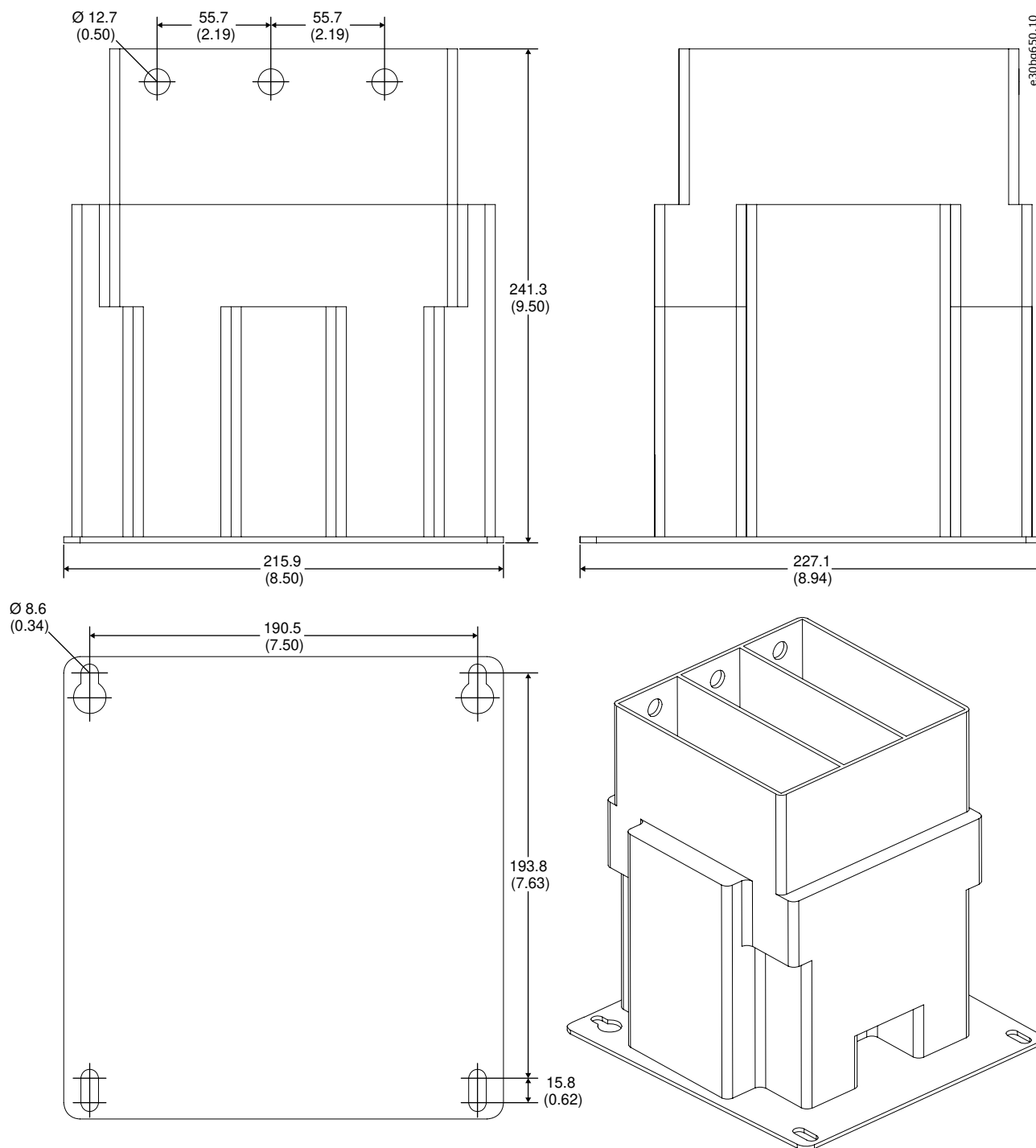


Illustration 130: VACON® 3000 Potential Transformer Dimensions in mm (in)

## 11.1.13 Dimensions, Isolation Transformer

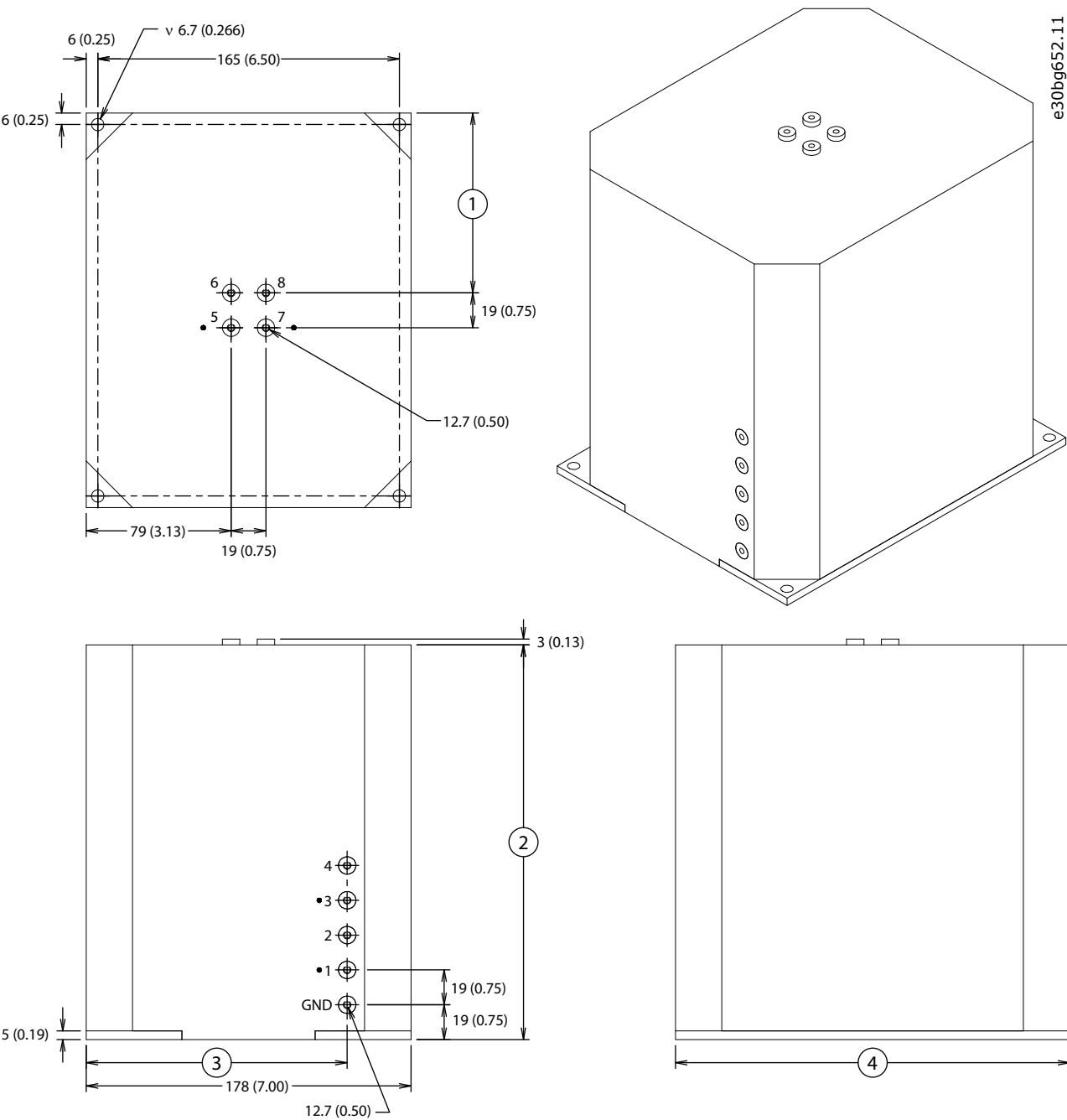


Illustration 131: VACON® 3000 Isolation Transformer Dimensions in mm (in)

1–4 See the dimensions in table

Table 59: Dimensions 1–4

Transformer type	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4
AXU-ITR-05	92 (3.63)	191 (7.50)	146 (5.75)	203 (8.00)
AXU-ITR-10	98 (3.88)	216 (8.50)	143 (5.63)	216 (8.50)

11.1.14 Dimensions, Grounding Switch



Table 60: Dimensions F and G

Grounding switch	Dimension F	Dimension G
GSW-5	585 mm (23.03 in)	789.5 mm (31.08 in)
GSW-2	270 mm (10.63 in)	474.5 mm (18.68 in)

## 11.1.15 Dimensions, Surge Protection Device

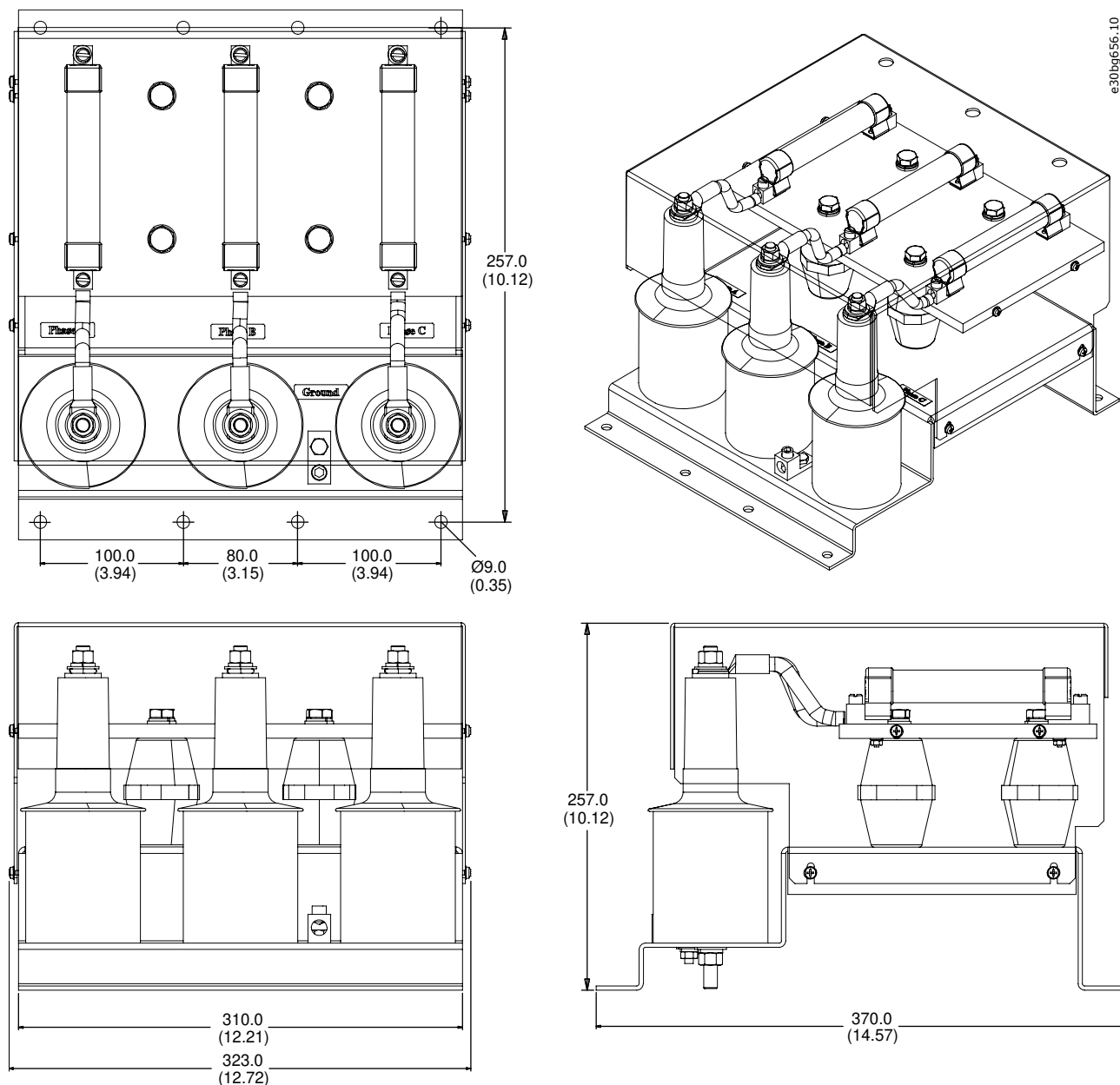


Illustration 133: Surge Protection Device for VACON® 3000, Dimensions in mm (in).

## 11.1.16 Dimensions, Mounting Rack

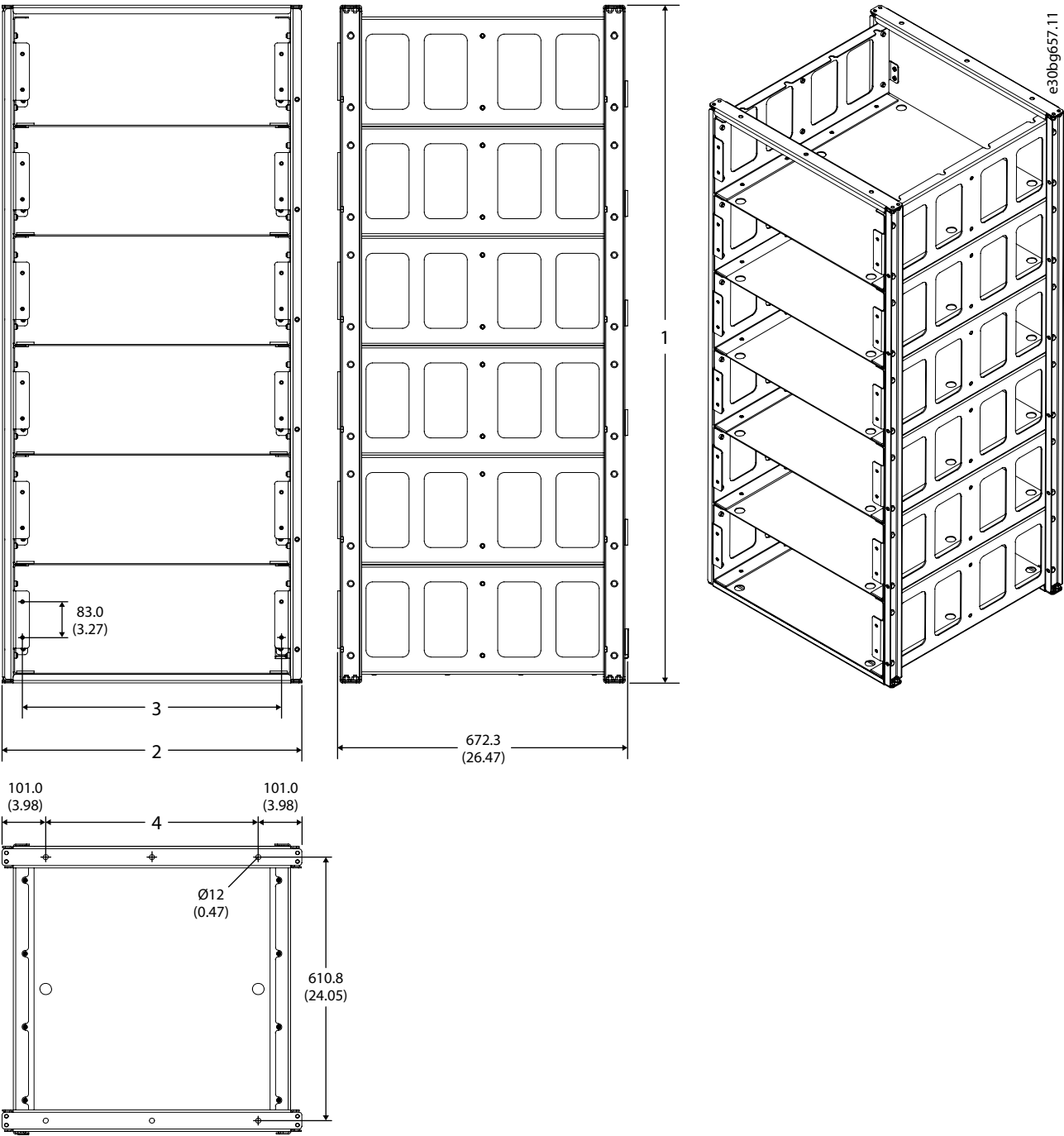


Illustration 134: Mounting Rack L20/L30/H30 Dimensions in mm (in)

1-4	Dimensions, see <a href="#">Table 61</a>
-----	--

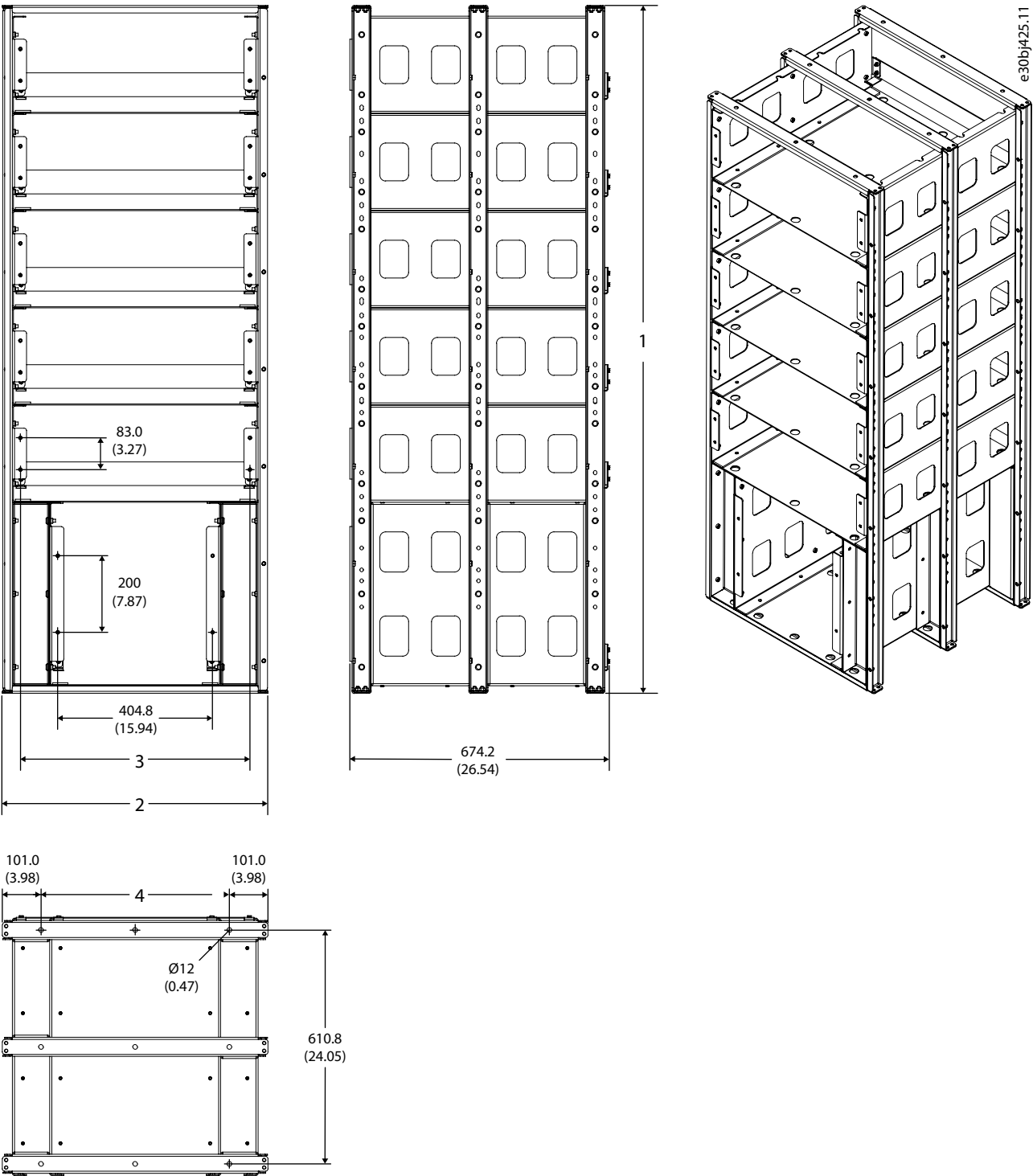


Illustration 135: Mounting Rack D20/D30 Dimensions in mm (in)

1–4 Dimensions, see [Table 61](#)

Table 61: Mounting Rack Dimensions 1–4

Type code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4
MEC-RCK-L20HL-3	809.0 mm (31.85 in)	499.0 mm (19.65 in)	404.8 mm (15.94 in)	297.0 mm (11.69 in)
MEC-RCK-L20HL-6	1571.0 mm (61.85 in)	499.0 mm (19.65 in)	404.8 mm (15.94 in)	297.0 mm (11.69 in)
MEC-RCK-L30HL-3	809.0 mm (31.85 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	600.3 mm (23.63 in)	492.5 mm (19.39 in)

Type code	Dim. 1	Dim. 2	Dim. 3	Dim. 4
MEC-RCK-L30HL-6	1571.0 mm (61.85 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	600.3 mm (23.63 in)	492.5 mm (19.39 in)
MEC-RCK-D20HL-1	555 mm (21.85 in)	499.0 mm (19.65 in)	–	297.0 mm (11.69 in)
MEC-RCK-D30HL-1	555 mm (21.85 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	–	492.5 mm (19.39 in)
MEC-RCK-D20HL-5	1571.0 mm (61.85 in)	499.0 mm (19.65 in)	404.8 mm (15.94 in)	297.0 mm (11.69 in)
MEC-RCK-D30HL-5	1571.0 mm (61.85 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	600.3 mm (23.63 in)	492.5 mm (19.39 in)
MEC-RCK-D30HS-5 <sup>(1)</sup>	1602 mm (63.07 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	600.3 mm (23.63 in)	492.5 mm (19.39 in)
MEC-RCK-D20HL-6	1826 mm (71.89 in)	499.0 mm (19.65 in)	404.8 mm (15.94 in)	297.0 mm (11.69 in)
MEC-RCK-D30HL-6	1826 mm (71.89 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	600.3 mm (23.63 in)	492.5 mm (19.39 in)
MEC-RCK-D30HS-6 <sup>(1)</sup>	1856 mm (73.07 in)	694.5 mm (27.34 in)	600.3 mm (23.63 in)	492.5 mm (19.39 in)

<sup>1</sup> Has a slot for 7-terminal DC capacitor.

## 11.2 Power Ratings

### 11.2.1 Power Ratings for Mains Voltage 3300 V

Table 62: Power Ratings for the VACON® 3000 AFE and 12-Pulse Drives, 3300 V Supply

Drive type code <sup>(1)</sup>	Continuous rating (variable torque)		Low overload rating 110% (constant torque)		High overload rating 150% (constant torque)		Output phase modules
	Continuous power [kVA]	Continuous current I <sub>th</sub> [A]	Continuous power [kVA]	Continuous current I <sub>th</sub> [A]	Continuous power [kVA]	Continuous current I <sub>th</sub> [A]	
VACON3000-XX-0425-03	2430	425	2209	386	1620	283	3 x L20
VACON3000-XX-0640-03	3660	640	3327	582	2440	427	3 x H30
VACON3000-XX-0820-03	4690	820	4264	745	3127	547	6 x L20
VACON3000-XX-1230-03	7030	1230	6391	1118	4680	820	6 x H30

<sup>1</sup> XX = 4Q or 12

### 11.2.2 Power Ratings for Mains Voltage 4160 V



Table 63: Power Ratings for the VACON® 3000 AFE and 12-Pulse Drives, 4160 V Supply

Drive type <sup>(1)</sup>	Continuous rating (variable torque)		Low overload rating 110% (constant torque)		High overload rating 150% (constant torque)		Output phase modules
	Continuous power [kVA]	Continuous current $I_{th}$ [A]	Continuous power [kVA]	Continuous current $I_{th}$ [A]	Continuous power [kVA]	Continuous current $I_{th}$ [A]	
VACON3000-XX-0340-04	2450	340	2227	309	1633	227	3 x L20
VACON3000-XX-0510-04	3670	510	3336	464	2450	340	3 x L30
VACON3000-XX-0650-04	4680	650	4255	591	3120	433	6 x L20
VACON3000-XX-0980-04	7060	980	6418	891	4680	650	6 x L30

<sup>1</sup> XX = 4Q or 12

### 11.2.3 Overload Capability

The **low overload** means that if 110% of the continuous current ( $I_L$ ) is required for 1 minute every 10 minutes, the remaining 9 minutes must be approximately 98% of  $I_L$  or less. This is to make sure that the output RMS current is not more than  $I_L$  during the duty cycle.

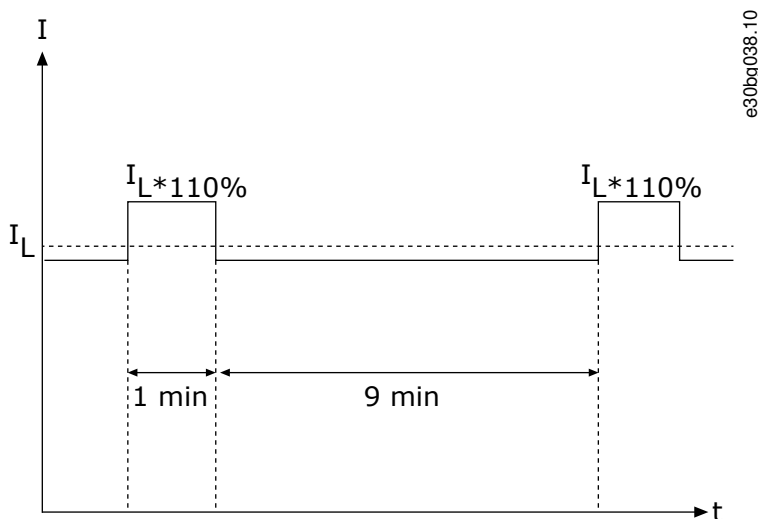


Illustration 136: Low Overload

The **high overload** means that if 150% of the continuous current ( $I_H$ ) is required for 1 minute every 10 minutes, the remaining 9 minutes must be approximately 92% of  $I_H$  or less. This is to make sure that the output RMS current is not more than  $I_H$  during the duty cycle.

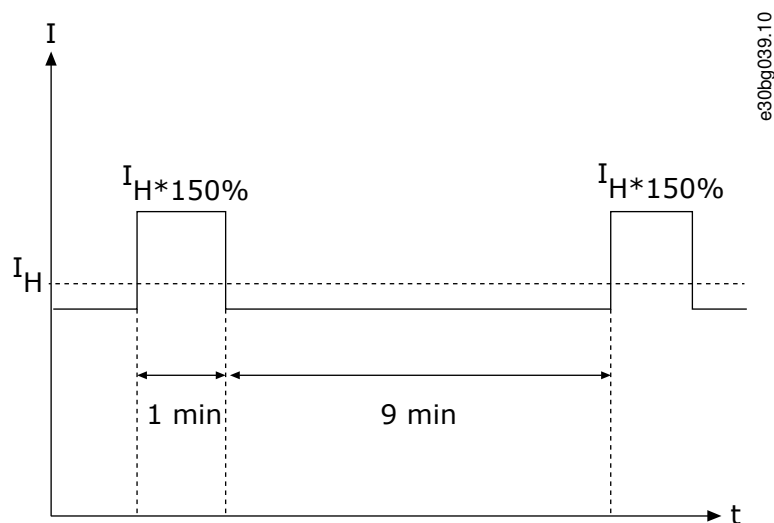


Illustration 137: High Overload

For more information, refer to the standard IEC61800-2.

## 11.3 Technical Data

### 11.3.1 Mains Supply

Table 64: Mains Supply Specifications

Item or function	Specification
Input voltage $U_{in}$ (Supply transformer secondary voltage)	<b>AFE</b> 3300 V AC $\pm 10\%$ 4160 V AC $\pm 10\%$ <b>12-pulse</b> 1850 V AC $\pm 10\%$ 2360 V AC $\pm 10\%$ For operation outside these voltage ranges, contact Danfoss.
Input frequency	3300 V AC: 50 Hz $\pm 5\%$ 4160 V AC: 60 Hz $\pm 5\%$
Supply transformer requirements	<b>AFE</b> Nominal power: Motor power +10% Recommended short circuit impedance: See <a href="#">11.3.7 Source Impedance Specifications</a> Vector group: Dy11 Primary winding configuration: Delta Secondary winding terminal voltage at full Load: 3300/4160 V
<div style="text-align: center; background-color: #cccccc; padding: 5px;"><b>NOTICE</b></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <b>INPUT COMMON-MODE FILTER</b>            In VACON® 3000 AFE installations, which are not supplied by a dedicated transformer, always install an input common-mode filter (available as option +PICM).         </div>	
	<b>12-pulse</b> Nominal apparent power: ~ Motor shaft power +20% Short-circuit current: Maximum 11 kA Vector group example: Dy5Dd0

Item or function	Specification
	Primary winding configuration: Delta Secondary winding configuration: 30° phase shifted. The secondary windings must be decoupled. Secondary winding A terminal voltage at no Load: ~ 1850/2360 V Secondary winding B terminal voltage at no Load: ~ 1850/2360 V Recommended BIL (secondary side): Minimum 30 kV A shield is recommended between primary and secondary. Inter-phase balance: < 1% Inter-winding balance: < ±0.5%

### 11.3.2 Motor Output

Table 65: Motor output specifications

Item or function	Specification
Output voltage	0 - $U_{in}$
Output current ratings (RMS)	3300 V AC: 425 A, 640 A, 820 A, 1230 A 4160 V AC: 340 A, 510 A, 650 A, 980 A
Output frequency	0–120 Hz
Output dU/dt	5 kV/μs
Motor type	Induction motor For operation of synchronous or PM motors, contact Danfoss.

### 11.3.3 Control Properties

Table 66: Control Properties

Item or function	Specification
Control method	U/f control Open loop control (sensorless vector control) Indirect closed loop control (augmented sensorless vector control) Closed loop control (field-oriented)
Switching frequency	AFE: 1050 Hz (50 Hz input) / 1260 Hz (60 Hz input) INU: 900 Hz (synchronous PWM with SoftSync)
Acceleration time	0.1 - 3600 s
Deceleration time	0.1 - 3600 s
Control power (power module)	3 A, 24 V DC (±10%) per power module (customer supplied) Pluggable Mini Terminal Blocks, Phoenix Contact, female part 1829358 in power module (male part delivered with power module) An isolation (safety) transformer is necessary for the control power for the power modules
Control power	3 A, 24 V DC (±5%) per control unit (customer supplied)

Item or function	Specification
(control unit)	
Communication	AI/O, DI/O, fieldbuses (e.g. Profibus DPV1, CANopen, DeviceNet), industrial ethernet protocols (Profinet IO & Ethernet/IP), VACON® PC tool
Main protective functions	Torque and power limit, current limit, overcurrent, overvoltage, undervoltage, loss of auxiliary power, loss of communication, ground fault detection

### 11.3.4 Drive Properties

Table 67: Drive Properties

Item or function	Specification
Power module topology	3-level neutral point clamped (NPC)
Rectifier types	Active front end (AFE) 12-pulse DFE (requires a dedicated transformer with 2 secondary windings)
Number of power conversion units	<b>Input</b> AFE: 3 or 6 DFE: 1
	<b>Output</b> INU: 3 or 6
Grounding	Resistance grounded neutral point, high resistance grounding system of electricity supply, if no dedicated transformer is installed. For operation in an IT network without a dedicated transformer, consult Danfoss.
Power device	HV IGBT
Rating	100% continuous load (>12 Hz output frequency)
Efficiency (at full load and nominal conditions, approximate typical losses, without output filters)	AFE: $\geq 97.8\%$ AFE +PICM: $\geq 97.4\%$ 12-pulse: $\geq 98.8\%$
DC-link voltage	AFE 3300 V AC: 5.2 kV DC AFE 4160 V AC: 6.6 kV DC 12-pulse 1850 V AC: 5.2 kV DC (no load) 12-pulse 2360 V AC: 6.6 kV DC (no load)
DC-link discharge time	AFE: < 7 minutes 12-pulse: < 21 minutes <div style="text-align: center;"><b>⚠ D A N G E R ⚠</b></div> <b>SHOCK HAZARD FROM THE DC LINK</b> A contact with the DC-link voltage can lead to death or serious injury. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Wait after the AC drive is disconnected from the mains for the DC link to discharge.</li><li>– Use a measuring device to make sure that there is no voltage.</li></ul>
Input current THDi	AFE: < 5% (at rated load) 12-pulse: < 15% (at rated load)

Item or function	Specification
Power factor	> 0.95 (at rated load)
Basic impulse level (BIL)/Impulse voltage level	IEC61800-5-1, all drives: 23.1 kV UL347A, AFE +QSPD: ≤60 kV UL347A, 12-pulse: ≤60 kV If higher BIL is required, contact Danfoss.
Approximate power module losses to liquid at nominal load for each module <sup>(2)</sup>	L20: 4.5–5.5 kW (340–425 A) L30: 8–9 kW (510 A) H30: 8–9 kW (640 A) D22: 2–8 kW (340–640 A)
Creepage distance between terminals	L20/L30/H30: 87 mm (3.42 in) D22: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Front (DC) terminals: 67 mm (2.63 in)</li> <li>Back (AC) terminals: 130 mm (5.11 in)</li> </ul>
Clearance distance between terminals	L20/L30/H30: 46 mm (1.81 in) D22: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Front (DC) terminals: 46 mm (1.81 in)</li> <li>Back (AC) terminals: 99 mm (3.89 in)</li> </ul>

<sup>2</sup> The losses to air are much smaller than losses to liquid.

### 11.3.5 Ambient Conditions

Table 68: Ambient Condition Specifications

Item or function	Specification
Ambient operating temperature	0°C ... +45°C (+32°F ... +113°F) If operation in below 0°C temperature is required, contact Danfoss for instructions.
Storage temperature	-40°C ... +70°C (-40°F ... +158°F) No liquid in the heat sink under 0°C (+32°F)
Relative humidity (operation/storage)	< 95% RH, non-condensating, non-corrosive
Altitude	VACON® 3000 is rated for operation at up to 2000 m without thermal or electrical derating. VACON® 3000 with nominal voltage 3300 V is rated electrically for operation at up to 4000 m, if certified per IEC 61800-5-1 (not UL347A, option +GAUL). For thermal derating above 2000 m, contact Danfoss. The thermal derating above 2000 m depends only on the inductors of the input and output filters.

### 11.3.6 Cooling

Table 69: Cooling Specifications

Item or function	Specification
Cooling type	Liquid cooling, closed loop with constant flow of cooling liquid
Required cooling liquid flow rate <sup>(1)</sup>	L20: 25 l/min ± 4 l/min (6.6 gal/min ± 1.1 gal/min) L30/H30: 37 l/min ± 6 l/min (9.8 gal/min ± 1.6 gal/min)

Item or function	Specification
	D22: 25–80 l/min (6.6–21.1 gal/min) Inductor HX: 25 l/min ± 4 l/min (6.6 gal/min ± 1.1 gal/min)
Cooling liquid pressure drop inside component (heat sink/HX) <sup>(2)</sup>	L20 with connectors: 1.13 bar (16.4 psi) L20 without connectors: 0.83 bar (12 psi) L30/H30 with connectors: 1.08 bar (16 psi) L30/H30 without connectors: 0.69 bar (10 psi) D22: 0.07–0.41 bar (1–6 psi) LCV: 3 bar (43.5 psi) LGI: 3 bar (43.5 psi) LCM: 3.2 bar (46.4 psi) LSI: 3 bar (43.5 psi)
Maximum static pressure of cooling liquid (heat sink/HX)	10 bar (145 psi)
Test pressure for cooling liquid in power module heat sink	16 bar (232 psi)
The cooling liquid volume of the components (heat sink/HX)	L20: 500 ml (16.9 fl oz) L30/H30: 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) D22: 2000 ml (67.6 fl oz) LCV: 750 ml (25.4 fl oz) LGI: 750 ml (25.4 fl oz) LCM: 650 ml (22.0 fl oz) LSI: 750 ml (25.4 fl oz)
Recommended cooling liquid type	80% water with 20% glycol (% mixture based on the required freezing temperature requirement), type DOWTHERM SR-1
Cooling liquid temperature	0...+43 °C (+32...+109 °F) The cooling liquid temperature must be kept 2°C (3.6°F) above dew point
Cooling liquid temperature rise in power module	Typical temperature difference between inlet and outlet is below 4 °C (7.2 °F). (3)
Cooling connection	L20/L30/H30: G 0.5 in holes with threads (BSPP: ISO/DIN 1179-1) in heat sink with removable shipping plugs. D22: G 0.75 in holes with threads. No connectors included.
Hose	Non-conductive (customer supplied) Recommended: Parker Parflex 83FR-8 (inner diameter: 12.7 mm, 0.5 in) <div><b>NOTICE</b> <b>HOSE SIZE</b> A 19 mm (0.75 in) hose can be necessary if the hoses are long or if the capacity of the heat exchanger is low.</div>
Recommended connectors or adapters	Heat sink connector: G 12.7 mm (0.5 in) male stud straight adapter thread BSP parallel (World wide metric #310408) Hose connection: Stainless steel BSP Swivel female, ball nose type (Parker 19255-8-8C), or BSP female Swivel 90° elbow, ball nose type (Parker 1B255-8-8C)

Item or function	Specification
	Sealing kit: G 12.7 mm (0.5 in) O-ring and retaining ring set (from Stäubli)
Recommended flow restrictors (stainless steel) <sup>(4)</sup>	L20 = 30 l/min (7.9 gal/min), Kobold REG-3230D L30/H30 = 40 l/min (10.6 gal/min), Kobold REG-3240D Inductor HX = 25 l/min (6.6 gal/min), Kobold REG-1225D
Cooling of passive components (external inductors)	Forced air cooling. External fans are necessary.

<sup>1</sup> Values defined with a 70/30% water/glycol mix. If a higher concentration of glycol is required, contact Danfoss for more information.

<sup>2</sup> Values measured with a 70/30% water/glycol mix, the required flow rates, and the recommended connectors (from CEJN). The pressure drop is quadratically related to the cooling liquid flow rate.

<sup>3</sup> With a 70/30% water/glycol mix and flow rate 25 l/min.

<sup>4</sup> Install the flow restrictors on the outlet side of the components, not on the inlet side.

### 11.3.7 Source Impedance Specifications

This section describes the source impedance specifications for VACON® 3000 AFE drives. Two tables are provided to help with the selection of the drive type.

For VACON® 3000 AFE drives without a dedicated transformer, [Table 70](#) gives example combinations of the apparent power ( $S_b$ ) and relative impedance ( $X_s$ ) values and the corresponding source inductance ( $L_s$ ). The short circuit power ( $S_{sc}$ ) of the feeding grid is also given in the table.

For VACON® 3000 AFE drives with a dedicated transformer,  $L_{total}$  values are given in [Table 71](#).

$L_{total}$  is the sum of the grid inductance and the stray inductance of the transformer:  $L_{total} = L_s + L_{xf}$ .

The tables give values for two types of installation locations:

- SSI: Grid with a small source impedance
- HSI: Grid with a high source impedance

Make sure that the cabinet is designed for the resulting short-circuit currents, especially if there is a lower grid impedance. The output voltage of the transformer is 3300 V or 4160 V (see the drive type code).

If the grid frequency ( $f_{grid}$ ) is different to the one in the table, contact Danfoss for instructions.

If more than one drive is connected to the grid, contact Danfoss for instructions.

**Table 70: Source Impedance Specifications for VACON® 3000 AFE Drives without a Dedicated Transformer**

Drive Type Code	Type	$f_{grid}$ (Hz)	Example		$S_{sc}$ (MVA)	$L_s$ (μH)
			$S_b$ (MVA)	$X_s$ (%)		
VACON3000-4Q-0340-04+PICM	SSI	60	≥8.3	15	≥55.0	≤835
			≤25.0	15	≤166.7	≥275
VACON3000-4Q-0340-04+PICM+PHSI	HSI	60	≥3.3	15	≥22.0	≤2087
			≤10.0	15	≤66.7	≥689
VACON3000-4Q-0425-03+PICM	SSI	50	≥8.3	15	≥55.0	≤630
			≤25.0	15	≤166.7	≥208
VACON3000-4Q-0425-03+PICM+PHSI	HSI	50	≥3.3	15	≥22.0	≤1576
			≤10.0	15	≤66.7	≥520
VACON3000-4Q-0510-04+PICM	SSI	60	≥8.3	15	≥55.0	≤835
			≤25.0	15	≤166.7	≥275

Drive Type Code	Type	f <sub>grid</sub> (Hz)	Example		S <sub>sc</sub> (MVA)	L <sub>s</sub> (μH)
			S <sub>b</sub> (MVA)	X <sub>s</sub> (%)		
VACON3000-4Q-0510-04+PICM+PHSI	HSI	60	≥3.5	15	≥23.6	≤1947
			≤10.0	15	≤66.7	≥689
VACON3000-4Q-0640-03+PICM	SSI	50	≥8.3	15	≥55.0	≤630
			≤25.0	15	≤166.7	≥208
VACON3000-4Q-0640-03+PICM+PHSI	HSI	50	≥3.5	15	≥23.6	≤1471
			≤10.0	15	≤66.7	≥520
VACON3000-4Q-0650-04+PICM	SSI	60	≥16.5	15	≥110.0	≤417
			≤50.0	15	≤333.3	≥138
VACON3000-4Q-0650-04+PICM+PHSI	HSI	60	≥6.6	15	≥44.0	≤1043
			≤20.0	15	≤133.3	≥344
VACON3000-4Q-0820-03+PICM	SSI	50	≥16.5	15	≥110.0	≤315
			≤50.0	15	≤333.3	≥104
VACON3000-4Q-0820-03+PICM+PHSI	HSI	50	≥6.6	15	≥44.0	≤788
			≤20.0	15	≤133.3	≥260
VACON3000-4Q-0980-04+PICM	SSI	60	≥16.5	15	≥110.0	≤417
			≤50.0	15	≤333.3	≥138
VACON3000-4Q-0980-04+PICM+PHSI	HSI	60	≥7.1	15	≥47.1	≤974
			≤20.0	15	≤133.3	≥344
VACON3000-4Q-1230-03+PICM	SSI	50	≥16.5	15	≥110.0	≤315
			≤50.0	15	≤333.3	≥104
VACON3000-4Q-1230-03+PICM+PHSI	HSI	50	≥7.1	15	≥47.1	≤735
			≤20.0	15	≤133.3	≥260

**Example**

A VACON® 3000 AFE without a dedicated transformer with nominal motor current of 340 A is to be installed in a marine 4160 V grid.

- U<sub>in</sub> = 4160 V
- f = 60 Hz

The lumped generator apparent power S<sub>b</sub> = 6 MVA, with a subtransient reactance X<sub>d</sub><sup>''</sup> = X<sub>s</sub> = 15%. Thus, the grid source inductance is:

$$L_s = \frac{U_{in}^2}{S_b} \times \frac{X_s}{2\pi f} = \frac{(4160 \text{ V})^2}{6 \text{ MVA}} \times \frac{0.15}{2\pi \times 60 \text{ Hz}} \approx 1.15 \text{ mH}$$

Since L<sub>s</sub> is between 689 μH and 2.087 mH, the +PHSI option is required in addition to +PICM. Therefore, VACON3000-4Q-0340-04+PICM+PHSI must be selected.

**Example**

A VACON® 3000 AFE without a dedicated transformer with nominal motor current of 640 A is to be installed in a 3300 V grid.



- $U_{in} = 3300 \text{ V}$
- $f = 50 \text{ Hz}$

The short circuit power ( $S_{sc}$ ) of the feeding grid is 100 MVA. Thus, the grid source inductance is:

$$L_s = \frac{U_{in}^2}{2\pi f \times S_{sc}} = \frac{(3300 \text{ V})^2}{2\pi \times 50 \text{ Hz} \times 100 \text{ MVA}} \approx 347 \mu\text{H}$$

Since  $L_s$  is between 208–630  $\mu\text{H}$ , drive type VACON3000-4Q-0640-03+PICM must be selected.

Table 71: Source Impedance Specifications for VACON® 3000 AFE Drives with a Dedicated Transformer

Drive Type Code	Type	$f_{\text{grid}}$ (Hz)	$L_{\text{total}}$ ( $\mu\text{H}$ )
VACON3000-4Q-0340-04	SSI	60	$\leq 2035$
			$\geq 1475$
VACON3000-4Q-0340-04+PHSI	HSI	60	$\leq 3287$
			$\geq 1889$
VACON3000-4Q-0425-03	SSI	50	$\leq 1630$
			$\geq 1208$
VACON3000-4Q-0425-03+PHSI	HSI	50	$\leq 2826$
			$\geq 1770$
VACON3000-4Q-0510-04	SSI	60	$\leq 1685$
			$\geq 1125$
VACON3000-4Q-0510-04+PHSI	HSI	60	$\leq 3297$
			$\geq 2039$
VACON3000-4Q-0640-03	SSI	50	$\leq 1380$
			$\geq 958$
VACON3000-4Q-0640-03+PHSI	HSI	50	$\leq 1971$
			$\geq 1020$
VACON3000-4Q-0650-04	SSI	60	$\leq 1017$
			$\geq 738$
VACON3000-4Q-0650-04+PHSI	HSI	60	$\leq 1643$
			$\geq 944$
VACON3000-4Q-0820-03	SSI	50	$\leq 815$
			$\geq 604$
VACON3000-4Q-0820-03+PHSI	HSI	50	$\leq 1413$
			$\geq 885$
VACON3000-4Q-0980-04	SSI	60	$\leq 842$
			$\geq 563$
VACON3000-4Q-0980-04+PHSI	HSI	60	$\leq 1649$

Drive Type Code	Type	f <sub>grid</sub> (Hz)	L <sub>total</sub> (μH)
			≥1019
VACON3000-4Q-1230-03	SSI	50	≤690
			≥479
VACON3000-4Q-1230-03+PHSI	HSI	50	≤985
			≥510

### Example

A VACON® 3000 AFE with a nominal motor current of 1230 A and nominal motor voltage of 3300 V is to be installed in a land-based grid.

- $U_{in} = 3300 \text{ V}$
- $f = 50 \text{ Hz}$

The VACON® 3000 is supplied by a dedicated transformer with:

- Base power of transformer,  $S_{xf} = 6.6 \text{ MVA}$
- $X_s = 6\%$

The feeding grid voltage can be, for example, 11 kV, but is not relevant for this calculation. The transformer secondary voltage must be selected the same as the motor voltage ( $U_{in} = 3300 \text{ V}$ ).

The short circuit power ( $S_{sc}$ ) of the feeding grid is 200 MVA. Thus, the lumped input inductance to the drive is the sum of the grid inductance and transformer stray inductance, both referred to the secondary side:

$$L_{total} = L_s + L_{xf} = \frac{U_{in}^2}{2\pi \times f \times S_{sc}} + \frac{U_{in}^2 \times X_s}{2\pi \times f \times S_{xf}} = \frac{U_{in}^2}{2\pi \times f} \times \left( \frac{1}{S_{sc}} + \frac{X_s}{S_{xf}} \right) = \frac{(3300 \text{ V})^2}{2\pi \times 50 \text{ Hz}} \times \left( \frac{1}{200 \text{ MVA}} + \frac{0.06}{6.6 \text{ MVA}} \right) = 173 \mu\text{H} + 315 \mu\text{H} = 488 \mu\text{H}$$

Since the  $L_{total}$  is between 479–690 μH, drive type VACON3000-4Q-1230-03 must be selected. The total inductance could be up to 690 μH. Therefore, for this VACON® 3000 variant, a transformer with a slightly higher stray inductance could be selected.

## 11.4 Main Circuit Diagrams

Only main level circuit diagrams of the drive are shown in this chapter. For complete main circuit diagrams, see the project-specific documentation provided in the VACON® 3000 delivery.

### 11.4.1 VACON® 3000 AFE Main Circuit Diagrams



**Illustration 138: Main Circuit Diagram for VACON® 3000 AFE, 3.3 kV 425/640 A, 3.3 kV 640 A with Option +PHSI and 4.16 kV 340/510 A with Option + PHSI**



**Illustration 139: Main Circuit Diagram for VACON® 3000 AFE, 4.16 kV 340/510 A, and 3.3 kV 425 A with Option +PHSI**

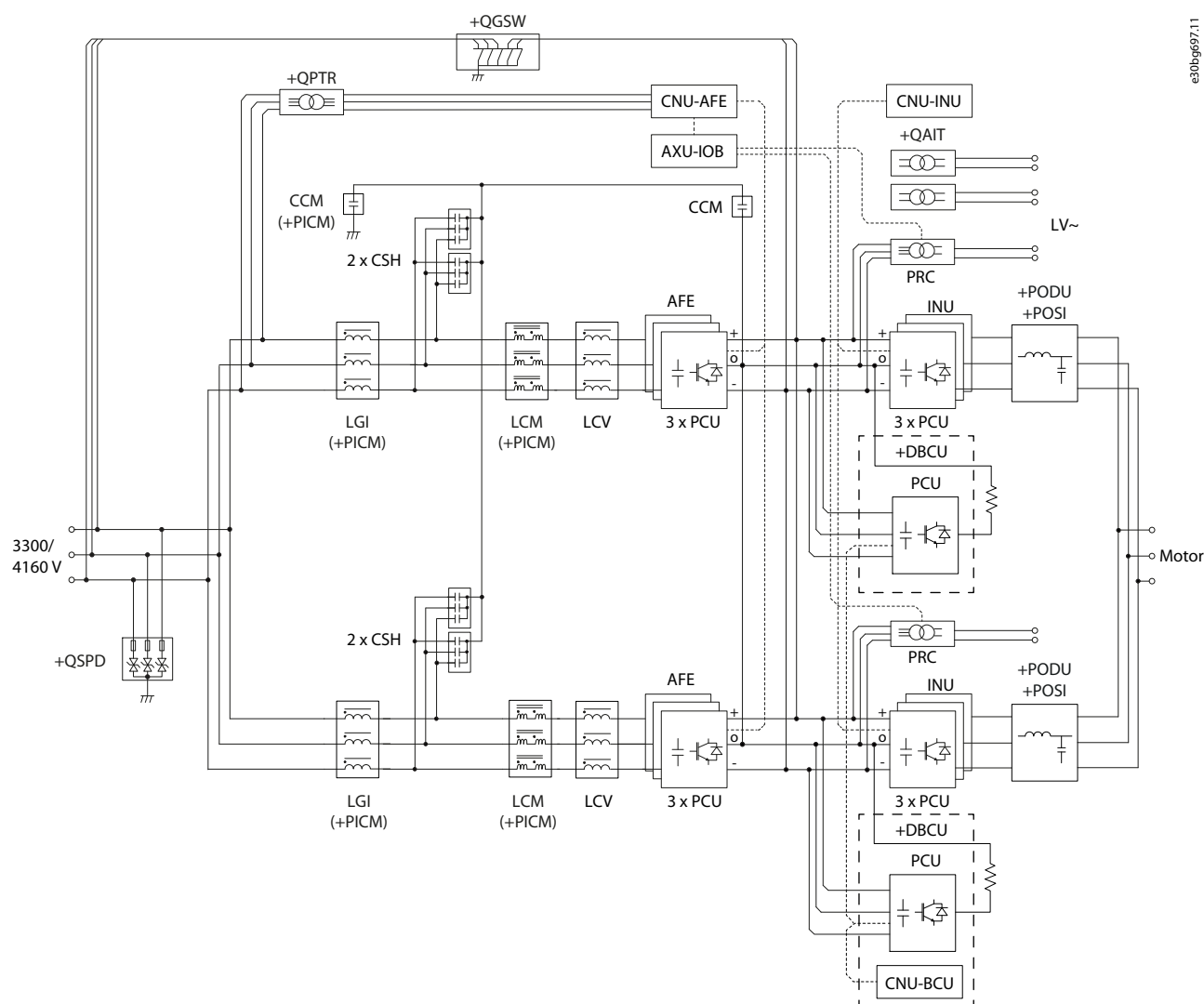


Illustration 140: Main Circuit Diagram for VACON® 3000 AFE, 3.3 kV 820/1230 A, 3.3 kV 1230 A with Option +PHSI and 4.16 kV 650/980 A with Option +PHSI

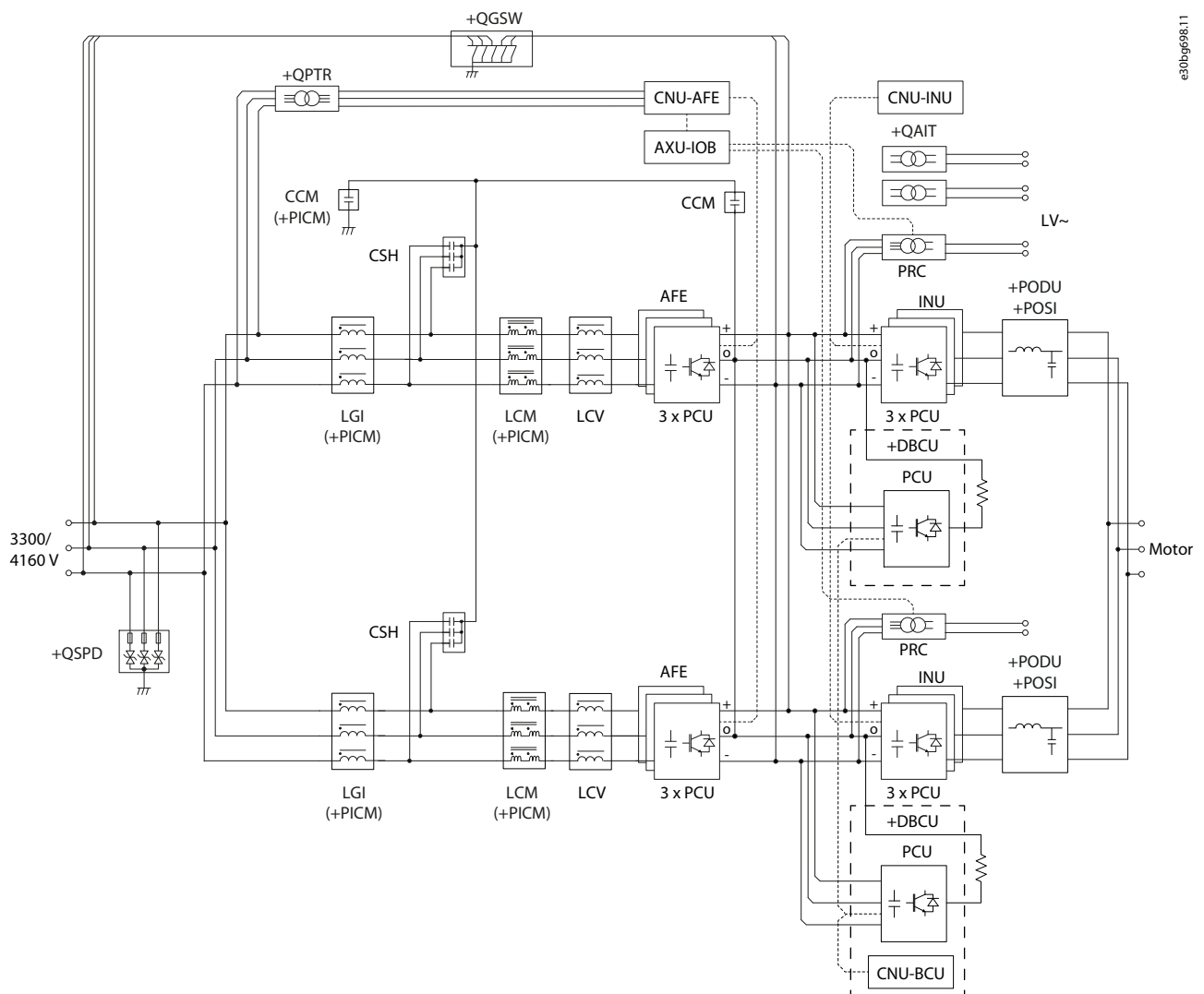


Illustration 141: Main Circuit Diagram for VACON® 3000 AFE, 4.16 V 650/980 A, and 3.3 kV 820 A with Option +PHSI

## 11.4.2 VACON® 3000 12-Pulse Main Circuit Diagrams

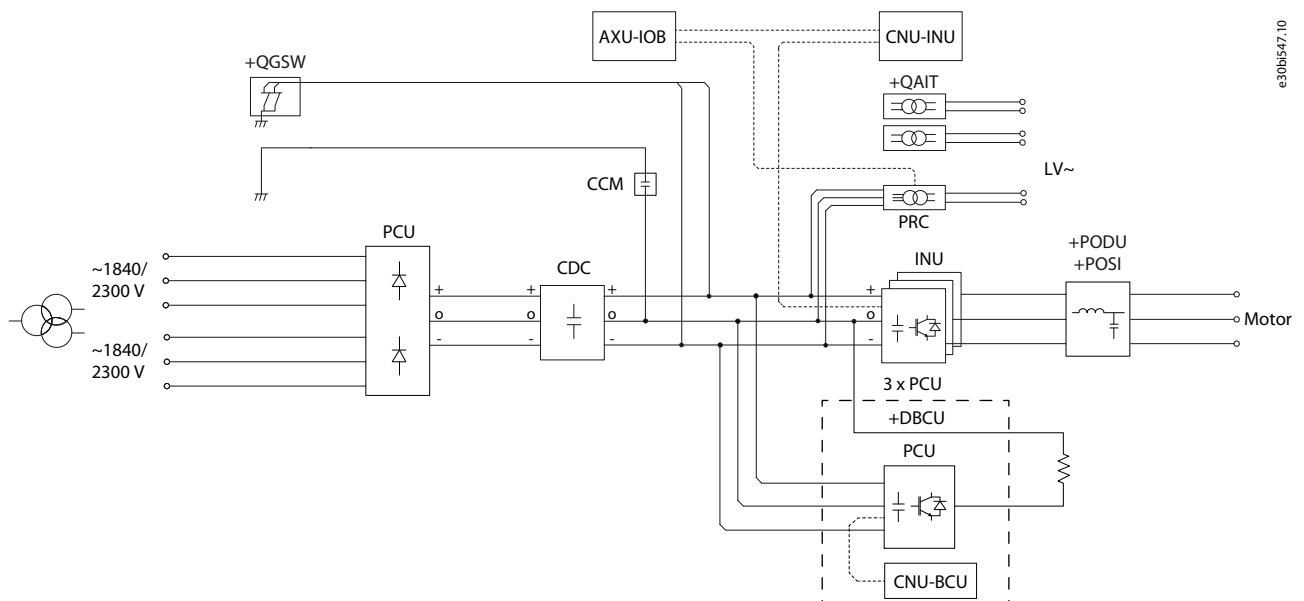
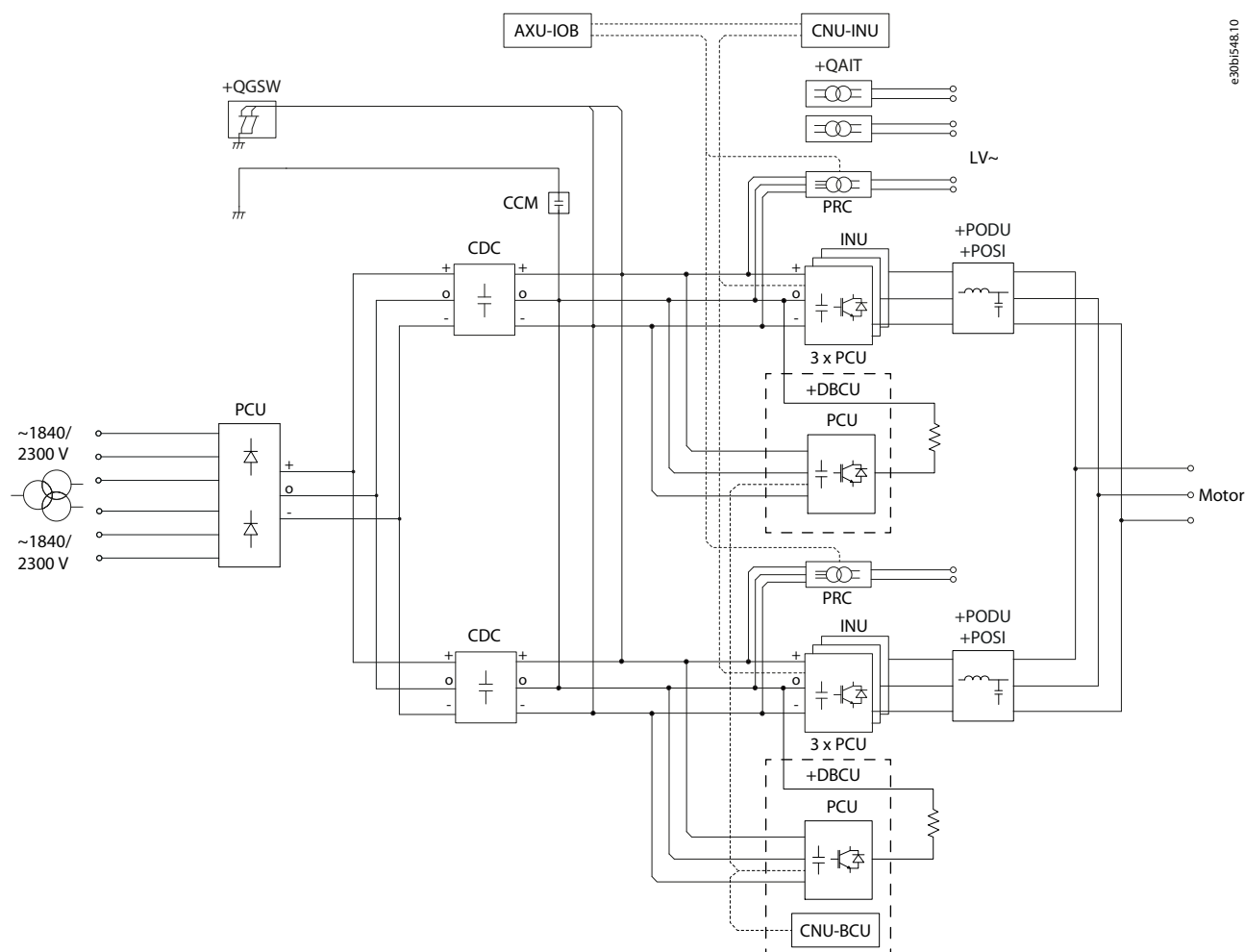


Illustration 142: Main Circuit Diagram for VACON® 3000 12-Pulse, 3.3 kV 425/640 A, and 4.16 kV 340/510 A



e30b1548.10

Illustration 143: Main Circuit Diagram for VACON® 3000 12-Pulse, 3.3 kV 820/1230 A, and 4.16 kV 650/980 A

## 11.5 Abbreviations

12P	12-pulse
4Q	4-quadrant, or regenerative operation
AF	Forced air cooling
AFE	Active front end
AI	Analog input
AIT	Auxiliary isolation transformer
AN	Natural air cooling
AO	Analog output
BCU	Brake chopper unit
BIL	Basic impulse level
CCA	Crowbar control assembly
CCM	Common-mode capacitor
CDC	DC capacitor for DFE

CLB	Crowbar logic board
CM	Common mode (voltage)
CNU	Control unit
CSH	Shunt capacitor
DFE	Diode front end, a passive rectifier which uses diodes
DI	Digital input
DO	Digital output
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
EMI	Electromagnetic interference
ESD	Electrostatic discharge
FLC	LC filter
FLU	Filter unit
GND	Ground
GSW	Grounding switch
HCM	Heat sink capacitor monitor
HMI	Human machine interface
HSI	High source impedance
HX	Heat exchanger
INU	Inverter unit
IOB	I/O board
IP	Ingress protection, for example, IP00, IP21, or IP54
ITR	Isolation transformer
KMX	Pilot relay of the pre-charge unit
KPC	Pre-charge contactor
LCM	Common-mode inductor (included in the common-mode filter, option +PICM)
LCV	AFE converter side input inductor
LED	Light emitting diode
LGI	Grid side AFE input inductor (included in the common-mode filter, option +PICM)
LV	Low voltage (< 1000 V AC)
MCB	Main circuit breaker
MEC	Mechanical component
MOV	Metal oxide varistor
MV	Medium voltage (> 1000 V AC)

MX	Main contactor of the pre-charge unit
OPT	Option board
PBHS	High-speed PowerBus
PCU	Power conversion unit
PE	Protective earth
PLC	Programmable logic controller
PPE	Personal protective equipment
PRC	Pre-charge unit
PTR	Potential transformer
RH	Relative humidity
RMS	Root mean square
RO	Relay output
RTC	Real-time clock
SI	Source impedance
SIL	Safety integrity level
SPD	Surge protection device
SS1	Safe Stop 1
SSI	Small source impedance
THD	Total harmonic distortion
UFES	Ultra fast earthing switch



## Index

### 1

12-pulse.....	19
---------------	----

### A

Abbreviations.....	214
Additional resources.....	11
AFE.....	18
AFE synchronization test.....	125
Air cooling.....	39
Ambient conditions.....	25, 205
Antifreeze.....	33
Arc flash detector.....	64
Auxiliary I/O board	
Connector locations.....	96
Connector specifications.....	97
LED display.....	101
Dimensions.....	180
Auxiliary power supply.....	63

### B

Brake chopper unit	
Installation.....	31, 53
Dimensions.....	179
Breaker enable	
Signals.....	102
Flowchart.....	102
Logic.....	102
Mapping examples.....	103

### C

Cabinet.....	25
Cabinet heater.....	64
Cable selection	
Power cables.....	42
Mains and motor cables.....	44
Control cables.....	75
Optical fiber cables.....	86
Cabling	
Cable inlets.....	43
Mains and motor cables.....	44
Additional instructions.....	48
Fieldbus.....	78
Commissioning	
Safety.....	108
Commissioning test.....	122
Common-mode capacitor	
Installation.....	61
Dimensions.....	189
Condensation.....	34
Control properties.....	203
Control unit	
Components.....	73
Installation.....	74
Interface.....	74
Cabling.....	75
Terminals.....	75
DIP switches.....	76
Fieldbus terminals.....	78
Optical fiber connections.....	83
Pre-charge connections.....	88

Supply voltage feedback connections.....	88
Encoder interface.....	89
Real-time clock.....	94
Software.....	94
Signals.....	94
Dimensions.....	179
Cooling.....	205
Cooling liquid	
Temperature.....	34
Cooling system piping.....	37

### D

DC capacitor for DFE	
Installation.....	31, 59
Dimensions.....	190
DC-link connections.....	51
Dew point.....	35
DFE power module	
Installation.....	31
Cooling connections.....	38
Terminals.....	49, 53
Control terminals.....	49
Grounding.....	50
LED display.....	55
Dimensions.....	178
Disposal.....	11
Drive properties.....	204

### E

EMC.....	25
Encoder.....	89, 129
Environment.....	25, 205

### F

Fault tracing.....	135
--------------------	-----

### G

Galvanic isolation barriers.....	94
Grid voltage feedback configuration.....	116
Grounding.....	46
Grounding configurations.....	46
Grounding switch	
Installation.....	59
Operation.....	60
Dimensions.....	195

### H

HCM board	
Connector locations.....	106
Installation.....	106
Dimensions.....	180
Heat exchanger.....	37
High overload.....	201

### I

Input common-mode filter	
Installation.....	58
Dimensions.....	185
Insulation checks	

Switchgear.....	130	Installation.....	56
Intended use.....	18	Dimensions.....	194
Isolation transformer		Power cabling.....	41
Installation.....	62	Power ratings	
Dimensions.....	194	3300 V.....	200
IT grid.....	47	4160 V.....	200
<b>L</b>		Pre-charge unit	
LC filter		Installation.....	62
Installation.....	57	Dimensions.....	181
Dimensions.....	182	Precharge unit	
Leak detector.....	64	Safety.....	61
Leakage current.....	14	Purified water.....	33, 33
Lifting instructions.....	24	<b>Q</b>	
Liquid cooling		Qualified personnel.....	11, 12
General information.....	32	<b>R</b>	
Materials.....	36	Real-time clock.....	94
Cooling system installation.....	37	<b>S</b>	
Connections.....	38	Safe Stop 1	
Commissioning.....	114	Operating principle.....	66
Low overload.....	201	Response time.....	69
Low-voltage section.....	41	Fault reaction time.....	69
<b>M</b>		Safety relay wiring.....	69
Main circuit breaker.....	16, 56	Safety-related data.....	70
Main circuit diagrams		Safe torque off	
AFE.....	210	Safety considerations.....	65
12-pulse.....	213	Diagnostic test.....	65
Mains supply.....	202	Operating principle.....	65
Maintenance.....	132	Installation guidelines.....	66
Maintenance log.....	134	Components.....	67
Mechanical interlocking system.....	71	Delay time.....	68
Medium-voltage section.....	41	Response time.....	68
Motor output.....	203	Fault reaction time.....	68
Mounting rack		Safety relay wiring.....	69
Installation.....	30	Safety-related data.....	70
Grounding.....	30	Safety.....	12, 14
Cabling.....	30	Single-belt operation.....	56
Dimensions.....	197	Software installation.....	117
<b>O</b>		Source impedance.....	207
Option boards.....	22, 82	SS1.....	64
Options.....	20	STO.....	64
Overload capability.....	201	Storage.....	23
Overtemperature indicator.....	64	Surge protection device	
<b>P</b>		Installation.....	56
Phase module		Dimensions.....	197
Installation.....	31	Symbols.....	12
Cooling connections.....	38	<b>T</b>	
Terminals.....	48, 53	Type code.....	20
Grounding.....	50	<b>V</b>	
LED display.....	53	Version history.....	11
Dimensions.....	177		
Phasing.....	120		
Potential transformer			



ENGINEERING  
TOMORROW

*Danfoss*

**Vacon Ltd, Member of the  
Danfoss Group**  
Runsorintie 7  
FIN-65380 Vaasa  
[www.danfoss.com](http://www.danfoss.com)

Danfoss can accept no responsibility for possible errors in catalogs, brochures and other printed material. Danfoss reserves the right to alter its products without notice. This also applies to products already on order provided that such alterations can be made without subsequential changes being necessary in specifications already agreed. All trademarks in this material are property of the respective companies. Danfoss and the Danfoss logotype are trademarks of Danfoss A/S. All rights reserved.

